Contact Information

Copyright © 2020 Symantec Corp. All rights reserved. Symantec, the Symantec Logo, the Checkmark Logo, Blue Coat, and the Blue Coat logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Symantec Corp. or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners. This document is provided for informational purposes only and is not intended as advertising. All warranties relating to the information in this document, either express or implied, are disclaimed to the maximum extent allowed by law. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

THE DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID. SYMANTEC CORPORATION SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES IN CONNECTION WITH THE FURNISHING, PERFORMANCE, OR USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION. THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS DOCUMENTATION IS SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. SYMANTEC CORPORATION PRODUCTS, TECHNICAL SERVICES, AND ANY OTHER TECHNICAL DATA REFERENCED IN THIS DOCUMENT ARE SUBJECT TO U.S. EXPORT CONTROL AND SANCTIONS LAWS, REGULATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS, AND MAY BE SUBJECT TO EXPORT OR IMPORT REGULATIONS IN OTHER COUNTRIES. YOU AGREE TO COMPLY STRICTLY WITH THESE LAWS, REGULATIONS AND REQUIREMENTS, AND ACKNOWLEDGE THAT YOU HAVE THE RESPONSIBILITY TO OBTAIN ANY LICENSES, PERMITS OR OTHER APPROVALS THAT MAY BE REQUIRED IN ORDER TO EXPORT, RE-EXPORT, TRANSFER IN COUNTRY OR IMPORT AFTER DELIVERY TO YOU.

Americas:
Symantec Corporation
350 Ellis Street
Mountain View, CA 94043

Rest of the World:
Symantec Limited
Ballycoolin Business Park
Blanchardstown, Dublin 15, Ireland

Document Number: 231-03035
Document Revision: SGOS 6.5.x—09/2019 - E
Contents

Chapter 1: Introduction
Audience for this Document ........................................................................................................ 9
Organization of this Document .................................................................................................. 9
Other Blue Coat Documentation .............................................................................................. 10
Document Conventions ............................................................................................................ 10
Notes and Warnings ............................................................................................................... 10
SSH and Script Considerations ............................................................................................... 11
Standard and Privileged Modes ............................................................................................. 11
Accessing Quick Command Line Help .................................................................................. 11
Special Characters in Command Strings ................................................................................ 12

Chapter 2: Standard and Privileged Mode Commands
Standard Mode Commands .................................................................................................... 15
> display ...................................................................................................................................... 16
> enable ....................................................................................................................................... 17
> exit .......................................................................................................................................... 18
> help ......................................................................................................................................... 19
> ping .......................................................................................................................................... 20
> ping6 ......................................................................................................................................... 21
> show ........................................................................................................................................ 22
> show access-log ...................................................................................................................... 28
> show bandwidth-management ............................................................................................... 29
> show bridge ........................................................................................................................... 30
> show cifs .................................................................................................................................. 31
> show commands ................................................................................................................... 32
> show diagnostics ................................................................................................................... 33
> show disk .................................................................................................................................. 34
> show exceptions .................................................................................................................... 35
> show ip-stats ........................................................................................................................ 36
> show sources ........................................................................................................................ 37
> show ssl ................................................................................................................................... 38
> show streaming ..................................................................................................................... 39
> traceroute ............................................................................................................................... 40
> traceroute6 ............................................................................................................................ 41
Privileged Mode Commands ................................................................................................. 42
# acquire-utc .......................................................................................................................... 43
# bridge ..................................................................................................................................... 44
# cancel-upload ...................................................................................................................... 45
# clear-arp ............................................................................................................................... 46
# clear-cache .......................................................................................................................... 47
# clear-errorred-connections ................................................................................................. 48
# clear-statistics ..................................................................................................................... 49
# configure ..................................................................................................................... 50
# disable ........................................................................................................................ 51
# disk ............................................................................................................................. 52
# display ........................................................................................................................ 54
# enable .......................................................................................................................... 55
  # entitlements ............................................................................................................ 56
# exit ............................................................................................................................. 57
# fips-mode .................................................................................................................... 58
# help ............................................................................................................................. 59
# hide-advanced ............................................................................................................. 60
# inline .......................................................................................................................... 61
# kill ............................................................................................................................... 63
# licensing ...................................................................................................................... 64
# load .............................................................................................................................. 65
# pcap ............................................................................................................................ 67
  # pcap filter ............................................................................................................... 68
  # pcap start ............................................................................................................... 70
# ping ............................................................................................................................. 72
# policy .......................................................................................................................... 73
# register-with-director .............................................................................................. 74
# reset-ui ....................................................................................................................... 75
# restart ......................................................................................................................... 76
# restore-sgos5-config ............................................................................................... 77
# restore-defaults ......................................................................................................... 78
# reveal-advanced ......................................................................................................... 79
# show ........................................................................................................................... 80
  # show adn .................................................................................................................. 85
  # show attack-detection ............................................................................................ 86
  # show cachepulse ..................................................................................................... 87
  # show configuration ............................................................................................... 88
  # show content ......................................................................................................... 89
  # show geolocation ................................................................................................. 90
  # show proxy-services ............................................................................................ 91
  # show security ......................................................................................................... 92
  # show ssh-console .................................................................................................... 93
  # show ssl ................................................................................................................. 94
# temporary-route ........................................................................................................ 96
# test ............................................................................................................................... 97
# traceroute ................................................................................................................... 99
# traceroute6 ............................................................................................................... 100
# upload ......................................................................................................................... 101

Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands
Configure Mode Commands ....................................................................................... 103
#(config) accelerated-pac ........................................................................................... 104
#(config) access-log ................................................................................................. 105
  #(config log log_name) ............................................................................................. 108
  #(config format format_name) ................................................................................. 113
#(config) adn .............................................................................................................. 114
Chapter 1: Introduction

To help you configure and manage your Blue Coat ProxySG appliance, Blue Coat developed a software suite that includes an easy-to-use graphical interface called the Management Console and a Command Line Interface (CLI). The CLI allows you to perform the superset of configuration and management tasks; the Management Console, a subset.

This reference guide describes each of the commands available in the CLI.

Audience for this Document

This reference guide is written for system administrators and experienced users who are familiar with network configuration. Blue Coat assumes that you have a functional network topography, that you and your Blue Coat Sales representative have determined the correct number and placement of the appliance, and that the appliance has been installed in an equipment rack and at least minimally configured as outlined in the Blue Coat Quick Start Guide that accompanied the device.

Organization of this Document

This document contains the following chapters:

Chapter 1 – Introduction

The organization of this document; conventions used; descriptions of the CLI modes; and instructions for saving your configuration.

Chapter 2 – Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

All of the standard mode commands, including syntax and examples, in alphabetical order. All of the privileged mode commands (except for the configure commands, which are described in Chapter 3), including syntax and examples, in alphabetical order.

Chapter 3 – # Configure Mode Commands

The #configure command is the most used and most elaborate of all of the CLI commands.
Other Blue Coat Documentation

Access current documentation at Blue Touch Online (BTO):

https://bto.bluecoat.com/documentation

and search on ProxySG under Product.

The following documentation is available on BTO:

- Blue Coat SGOS Upgrade/Downgrade Guide
- Blue Coat Administration Guide
- Blue Coat Visual Policy Manager Reference (includes some advanced policy tasks)
- Blue Coat Content Policy Language Reference
- Blue Coat also provides various other deployment guides targeted for specific solutions.

Document Conventions

The following table lists the typographical and CLI syntax conventions used in this manual.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conventions</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Italics</strong></td>
<td>The first use of a new or Blue Coat-proprietary term.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Courier font</strong></td>
<td>Screen output. For example, command line text, file names, and Content Policy Language (CPL).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Courier Italic</strong></td>
<td>A command line variable that is to be substituted with a literal name or value pertaining to the appropriate facet of your network system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Courier Boldface</strong></td>
<td>A Blue Coat literal to be entered as shown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arial Boldface</strong></td>
<td>Screen elements in the Management Console.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{ }</td>
<td>One of the parameters enclosed within the braces must be supplied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ ]</td>
<td>An optional parameter or parameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes and Warnings

The following is provided for your information and to caution you against actions that can result in data loss or personal injury:

**Note:** Information to which you should pay attention.

**Important:** Critical information that is not related to equipment damage or personal injury (for example, data loss).
SSH and Script Considerations

Consider the following when using the CLI during an SSH session or in a script:

**Case Sensitivity.** CLI command literals and parameters are not case-sensitive.

**Command Abbreviations.** You can abbreviate CLI commands, provided you supply enough command characters as to be unambiguous. For example:

```
SGOS# configure terminal
```

The preceding can be shortened to:

```
SGOS# conf t
```

Standard and Privileged Modes

The ProxySG appliance CLI has three major modes—standard, privileged, and configure privileged. In addition, privileged mode has several subordinate modes. See the introduction in Chapter 2: "Standard and Privileged Mode Commands" on page 15 for details about the different modes.

- Standard mode prompt: >
- Privileged mode prompt: #
- Configure Privileged mode prompt: #(config)

Accessing Quick Command Line Help

You can access command line help at any time during a session. The following commands are available in both standard mode and privileged mode.

**To access a comprehensive list of mode-specific commands:**

Enter `help` or `?` at the prompt.

The `help` command displays how to use CLI help. For example:

```
SGOS> help
Help may be requested at any point in a command by typing a question mark '?'.
1. For a list of available commands, enter '?' at the prompt.
2. For a list of arguments applicable to a command, precede the '?' with a space (e.g. 'show ?')
3. For help completing a command, do not precede the '?' with a space (e.g. 'sh?')
```

The `?` command displays the available commands. For example:
SGOS> ?
  display                      Display a text based url
  enable                      Turn on privileged commands
  exit                        Exit command line interface
  help                        Information on help
  ping                        Send echo messages
  show                        Show running system information
  traceroute                  Trace route to destination

**To access a command-specific parameter list:**

Enter the command name, followed by a space, followed by a question mark.

You must be in the correct mode—standard or privileged—to access the appropriate help information. For example, to get command completion help for `pcap`:

```
SGOS# pcap ?
```

**To get command completion for configuring the time:**

```
SGOS#(config) clock ?
```

**To access the correct spelling and syntax, given a partial command:**

Type the first letter, or more, of the command, followed by a question mark (no spaces).

You must be in the correct mode—standard or privileged—to access the appropriate help information. For example:

```
SGOS# p?
```

**Special Characters in Command Strings**

**The “?” Character**

Command strings including the question mark (“?”) must be quoted. For example, the following command results in an error:

```
#(config) upgrade-path "https://example.com/cgi-bin/download?rid=3399924431"
```

To execute the command correctly, enclose the string in quotes:

```
#(config) upgrade-path "https://example.com/cgi-bin/download?rid=3399924431"
```
The “!” Character

A string starting with an exclamation mark (“!”) denotes a comment; as a result, the CLI ignores the string. Consider the following example, where a password starts with a “!”:

```
# licensing register-hardware user1 !password
```

Issuing this command causes the CLI to prompt you to enter a password again.

To prevent this from occurring, do one of the following to enter a password starting with “!”:

- Escape the “!” with a backslash character (“\”) such as:
  ```
  # licensing register-hardware user1 \!password
  ```

- Press ENTER after specifying the username to display the password prompt. At the prompt, you can type the password without having to escape it:
  ```
  # licensing register-hardware user1
  Password: !password
  ```
This chapter describes and provides examples for the Blue Coat ProxySG appliance standard and privileged mode CLI commands. These modes have fewer permissions than enabled mode commands.

This chapter includes information about the following topics:
- Standard Mode Commands on page 15
- Privileged Mode Commands on page 42

Standard Mode Commands

Standard mode is the default mode when you first log in to the CLI. From standard mode, you can view but not change configuration settings. This mode can be password protected, but it is not required.

The standard mode prompt is a greater-than sign; for example:

```
ssh> ssh -l username IP_address
password: ******
SGOS>
```
> display

Synopsis
Use this command to display the content (such as HTML or Javascript) for the specified URL. This content is displayed one screen at a time. "—More—" at the bottom of the terminal screen indicates that there is additional content. Press the Spacebar to display the next batch of content; press the Enter key to display one additional line of content.

This command is used for general HTTP connectivity testing

Syntax

> display url

where url is a valid, fully-qualified text Web address.

Example

SGOS> display http://www.bluecoat.com
<!DOCTYPE HTML PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD HTML 4.01 Transitional//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/html4/loose.dtd">
<html>
<head>
<title>Blue Coat Systems</title>
<meta http-equiv="Content-Type" content="text/html; charset=iso-8859-1">
<meta name="keywords" content="spyware WAN application spyware removal spyware removal application delivery to branch office accelerate performance applications remove spyware spyware application delivery secure application acceleration control SSL threat anti-virus protection WAN optimization AV appliance spyware blocker application acceleration distributed security application performance spyware killer spyware WebFilter protection CIFS MAPI streaming video Web application security branch offices secure endpoint protection SSL policy control remote user acceleration WAN delivery application performance WebFilter endpoint security fast WAN policy control spyware detection spyware eliminator block endpoint security spyware secure MAPI appliances SSL AV policy control stop spyware remove AV appliance SSL proxy Http secure Web application acceleration encryption Proxy Internet Proxy Internet Proxy Cache security proxy cache proxy server CIFS proxy servers branch office Web proxy appliance enterprise data center accelerate WAN and CIFS and MAPI and streaming video policy protection blue coat Web proxy Internet Web AV security systems blue coat branch office anti-virus performance blue coat remote users WAN performance acceleration Internet MAPI monitoring AV endpoint Internet application delivery management endpoint protection and security and acceleration of application content delivery with policy control Internet CIFS Web application filtering content filtering Web filtering web filter WAN filtered internet application acceleration">

. 

.
> enable

**Synopsis**
Use this command to enter Privileged mode. Privileged mode commands enable you to view and change your configuration settings. A password is always required.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
> enable
```

The `enable` command has no parameters or subcommands.

**For More Information**

- # disable on page 51
- #(config) security password and hashed_password on page 372
- #(config) security username on page 397

**Example**

```
SGOS> enable
Enable Password:******
SGOS# conf t
SGOS(config)
```

*where* `conf t` *is a shortcut to typing* `configure terminal`.  

---

17
> exit

**Synopsis**

Use this command to exit the CLI. In privileged and configuration mode, `exit` returns you to the previous prompt.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
> exit
```

The `exit` command has no parameters or subcommands.

**Example**

```plaintext
SGOS> exit
```
> help

See Accessing Quick Command Line Help on page 11 for information about this command.
> ping

**Synopsis**
Use this command to verify whether an Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4) host is reachable across a network.

**Syntax**

> ping {IPv4 address | hostname}

**Subcommands**

> ping IPv4 address
   Specifies the IPv4 address you want to verify.

> ping hostname
   Specifies the name of the host you want to verify.

**Example**

SGOS> ping 10.25.36.47
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 64-byte ICMP Echos to 10.25.36.47, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5),
round-trip min/avg/max = 0/0/1 ms
Number of duplicate packets received = 0
> ping6

**Synopsis**
Use this command to verify whether an Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6) host is reachable across a network.

**Syntax**
> ping6 {IPv6 address | hostname}

**Subcommands**

> ping6 IPv6 address
   Specifies the IPv6 address you want to verify.

> ping6 hostname
   Specifies the name of the host you want to verify.

**Example**

SGOS> ping6 fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780%0:0
PING6(56=40+8+8 bytes) fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780 --> fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780%0:0
16 bytes from fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780%0:0, icmp_seq=0 hlim=64 time=0.799 ms
16 bytes from fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780%0:0, icmp_seq=1 hlim=64 time=0.761 ms
16 bytes from fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780%0:0, icmp_seq=2 hlim=64 time=1.630 ms
16 bytes from fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780%0:0, icmp_seq=3 hlim=64 time=1.703 ms
16 bytes from fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780%0:0, icmp_seq=4 hlim=64 time=3.745 ms

--- fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780%0:0 ping6 statistics ---
5 packets transmitted, 5 packets received, 0.0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max/std-dev = 0.761/1.728/3.745/1.084 ms
> show

Synopsis
Use this command to display system information. You cannot view all show commands, here, only those available in the standard mode. You must be in privileged mode to show all available commands.

Syntax
> show [subcommands]

Subcommands

Note: Click subcommand links for additional information.

> show accelerated-pac
Displays accelerated PAC file information.

> show access-log on page 28
Displays the current access log settings.

> show advanced-url
Displays the advanced URL for statistics.

> show appliance-identifier
Displays the identifier of the appliance. The appliance identifier is the same as the value returned in the access log and policy substitution x-bluecoat-appliance-identifier. Refer to the "CPL Substitutions" appendix in the Content Policy Language Reference.

> show appliance-name
Displays the name of the appliance.

> show arp-table
Displays TCP/IP ARP table information.

> show bandwidth-gain
Displays bandwidth gain status, mode, and the status of the "substitute get for get-if-modified-since," "substitute get for HTTP 1.1 conditional get," and "never refresh before specified object expiry" features.

> show bandwidth-management on page 29
Displays bandwidth management configuration and statistics information.

> show bridge on page 30
Displays information about bridging on the system.

> show cachepulse
Displays CachePulse service settings.

> show caching
Displays data regarding cache refresh rates and settings and caching policies.

> show cifs on page 31
Displays Common Internet File System (CIFS) information

> show clock
Displays the current ProxySG appliance time setting.

> show commands on page 32
Displays the available CLI commands.

> show content-distribution
Displays the average sizes of objects in the cache.
Chapter 2: Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

> **show cpu**
Displays CPU usage.

> **show cpu-monitor**
Displays the state of the CPU monitor.

> **show diagnostics** on page 33
Displays remote diagnostics information.

> **show disk** on page 34
Displays disk information, including slot number, vendor, product ID, revision and serial number, capacity, and status, about all disks or a specified disk.

> **show dns**
Displays primary and alternate DNS server data.

> **show dns-forwarding**
Displays the DNS servers and the imputing name.

> **show download-paths**
Displays downloaded configuration path information, including the policy list, accelerated PAC file, HTTP error page, RIP settings, static route table, upgrade image, and WCCP settings.

> **show epmapper [statistics]**
Displays proxy settings or statistics.

> **show event-log [configuration]**
Show the event-log configuration.

> **show exceptions** on page 35
Displays all exceptions or just the built-in or user-defined exception you specify.

> **show external-services [statistics]**
Displays external services or external services statistics information.

> **show failover [group_address]**
Displays failover settings for the specified group or all groups.

> **show forwarding**
Displays advanced forwarding settings, including download-via-forwarding, health check, and load balancing status, and the definition of forwarding hosts/groups and advanced forwarding rules.

> **show ftp**
Displays the FTP settings on the system.

> **show general**
Displays the general settings.

> **show geolocation**
Displays geolocation settings.

> **show health-checks**
Displays health check information.

> **show http**
Displays HTTP configuration information.

> **show http-stats**
Displays HTTP statistics, including HTTP statistics version number, number of connections accepted by HTTP, number of persistent connections that were reused, and the number of active client connections.

> **show identd**
Displays IDENTD service settings.

> **show installed-systems**
Displays ProxySG appliance system information, listing the current version and release numbers, boot and lock status, and timestamp information.
> `show installed-systems verbose`
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.5; available for the ProxySG 300, 600, 900, 9000, S-Series, and SWG-VA platforms.)
Displays the same information as `show installed-systems`, as well as the signature of the boot chain, the boot chain version, and the signature for each system image. You can compare the signature to known values to confirm that the installed images are valid. For instructions, refer to TECH245154:

https://www.symantec.com/docs/TECH245154

> `show interface {all | interface_number}`
Displays interface status and configuration information.

> `show ip-default-gateway`
Specifies the default IP gateway.

> `show ip-route-table`
Displays route table information.

> `show ip-stats`
on page 36
Displays TCP/IP statistics

> `show ipv6`
Displays current settings for IPv6-related options (bypass IPv6 traffic, auto-linklocal, forwarding).

> `show licenses`
Displays license information.

> `show management-services`
Displays information about the management services enabled or disabled on the system.

> `show mapi`
Displays settings for the MAPI proxy.

> `show ndp`
Shows TCP/IP Neighbor Discovery Protocol (NDP) table. NDP performs functions for IPv6 similar to ARP for IPv4.

> `show netbios`
Displays NETBIOS settings.

> `show netflow`
Displays NetFlow settings. The `(config netflow) view` command also displays these settings. For more information, see `(config) netflow` on page 258.

> `show ntp`
Displays NTP servers status and information.

> `show p2p [statistics]`
Displays P2P statistics.

> `show policy {listing|order|proxy-default}`
Displays the specified policy element.

> `show private-network`
Displays the private network subnets and domains.

> `show profile`
Displays the system profile.

> `show proxy-client`
Displays the proxy client settings.

> `show proxy-services`
Displays information about proxy services.

> `show reflect-client-ip`
Displays the client IP reflection.
Chapter 2:  Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

> show resources
   Displays allocation of disk and memory resources.

> show restart
   Displays system restart settings, including core image information and compression status.

> show return-to-sender
   Displays "return to sender" inbound and outbound settings.

> show rip {default-route | parameters | routes | statistics}
   Displays information on RIP settings, including parameters and configuration, RIP routes, and RIP statistics.

> show services
   Displays information about services.

> show service-groups
   Displays proxy service groups.

> show sessions
   Displays information about the CLI session.

> show shell
   Displays the settings for the shell, including the maximum connections, the prompt, and the realm- and welcome-banners.

> show smtp
   Displays SMTP configuration, including the server domain name or IP address, port number, and sender’s email address.

> show snmp
   Displays SNMP statistics, including status and MIB variable and trap information

> show socks-gateways
   Displays SOCKS gateway settings.

> show socks-machine-id
   Displays the identification of the secure sockets machine.

> show socks-proxy
   Displays SOCKS proxy settings.

> show sources on page 37
   Displays source listings for installable lists, such as the license key, policy files, RIP settings, static route table, and WCCP settings files.

> show ssl on page 38
   Displays ssl settings.

> show static-routes
   Displays static route table information.

> show status
   Displays current system status information, including configuration information and general status information.

> show streaming on page 39
   Displays QuickTime, RealNetworks, or Microsoft Windows Media information, and client and total bandwidth configurations and usage.

> show tcp-ip
   Displays TCP-IP parameters.

> show terminal
   Displays terminal configuration parameters and subcommands.

> show timezones
   Displays timezones used.
> show trust-destination-ip
  Displays the trust destination IP

> show user-overflow-action
  Displays the user overflow action.

> show version
  Displays ProxySG appliance hardware and software version and release information and backplane PIC status.

> show virtual-ip
  Displays the current virtual IP addresses

> show wccp {configuration | statistics | status}
  Displays WCCP configuration and statistics information. You can also view WCCP service-group information.

> show xml-config
  Displays the registry settings.

Examples

SGOS> show caching
Refresh:
  Estimated access freshness is 100.0%
  Let the ProxySG Appliance manage refresh bandwidth
  Current bandwidth used is 0 kilobits/sec

Policies:
  Do not cache objects larger than 1024 megabytes
  Cache negative responses for 0 minutes
  Let the ProxySG Appliance manage freshness

FTP caching:
  Caching FTP objects is enabled
  FTP objects with last modified date, cached for 10% of last modified time
  FTP objects without last modified date, initially cached for 24 hours

SGOS> show resources
Disk Resources
Number of disks : 1
Maximum objects supported : 2,865,877
Cached Objects : 12
Disk used by system objects : 26,085,376,000 bytes
Disk used by access logs : 149,693 bytes
Disk available for cache : 223,973,824,323 bytes
Total disk installed : 250,059,350,016 bytes

Memory Resources
Total memory installed : 4,294,967,296 bytes
Total memory committed : 1,461,264,384 bytes
  Committed system memory : 1,105,797,120 bytes
  Committed application memory : 353,443,840 bytes
  Committed cache buffers : 2,023,424 bytes
Reclaimable cache buffers : 260,841,472 bytes
Total memory free : 2,572,861,440 bytes
  Free system memory : 2,558,713,856 bytes
  Free application memory : 14,147,584 bytes
  Free cache buffer memory : 0 bytes
Committed memory:(% of total installed) : 34 %
SGOS> **show failover configuration group_address**  
Failover Config  
Group Address: 10.25.36.47  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Multicast Address</th>
<th>224.1.2.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Address</td>
<td>10.9.17.159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advertisement Interval</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priority</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current State</td>
<td>DISABLED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flags</td>
<td>V M</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Three flags exist, set as you configure the group.  

- **V**—Specifies the group name is a virtual IP address.  
- **R**—Specifies the group name is a physical IP address  
- **M**—Specifies this machine can be configured to be the master if it is available
> show access-log

Synopsis
Displays the current access log settings.

Syntax
> show access-log [subcommands]

Subcommands
> show access-log default-logging
Display the access log default policy.

> show access-log format brief
Displays the access log format names.

> show access-log format format_name
Displays the access log with the specified format_name.

> show access-log format
Displays the access-log formats for all log types.

> show access-log log brief
Displays the access log names.

> show access-log log log_name
Displays the access log with the specified log_name.

> show access-log log
Displays the access-log for all logs.

> show access-log statistics log_name
Displays access-log statistics for the specific log_name.

> show access-log statistics
Displays all access-log statistics.

For More Information
- “Creating Custom Access Log Formats” in the Administration guide for your software release.

Example
> show access-log format brief
Formats:
squid
ncsa
main
im
streaming
surfcontrol
surfcontrolv5
p2p
ssl
cifs
mapi
Chapter 2: Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

> show bandwidth-management

Synopsis
Displays the bandwidth management state (enabled or disabled) or statistics.

Syntax
> show bandwidth-management {configuration | statistics}

Subcommands
> show bandwidth-management configuration bandwidth_class
Displays the bandwidth-management configuration for the specified bandwidth class. If you do not specify a bandwidth class, displays the bandwidth-management configuration for the system.

> show bandwidth-management statistics bandwidth_class
Displays the bandwidth-management statistics for the specified bandwidth class. If you do not specify a bandwidth class, displays the bandwidth-management statistics for the system.

For More Information
❐ SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example
> show bandwidth-management configuration
Bandwidth Management Enabled
> show bridge

Synopsis
Displays bridge configuration and statistics.

Syntax
> show bridge [subcommands]

Subcommands
> show bridge configuration [bridge_name]
   Displays the bridge configuration for the specified bridge_name or for all interfaces on the system.
> show bridge fwtable [bridge_name]
   Displays the bridge forwarding table for the specified bridge_name or for all interfaces on the system.
> show bridge statistics [bridge_name]
   Displays the bridge statistics for the specified bridge_name or for all interfaces on the system.

For More Information
❐ ProxySG Appliance Administration Guide

Example
> show bridge configuration
Bridge passthru-0 configuration:
   Interface 0:0
      Internet address: 10.9.59.246
      Internet subnet: 255.255.255.0
      MTU size: 1500
      Spanning tree: disabled
      Allow intercept: enabled
      Reject inbound: disabled
      Status: autosensed full duplex, 100 megabits/sec network
   Interface 0:1
      MTU size: 1500
      Spanning tree: disabled
      Allow intercept: enabled
      Reject inbound: disabled
      Status: autosensed no link
> show cifs

**Synopsis**

Show Common Internet File System (CIFS) information.

**Syntax**

> show cifs [subcommands]

**Subcommands**

> show cifs configuration

Displays the CIFS configuration settings, such as whether read-ahead is enabled/disabled and write-back is full or none. For more information on these settings, see *(config) cifs* on page 160.

> show cifs directory url

Displays contents of the specified directory located in the ProxySG appliance cache. *url* is in the format: `cifs://server/share/path-to-file`

To enter file or directory names that contain spaces, substitute each space with the following escape code: `%20`. If the *path-to-file* contains a percent sign, substitute the `%` with `%25`.

The output lists each file or directory name, the date and time the file/directory was last updated, and the file size.

Note that you must be in enable mode to use the `show cifs directory` command.

> show cifs file url

Displays information about a specific CIFS file or directory located in the ProxySG appliance cache. *url* is in the format: `cifs://server/share/path-to-file`

To enter file or directory names that contain spaces, substitute each space with the following escape code: `%20`. If the *path-to-file* contains a percent sign, substitute the `%` with `%25`.

The output lists the object size, and when the file/directory was created, last accessed, and last modified.

Note that you must be in enable mode to use the `show cifs file` command.

> show cifs statistics

Displays statistics about CIFS read/write file operations.

**Example**

> show cifs file cifs://atlas/public/prepop/a/a1.txt

```
cifs://atlas/public/prepop/a/a1.txt

Type: file
Cached object size: 409,121
Data bytes in cache: 409,121

Creation Time: Thu, 09 Jul 2009 03:36:15 UTC
Last Write Time: Thu, 09 Jul 2009 03:36:24 UTC
Change Time: Thu, 09 Jul 2009 03:36:24 UTC
```
> show commands

**Synopsis**

Displays the available CLI commands.

**Syntax**

```
> show commands [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
> show commands delimited [all | privileged]
  Delimited displays commands so they can be parsed.
> show commands formatted [all | privileged]
  Formatted displays commands so they can be viewed easily.
```

**Example**

```
> show commands formatted
  1:show                        Show running system information
  2:access-log                  Access log settings
    3:log                      Show Access log configuration
    4:brief                    Show Access log names
      <log-name>
    3:format                   Show Access log format configuration
    4:brief                    Show Access log format names
      <format-name>
    3:statistics               Show Access log statistics
      <logName>
    3:default-logging          Show Access log default policy

> show commands delimited
  1;show;Show running system information;sh;0;11
  2;access-log;Access log settings;acces;0;11
  3;log;Show Access log configuration;l;0;11
  4;brief;Show Access log names;b;0;11
    p;<log-name>;n;*;*;0;14
  3;format;Show Access log format configuration;f;0;11
  4;brief;Show Access log format names;b;0;11
    p;<format-name>;n;*;*;0;14
  3;statistics;Show Access log statistics;s;0;11
    p;<logName>;n;*;*;0;14
  3;default-logging;Show Access log default policy;d;0;11
```
> show diagnostics

**Synopsis**
Displays remote diagnostics information, including version number, and whether the Heartbeats feature and the ProxySG appliance monitor are currently enabled.

**Syntax**
> show diagnostics [subcommands]

**Subcommands**

- > show diagnostics configuration
  Displays diagnostics settings.

- > show diagnostics cpu-monitor
  Displays the CPU Monitor results.

- > show diagnostics service-info
  Displays service-info settings.

- > show diagnostics snapshot
  Displays the snapshot configuration.

**Example**

> show diagnostics snapshot
Snapshot sysinfo
  Target: /sysinfo
  Status: Enabled
  Interval: 1440 minutes
  To keep: 30
  To take: Infinite
  Next snapshot: 2006-03-18 00:00:00 UTC

Snapshot sysinfo_stats
  Target: /sysinfo-stats
  Status: Enabled
  Interval: 60 minutes
  To keep: 100
  To take: Infinite
  Next snapshot: 2006-03-17 20:00:00 UTC
> show disk

**Synopsis**
Displays information about the specified hard disk(s), including slot number, drive manufacturer, product ID/model, revision and serial number, capacity, SGOS compatibility information, and disk status.

The disk status line item displays information based on the current status of the selected hard disk drive:

- **Present**
  Indicates that the hard disk drive is properly mounted and available for access by the appliance.
- **Empty**
  Indicates that the hard disk drive slot is not occupied by a disk drive.
- **Initializing**
  Indicates that the hard disk drive is in the process of being mounted for use by the appliance.
- **Offline**
  Indicates that the hard disk drive is offline and no longer usable by the appliance.
- **Error**
  Indicates that a hard drive disk is faulty.
- **Present (partition offline)**
  Indicates that a drive partition is down; however the disk drive is still active.

**Syntax**
> show disk {disk_number | all}

**Subcommands**

- **show disk disk_number**
  Displays information on the specified disk.

- **show disk all**
  Displays information about all installed disks in the ProxySG appliance.

**Example**

> show disk 1
Disk in slot 1
Vendor: SEAGATE
Product: ST340014A
Revision: 8.54
Disk serial number: 5JVQ76VS
Capacity: 40020664320 bytes
Pre 6.2 compatible: yes
Status: present (partition offline)
> show exceptions

**Synopsis**
Displays all exceptions or just built-in or user defined exceptions.

**Syntax**

```
> show exceptions [built-in_id | user-defined_id]
```

**For More Information**

- #(config) exceptions on page 192

**Example**

```
> show exceptions
Built-in:
authentication_failed
authentication_failed_password_expired
authentication_mode_not_supported
authentication_redirect_from_virtual_host
authentication_redirect_off_box
authentication_redirect_to_virtual_host
authentication_success
authorization_failed
bad_credentials
client_failure_limit_exceeded
configuration_error
connect_method_denied
content_filter_denied
content_filter_unavailable
dns_server_failure
dns_unresolved_hostname
dynamic_bypass_reload
gateway_error
icap_communication_error
icap_error
internal_error
invalid_auth_form
invalid_request
invalid_response
license_exceeded
license_expired
method_denied
not_implemented
notify
notify_missing_cookie
policy_denied
policy_redirect
radius_splash_page
redirected_stored_requests_not_supported
refresh
server_request_limit_exceeded
silent_denied
spoof_authentication_error
ssl_client_cert_revoked
ssl_domain_invalid
ssl_failed
ssl_server_cert_expired
ssl_server_cert_revoked
ssl_server_cert_untrusted_issuer
tcp_error
transformation_error
unsupported_encoding
unsupported_protocol
```
> show ip-stats

**Synopsis**
Displays TCP/IP statistics.

**Syntax**

```
> show ip-stats [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

- `show ip-stats all`
  Display TCP/IP statistics.
- `show ip-stats interface {all | number}`
  Displays TCP/IP statistics for all interfaces or for the specified number (0 to 7).
- `show ip-stats ip`
  Displays IP statistics.
- `show ip-stats memory`
  Displays TCP/IP memory statistics.
- `show ip-stats summary`
  Displays TCP/IP summary statistics.
- `show ip-stats tcp`
  Displays TCP statistics.
- `show ip-stats udp`
  Displays UDP statistics.

**Example**

```
> show ip-stats summary
; TCP/IP Statistics
TCP/IP General Statistics
Entries in TCP queue: 12
Maximum entries in TCP queue: 19
Entries in TCP time wait queue: 0
Maximum entries in time wait queue: 173
Number of time wait allocation failures: 0
Entries in UDP queue: 2
```
> show sources

Synopsis
Displays source listings for installable lists, such as the license key, policy files, RIP settings, static route table, and WCCP settings files.

Syntax
> show sources [subcommands]

Subcommands

> authentication-form
Displays the specified authentication form.

> show sources crl
Displays the specified CRL.

> show sources exceptions
Displays the exception code.

> show sources forwarding
Displays forwarding settings.

> show sources license-key
Displays license information.

> show sources policy {central | (Introduced in 6.5.9.14) classification | common | forward | local | threat-protection | vpm-cpl | vpm-xml}
Displays the specified policy file.

> show sources rip-settings
Displays RIP settings.

> show sources socks-gateways
Displays the SOCKS gateways settings.

> show sources static-route-table
Displays the static routing table information.

> show sources wccp-settings
Displays WCCP settings.

Example
> show sources socks-gateways
# Current SOCKS Gateways Configuration
# No update
# Connection attempts to SOCKS gateways fail: closed
socks_fail closed
# 0 gateways defined, 64 maximum
# SOCKS gateway configuration
# gateway <gateway-alias> <gateway-domain> <SOCKS port>
#   [version=(4|5 [user=<user-name> password=<password>]
#   [request-compression=yes|no]])
# Default fail-over sequence.
# sequence <gateway-alias> <gateway-alias> ...
# The default sequence is empty.
# SOCKS Gateways Configuration Ends
> show ssl

**Synopsis**
Displays SSL settings

**Syntax**

```
> show ssl {ccl [list_name] | ssl-client [ssl_client]}
```

**Subcommands**

```
> show ssl appliance-certificate-request
Displays the CA certificate configuration.

> show ssl ccl [list_name]
Displays currently configured CA certificate lists or configuration for the specified list_name.

> show ssl certificate
Displays the specified certificate configuration.

> show ssl crl
Displays information for the specified crl.

> show ssl external-certificate
Displays the specified external certificate configuration.

> show ssl keypair
Displays the specified key pair configuration.

> show ssl keyring
Displays the specified keyring configuration.

> show ssl keyring [verbose] list_name
Displays the keylist extractor as well as the keyring IDs and their respective extractor values. Use verbose to display the certificate field values of the keylist.

> show ssl ocsp
Displays the specified SSL OCSP configuration.

> show ssl proxy
Displays the SSL proxy configuration.

> show ssl signing-request
Displays the specified certificate signing request configuration.

> show ssl ssl-client [ssl_client]
Displays information about the specified SSL client.

> show ssl ssl-device-profile
Displays information about the specified SSL device profile.

> show ssl ssl-nego-timeout
Displays the SSL negotiation timeout configuration.

> show ssl summary
Displays the SSL summary information.
```

**Example**

```
> show ssl ssl-client
SSL-Client Name   Keyring  CCL      Protocol
----------------- ------ -----     ------------
default           <None>    browser-trusted   tlsv1 tlsv1.1 tlsv1.2
```

> show streaming

**Synopsis**
Displays QuickTime, Real Media, Windows Media, Flash, Apple HLS, Adobe HDS, or Microsoft Smooth configurations and statistics.

**Syntax**
> show streaming [subcommands]

**Subcommands**

> show streaming configuration
Displays global streaming configuration.

> show streaming adobe-hds {configuration}
View the current Adobe HDS configuration.

> show streaming apple-hls {configuration}
View the current Apple HLS configuration.

> show streaming flash {configuration | statistics}
Displays Flash configuration.

> show streaming ms-smooth {configuration}
View the current Microsoft Smooth configuration.

> show streaming quicktime {configuration | statistics}
Displays QuickTime configuration.

> show streaming real-media {configuration | statistics}
Displays Real-Media configuration.

> show streaming windows-media {configuration | statistics}
Displays Windows-Media configuration and statistics.

> show streaming statistics
Displays client and gateway bandwidth statistics.

**For More Information**
- “Managing Streaming Media” chapter in *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Examples**

> show streaming configuration
; Streaming Configuration
max-client-bandwidth: unlimited
max-gateway-bandwidth: unlimited
multicast address: 224.2.128.0 - 224.2.255.255
multicast port: 32768 - 65535
multicast TTL: 16

> show streaming Adobe-HDS configuration
; Adobe HTTP Dynamic Streaming Configuration
http-handoff: enable
> traceroute

Use this command to trace the route to a destination. The `traceroute` command can be helpful in determining where a problem might lie between two points in a network. Use `traceroute` to trace the network path from a ProxySG appliance back to a client or to a specific origin Web server.

Note that you can also use the trace route command from your client station (if supported) to trace the network path between the client, a ProxySG appliance, and a Web server. Microsoft operating systems generally support the trace route command from a command prompt. The syntax from a Microsoft-based client is: `tracert [ip | hostname].`

**Syntax**

> `traceroute {IPv6_address | hostname}`

**Example**

`SGOS> traceroute 10.25.36.47`

Type escape sequence to abort.
Tracing the route to 10.25.36.47
1 10.25.36.47 0 0 0`
> traceroute6

Traces the route to an IPv6 destination. This command can be helpful in determining where a problem might lie between two points in a network.

Use this command to trace the network path from a ProxySG appliance back to a client or to a specific origin Web server.

You can also use this command from your client station (if supported) to trace the network path between the client, an ProxySG appliance, and a Web server. Microsoft operating systems generally support trace route from a command prompt. The syntax from a Microsoft-based client is: `tracert -6 [ip | hostname].`

**Syntax**

> traceroute6 {IPv6_address | hostname}

**Example**

> traceroute6 0:0:0:0:FFFF:9B40:8A65
% traceroute6[22]: bind
Privileged Mode Commands

Privileged mode provides a set of commands that enable you to view, manage, and change ProxySG appliance settings for features such as log files, authentication, caching, DNS, HTTPS, packet capture filters, and security. You cannot configure functionality such as SSL Proxy, HTTP compression, and the like.

The prompt changes from a greater than sign (>) to a pound sign (#), acting as an indicator that you are in privileged mode.

Enter privileged mode from standard mode by using the enable command:

```
SGOS> enable
Enable Password:*********
SGOS#
```
# acquire-utc

**Synopsis**

Use this command to acquire the Universal Time Coordinates (UTC) from a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server. To manage objects, the appliance must know the current UTC time. Your ProxySG appliance comes pre-populated with a list of NTP servers available on the Internet, and attempts to connect to them in the order they appear in the NTP server list on the NTP tab. If the appliance cannot access any of the listed NTP servers, the UTC time must be set manually. For instructions on how to set the UTC time manually, refer to “Accessing the ProxySG Appliance” in the Administration Guide for your release.

**Syntax**

```bash
# acquire-utc
```

The `acquire-utc` command has no parameters or subcommands.

**Example**

```
SGOS# acquire-utc
ok
```
# bridge

## Synopsis

This command clears bridge data.

## Syntax

```
# bridge {subcommands}
```

## Subcommands

```
# bridge clear-statistics bridge_name
   Clears bridge statistics.

# bridge clear-fwtable bridge_name
   Clears bridge forward table.
```

## For More Information

- “Software and Hardware Bridges” in *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

## Example

```
SGOS# bridge clear-statistics testbridge
   ok
```
# cancel-upload

**Synopsis**
This command cancels a pending access-log upload. The cancel-upload command allows you to stop repeated upload attempts if the Web server becomes unreachable while an upload is in progress. This command sets log uploading back to idle if the log is waiting to retry the upload. If the log is in the process of uploading, a flag is set to the log. This flag sets the log back to idle if the upload fails.

**Syntax**
```
# cancel-upload [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**
```
# cancel-upload all
   Cancels upload for all logs.

# cancel-upload log  log_name
   Cancels upload for a specified log.
```

**For More Information**
- “Creating Custom Access Log Formats” in *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**
```
SGOS#  cancel-upload all
   ok
```
# clear-arp

**Synopsis**

The clear-arp command clears the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) table. ARP tables are used to correlate an IP address to a physical machine address recognized only in a local area network. ARP provides the protocol rules for providing address conversion between a physical machine address (also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address) and its corresponding IP address, and vice versa.

**Syntax**

```bash
# clear-arp
```

The `clear-arp` command has no parameters or subcommands.

**Example**

```
SGOS# clear-arp
ok
```
# clear-cache

**Synopsis**

This command clears the byte, dns, or object cache. This can be done at any time. However, keep in mind that if any cache is cleared, performance slows down until the cache is repopulated.

**Note:**  `#clear-cache` with no arguments can also be used to clear the object cache.

**Syntax**

```
# clear-cache [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
# clear-cache byte-cache
Clears the byte cache.

# clear-cache dns-cache
Clears the DNS cache.

# clear-cache object-cache
Sets all objects in the cache to expired.
```

**Example**

```
SGOS# clear-cache byte-cache
ok
```
# clear-errored-connections

**Synopsis**

This command clears historical errored proxied sessions, errored bypassed connections, and errored ADN inbound connections. To view errored proxied sessions in the Management Console, select **Statistics > Sessions > Errored Sessions > Proxied Sessions**. To view errored bypassed connections in the Management console, select **Statistics > Sessions > Errored Sessions > Bypassed Connections**. To view errored ADN inbound connections in the Management Console, select **Statistics > Active Sessions > ADN Inbound Connections**.

**Syntax**

```
#clear-errored-connections (subcommand)
```

**Subcommands**

```
# clear-errored-connections [proxied sessions | bypassed connections | adn-inbound connections]
```

Clears the historical proxied sessions, bypassed connections, or ADN inbound connections.
# clear-statistics

## Synopsis

This command clears the bandwidth-management, persistent, and Windows Media, Real Media, and QuickTime streaming statistics collected by the ProxySG appliance. To view streaming statistics from the CLI, use either the `show streaming {quicktime | real-media | windows-media} statistics` or the `show bandwidth-management statistics [bandwidth_class]` commands. To view streaming statistics from the Management Console, go to either Statistics > Streaming History > Windows Media/Real Media/Quicktime, or to Statistics > Bandwidth Mgmt.

## Syntax

```
# clear-statistics [subcommands]
```

## Subcommands

- **clear-statistics authentication [error | realm realm_name]**
  - Clears the authentication error statistics.

- **clear-statistics bandwidth-management [class class_name]**
  - Clears bandwidth-management statistics, either for all classes at one time or for the bandwidth-management class specified.

- **clear-statistics default-services**
  - Clears statistics for default services.

- **clear-statistics epmapper**
  - Clears Endpoint Mapper statistics.

- **clear-statistics export**
  - Removes export statistics. Once this command is run, the next export only includes the data accumulated since the `clear-statistics export` command was run.

- **clear-statistics persistent [prefix]**
  - Clears statistics that persist after a reboot. You can clear all persistent statistics, or, since statistics are kept in a naming convention of `group:stat`, you can limit the statistics cleared to a specific group. Common prefixes include HTTP, SSL, and SOCKS.

- **clear-statistics quicktime**
  - Clears QuickTime statistics.

- **clear-statistics real-media**
  - Clears Real Media statistics.

- **clear-statistics windows-media**
  - Clears Windows Media statistics.

## Example

```
SGOS# clear-statistics windows-media
ok
```
# configure

**Synopsis**
The privileged mode subcommand `configure`, enables you to manage the ProxySG appliance features.

**Syntax**
```
# config t
```
where `conf` refers to `configure` and `t` refers to `terminal`. This changes the prompt to `#(config)`. At this point you are in `configure terminal` mode and can make permanent changes to the device.

```
# config network url
```
This command downloads a previously loaded web-accessible script, such as a configuration file, and implements the changes in the script onto the system.

**For More Information**
- Chapter 3: “Privileged Mode Configure Commands” on page 103

**Example**
```
# conf n http://1.1.1.1/fconfigure.txt
```
# disable

**Synopsis**

The `disable` command returns you to Standard mode from Privileged mode.

**Syntax**

```
# disable
```

The `disable` command has no parameters or subcommands.

**For More Information**

- > `enable` on page 17
- # `exit` on page 56

**Example**

```
SGOS# disable
SGOS>
```
# disk

## Synopsis

Use the `disk` command to take a disk offline or to re-initialize a disk.

On a multi-disk ProxySG appliance, after issuing the `disk reinitialize disk_number` command, complete the reinitialization by setting it to empty and copying pre-boot programs, boot programs and starter programs, and system images from the master disk to the re-initialized disk. The master disk is the leftmost valid disk. *Valid* indicates that the disk is online, has been properly initialized, and is not marked as invalid or unusable.

### Note:
If the current master disk is taken offline, reinitialized or declared invalid or unusable, the leftmost valid disk that has not been reinitialized since restart becomes the master disk. Thus as disks are reinitialized in sequence, a point is reached where no disk can be chosen as the master. At this point, the current master disk is the last disk. If this disk is taken offline, reinitialized, or declared invalid or unusable, the ProxySG appliance is restarted.

Reinitialization is done without rebooting the system, although the system should not proxy traffic during reinitialization. The ProxySG appliance operations, in turn, are not affected, although during the time the disk is being reinitialized, that disk is not available for caching. Note that only the master disk reinitialization might restart the ProxySG appliance.

## Syntax

```
# disk {subcommands}
```

## Subcommands

### # disk offline disk_number

Takes the disk specified by `disk_number` off line.

### # disk reinitialize disk_number

Reinitializes the disk specified by `disk_number`.

### # disk decrease-object-limit [force]

Decrease the object capacity on all disks so that they will be compatible with releases prior to SGOS 6.2.

**WARNING:** This command should be executed on an idle system only.

On systems that have had their object store capacity increased with the `disk increase-object-limit` command, you want to decrease the object limit before downgrading to pre-6.2 releases. Note that this command preserves configuration, registry settings, policy, licensing files, and the appliance birth certificate; it does not retain cache contents, access logs, event log, or sysinfo snapshots. If the disk already has the decreased object capacity, the disk will not be modified; the command will be aborted.

The `force` option decreases the object limit without prompting or warning.

This command will not work on a single disk system.

**WARNING:** If you do not decrease the object store capacity before downgrading to a pre-6.2 image, the disks will be re-initialized after the downgrade and all data and settings will be lost.

### # disk increase-object-limit [force]

Increase disk object capacity on multi-disk, large-drive systems in order to store more objects on each disk.

The increased object capacity is the default for all multi-disk systems that are manufactured with SGOS 6.2; to get this extra capacity on other systems, you have to initiate this command. Note that the disks will be re-initialized in a format that is not compatible with SGOS releases prior to 6.2. After disk re-initialization, the configuration, registry settings, policy, licensing files, and the appliance birth certificate are preserved; it does
not retain cache contents, access logs, event log, and sysinfo snapshots. If the disk already has the increased object capacity, the disk will not be modified; the command will be aborted.

**WARNING:** This command should be executed on an idle system only.

The *force* option increases the object limit without prompting or warning.

This command will not work on a single disk system.

**WARNING:** Before downgrading to a pre-6.2 release, you must use the disk decrease-object-limit command to decrease the object store capacity. If you fail to do this, all data and settings will be lost after the downgrade.

**Example**

```
SGOS# disk offline 3
  ok
SGOS# disk reinitialize 3
  ok
```
# display

See `> display` on page 16 for more information.
# enable

**Synopsis**

Use this command to enter Privileged mode. Privileged mode commands enable you to view and change your configuration settings. A password is always required.

**Syntax**

> enable

The `enable` command has no parameters or subcommands.

**For More Information**

- # disable on page 51
- #(config) security password and hashed_password on page 372
- #(config) security username on page 397

**Example**

SGOS> enable
Enable Password:******
SGOS# conf t
SGOS(config)

Where `conf t` is a shortcut to typing `configure terminal`. 
# exit

**Synopsis**

Exits from Configuration mode to Privileged mode, from Privileged mode to Standard mode. From Standard mode, the `exit` command closes the CLI session.

**Syntax**

```
# exit
```

The `exit` command has no parameters or subcommands.

**Example**

```
SGOS# exit
```
# fips-mode

## Synopsis
Use this command to enable and disable FIPS mode. This is available only from the serial console.

## Discussion
When you enter FIPS mode, all previous configurations are destroyed. When you exit FIPS mode, all FIPS configurations are destroyed.

## Syntax
```
SG# fips-mode {subcommands}
```

## Subcommands
- `fips-mode enable`
  Enables FIPS mode.
- `fips-mode disable`
  Disables FIPS mode

## Example
```
SGOS# fips-mode enable
```
# help

See Accessing Quick Command Line Help on page 11 for information about this command.
# hide-advanced

**Synopsis**
Use this command to disable advanced commands.

**Note:** You can also use the configure command `SGOS#(config) hide-advanced {all | expand}` to hide commands.

**Syntax**
```
# hide-advanced [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**
- `# hide-advanced all`
  Hides all advanced commands.
- `# hide-advanced expand`
  Disables expanded commands.

**For More Information**
- `# reveal-advanced` on page 78

**Example**
```
SGOS# hide-advanced expand
ok
SGOS# hide-advanced all
ok
```
# inline

**Synopsis**
Installs lists based on your terminal input.

**Discussion**
The easiest way to create installable lists, such as forwarding hosts, PAC files, and policy files, among others, is to take an existing file and modify it, or to create the text file on your local system, upload the file to a Web server, and download the file to the ProxySG appliance. As an alternative, you can enter the list directly into the Proxy SG appliance through the inline command, either by typing the list line by line or by pasting the contents of the file.

If you choose to create a text file to contain the configuration commands and settings, be sure to assign the file the extension `.txt`. Use a text editor to create this file, noting the following ProxySG appliance configuration file rules:

- Only one command (and any associated parameters) permitted, per line
- Comments must begin with a semicolon (`;`)
- Comments can begin in any column, however, all characters from the beginning of the comment to the end of the line are considered part of the comment and, therefore, are ignored

**Tips:**

- When entering input for the inline command, you can correct mistakes on the current line using the backspace key. If you catch a mistake in a line that has already been terminated with the Enter key, you can abort the inline command by typing `<Ctrl-C>`. If the mistake is caught after you terminate input to the inline command, you must re-enter the entire content.
- The end-of-input marker is an arbitrary string chosen by the you to mark the end of input for the current inline command. The string can be composed of standard characters and numbers, but cannot contain any spaces, punctuation marks, or other symbols.
  
  Choose a unique end-of-input string that does not match any string of characters in the configuration information. One recommended end-of-input string is `'''` (three single quotes).

**Syntax**

```
# inline {subcommands} eof_marker
```

**Subcommands**

```
# inline accelerated-pac eof_marker  
  Updates the accelerated pac file with the settings you include between the beginning `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`.

# inline authentication-form form_name eof_marker  
  Install an authentication form from console input

# inline authentication-forms eof_marker  
  Install all authentication form from console input

# inline banner eof_marker  
  Updates the login banner for the telnet and SSH consoles with the settings you include between the beginning `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`.

#inline classification eof_marker
```
(Introduced in 6.5.9.14) Install VPM classification from console input, with the settings you include between the begining `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`.

```plaintext
# inline exceptions `eof_marker`
Install exceptions with the settings you include between the begining `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`.
```

```plaintext
# inline forwarding `eof_marker`
Updates the forwarding configuration with the settings you include between the begining `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`.
```

```plaintext
# inline license-key `eof_marker`
Updates the current license key settings with the settings you include between the begining `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`.
```

```plaintext
# inline policy <policy type> `eof_marker`
Updates the current policy settings—central, local, forward, vpm-cpl, and vpm-xml—with the settings you include between the begining `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`. Tenant and Landlord options are only available when multi-tenant support is enabled. See `#(config general) multi-tenant` for more information.
```

```plaintext
# inline rip-settings `eof_marker`
Updates the current RIP settings with the settings you include between the begining `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`.
```

```plaintext
# inline socks-gateways `eof_marker`
Updates the current SOCKS gateway settings with the settings you include between the begining `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`.
```

```plaintext
# inline static-route-table `eof_marker`
Updates the current static route table settings with the settings you include between the begining `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6.
```

```plaintext
# inline wccp-settings `eof_marker`
Updates the current WCCP settings with the settings you include between the begining `eof_marker` and the ending `eof_marker`.
```

For More Information

- `# load` on page 64

Example

```
SGOS# inline wccp eof
wccp enable eof
```
# kill

**Synopsis**
Terminates a CLI session.

**Syntax**
```bash
    # kill session_number
```
where `session_number` is a valid CLI session number.

**Example**
```bash
> show sessions
Sessions:
#   state type     start                                       elapsed
 01 IDLE             
 02 PRIVL ssh 08 Aug 2006 21:27:51 UTC  23:08:04
 03* NORML ssh 10 Aug 2006 20:35:40 UTC 00:00:15
...
> enable
Enable Password:
# kill 3
 ok
```
# licensing

**Synopsis**

Use these commands to request or update licenses.

**Syntax**

```
# licensing [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

- `licensing enable-trial`
  
  Enable trial period.

- `licensing mark-registered`
  
  Mark the hardware registered manually.

- `licensing disable-trial`
  
  Disable trial period.

- `licensing register-hardware [force] user_ID password`
  
  Register hardware with Blue Coat.

- `licensing request-key [force] user_id password user_ID password`
  
  Requests the license key from Blue Coat using the BTO user ID and password.

- `licensing update-key [force]`
  
  Updates the license key from Blue Coat now.

**For More Information**

- “Licensing” in *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS# licensing request-key

... ok
```

where “...” represents license download-in-progress information.
# load

## Synopsis
Downloads installable lists or system upgrade images. These installable lists or settings also can be updated using the `inline` command.

## Syntax

```bash
# load accelerated-pac
  Downloads the current accelerated pac file settings.

# load authentication-form form_name
  Downloads the new authentication form.

# load authentication-forms
  Downloads the new authentication forms.

# load banner
  Configure the login banner for the telnet and SSH consoles.

# load crl crl_list
  Loads the specified CRL list.

# load exceptions
  Downloads new exceptions.

# load forwarding
  Downloads the current forwarding settings.

# load keydata [<passphrase>]
  Loads the keyrings and keylists from the location specified with `keydata-path`.

# load license-key
  Downloads a new license key.

# load policy {builtin | central | (Introduced in 6.5.9.14) classification | forward | landlord | vpm-cpl | vpm-xml}
  This command upgrades the built-in policy source files, or downloads the specified policy file, from the URL specified in the `#(config) policy <policy_file>-path` command.

# load proxy-client-software
  Loads the ProxyClient software to the Client Manager. To use this command, you must have previously defined an upload location using `#(config) sg-client` on page 413. Messages display as the software loads.

# load rip-settings
  Downloads new RIP settings.

# load socks-gateways
  Downloads the current SOCKS gateways settings.

# load static-route-table
  Downloads the current static route table settings.

# load trust-package
  Downloads and installs the trust package from the specified download path. For information on setting the download path and other trust package download settings, see `#(config) security trust-package` on page 395. Note that any manual changes you have made to the `browser-trusted` or `image-validation` CA Certificate Lists (CCLs) or their associated CA certificates will be preserved. The trust package at the specified download path will only be downloaded and installed if signature validation succeeds and if the timestamp on the trust package indicates that it is a newer version than the existing trust packages that have been downloaded to the ProxySG appliance.
```
Chapter 2: Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

# load upgrade [ignore-warnings]
Downloads the latest system image. The ignore-warnings option allows you to force an upgrade even if you receive policy deprecation or disk compatibility warning. Keep the following in mind when using the ignore-warnings option:

If you use the load upgrade ignore-warnings command to force an upgrade while the system emits deprecation warnings results in a policy load failure; all traffic is allowed or denied according to default policy.

If you use the load upgrade ignore-warnings command to force an upgrade while the system emits disk layout incompatibility warnings, the disks will be re-initialized after the downgrade and all data and settings will be lost.

# load wccp-settings
Downloads the current WCCP settings.

# load timezone-database
Downloads a new time zone database.

For More Information
❐ # inline on page 60

Example

> show download-paths
Policy
  Local:
  Forward:
  VPM-CPL:
  VPM-XML:
  Central: https://download.bluecoat.com/release/SG3/files/CentralPolicy.txt
    Update when changed: no
    Notify when changed: no
    Polling interval: 1 day
  Accelerated PAC:
  RIP settings:
  Static route table:
  Upgrade image:
    bcserver1.bluecoat.com/builds/ca_make.26649/wdir/8xx.CHK_dbg
  WCCP settings:
  Forwarding settings:
  SOCKS gateway settings:
  License key:
  Exceptions:
  Authentication forms:

>en
Enable Password

# load upgrade
Downloading from "bcserver1.bluecoat.com/builds/ca_make.26649/wdir/8xx.CHK_dbg"
Downloading new system software (block 2611)
The new system software has been successfully downloaded. Use "restart upgrade" to install the new system software.
# pcap

## Synopsis

The PCAP utility enables you to capture packets of Ethernet frames entering or leaving a ProxySG appliance. Packet capturing allows filtering on various attributes of the frame to limit the amount of data collected. The collected data can then be transferred to the desktop for analysis.

**Note:** Before using the PCAP utility, consider that packet capturing doubles the amount of processor usage performed in TCP/IP.

To view the captured packets, you must have a tool that can read Packet Sniffer Pro 1.1 files such as Wireshark or Ethereal.

## Syntax

```
# pcap [subcommands]
```

## Subcommands

- **# pcap filter**
  - Specifies filters to use for PCAP.
  - Syntax: `# pcap filter expr "host 10.1.1.1 || host 10.2.2.2 || host 10.1.1.2"`

- **# pcap info**
  - Displays the current packet capture information.

- **# pcap start**
  - Starts the capture.
  - Syntax: `# pcap start`

- **# pcap stop**
  - Stops the capture.

- **# pcap transfer full_url/filename username password**
  - Transfers captured data to an FTP site.

## For More Information

- "SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide"

## Example 1

Capture transactions among a ProxySG appliance (10.1.1.1), a server (10.2.2.2), and a client (10.1.1.2).

```
SGOS# pcap filter expr “host 10.1.1.1 || host 10.2.2.2 || host 10.1.1.2”
```

## Example 2

This example transfers captured packets to the FTP site 10.25.36.47. Note that the username and password are provided.

```
SGOS# pcap transfer ftp://10.25.36.47/path/filename.cap username password
```

If the folders in the path do not exist, they are not created. An error message is generated.
# pcap filter

**Synopsis**
After a filter is set, it remains in effect until it is redefined; the filtering properties are persistent across reboots. However, PCAP stops when a system is rebooted.

**Syntax**
```
# pcap filter [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**
```
# pcap filter [direction {in | out | both}]
Specifies capture in the specified direction. If `both` is selected, both incoming and outgoing packets are captured. The default setting is `both`.

# pcap filter [interface adapter_number:interface_number | all]
Specifies capture on the specified interface or on all interfaces, such as `0:1`. The interface number must be between 0 and 16. The default setting is `all`.

# pcap filter [expr filter_expression]
Specifies capture only when the filter expression matches.

# pcap filter
No filtering specified (captures all packets in both directions—on all interfaces).
```

**For More Information**
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**
This example configures packet capturing in both directions, on all interfaces, to or from port 3035:
```
# pcap filter direction both interface all expr "port 3035"
ok
```

To verify the settings before starting PCAP, enter `pcap info`:
```
SGOS# pcap info
Current state: Stopped
Filtering: On
Filter: direction both interface all expr "port 3035"
Packet capture information:
Packets captured: 0
Bytes captured: 0
Packets written: 0
Bytes written: 0
Coreimage ram used: 0B
Packets filtered through: 0
```
To start PCAP, enter `pcap start`. Then run `pcap info` to view the results of the packet capture.

```
SGOS# pcap start
  ok

SGOS# pcap info
Current state: Capturing
Filtering: On
Filter: direction both interface all expr "port 3035"
Packet capture information:
  first count 4294967295 capsize 100000000 trunc 4294967295 coreimage 0
  Packets captured: 2842
  Bytes captured: 237403
  Packets written: 2836
  Bytes written: 316456
  Coreimage ram used: 0B
  Packets filtered through: 8147
```

After PCAP is stopped (using the `pcap stop` command), enter `pcap info` to view the results of your PCAP session. You should see results similar to the following:

```
SGOS# pcap info
Current state: Stopped
Filtering: On
Filter: direction both interface all expr "port 3035"
Packet capture information:
  Packets captured: 5101
  Bytes captured: 444634
  Packets written: 5101
  Bytes written: 587590
  Coreimage ram used: 0B
  Packets filtered through: 10808
```
# pcap start

## Synopsis

Start packet capture. The `pcap start` options are not persistent across reboots. You must reconfigure them if you reboot the system. The `capsize` and `coreimage` subcommands are used to specify the size of the PCAP file. When no `capsize` or `coreimage` value is specified, the default packet capture file size is 100MB.

## Syntax

```
# pcap start [subcommands]
```

## Subcommands

**[buffering-method]**

Syntax: `[first | last] [count <N>] [capsize <NKB>]`

The buffering method specifies how captured packets are buffered in memory.

**[count]** and **[capsize]**

The `count` option specifies that the buffer limit is controlled by the number of packets stored in the buffer. The value of `count` must be between 1 and 1,000,000.

The `capsize` option specifies the maximum number of bytes stored in the buffer. The `capsize` value is limited to 3% of the available system memory at startup (not to exceed 4GB). This value will differ by appliance model.

---

**Note:** The `capsize` option is an approximate command; it captures an approximate number of packets. The actual size of the file written to disk is a little larger than the `capsize` value because of extra packet information such as time-stamps. If no parameters are specified, the default is to capture until the stop subcommand is issued or the maximum limit reached.

---

**[first]** and **[last]**

The `first` and `last` options affect the buffering behavior when the buffer is full. When `first` is specified, PCAP stops when the buffer limit is exceeded. When `last` is specified, PCAP continues capturing even after the buffer limit has been exceeded. The oldest captured packets are removed from buffer to make space for the newly captured packets: In this way, PCAP captures the last N (or N K bytes of) packets. The saved packets in memory are written to disk when the capture is terminated.

The packet capture file size is limited to 1% of total RAM, which might be reached before n packets have been captured.

---

**Note:** The `first` option is a specific command; it captures an exact number of packets. If no parameters are specified, the default is to capture until the stop subcommand is issued or the maximum limit reached.

---

**[coreimage n]**

Specifies kilobytes of packets kept in a core image. The `coreimage` value is limited to 3% of the available system memory at startup (not to exceed 4GB). This value will differ by appliance model.

**[trunc n]**

The `trunc` parameter collects, at most, n bytes of packets from each frame when writing to disk. The range is 1 to 65535.
Example 1
The following command captures the first 2000 packets that match the filtering expression:

```
# pcap start first count 2000
```

Note that the `first` option configures PCAP to stop capturing after the buffer limit of 2000 packets has been reached. If the `last` option had been specified, PCAP keeps capturing packets even after the buffer limit had been exceeded, until halted by the `pcap stop` command.

Example 2
The following command stops the capturing of packets after approximately three kilobytes of packets have been collected.

```
SGOS# pcap start first capsize 3
```

Example 3
The following command configures the ProxySG appliance to capture 110MB into bluecoat.cap.

```
sgos# pcap start first capsize 110000
```

Example 4
To determine the maximum PCAP file size for your appliance, run the following command:

```
sgos# pcap start first capsize 9999999
```

Packet capsize must be between 1 and 111184

Example 5
If a `capsize` and `coreimage` value are both specified, the maximum of the two values is used for both. For example:

```
sgos# pcap start coreimage 110000 first capsize 105000
```

In this example, 110MB will be captured into bluecoat.cap and into the core image memory.
# ping

## Synopsis
Use this command to verify that a particular IP address exists and can accept requests. Ping output also tells you the minimum, maximum, and average time it took for the ping test data to reach the other computer and return to the origin.

## Syntax
```
> ping {IPv4 address | hostname}
```

## Subcommands
- `> ping IPv4 address`
  Specifies the IPv4 address you want to verify.
- `> ping hostname`
  Specifies the name of the host you want to verify.

## Example
```
SGOS> ping 10.25.36.47
Type escape sequence to abort.
Sending 5, 64-byte ICMP Echos to 10.25.36.47, timeout is 2 seconds:
!!!!!
Success rate is 100 percent (5/5),
round-trip min/avg/max = 0/0/1 ms
Number of duplicate packets received = 0
```
# policy

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure policy commands.

---

**Note:** Configuring the policy command to trace all transactions by default can significantly degrade performance and should only be used in situations where a problem is being diagnosed.

---

**Syntax**

```plaintext
# policy trace {all | none | proxy-traffic}
```

Use `all` to trace all transactions by default, use `none` to specify no tracing except as specified in policy files, and `proxy-traffic` to trace all proxy transactions by default.

**Example**

```plaintext
policy trace all
  ok
All requests will be traced by default;
Warning: this can significantly degrade performance.
Use 'policy trace none' to restore normal operation
SGOS# policy trace none
  ok
```
# register-with-director

**Synopsis**

The register-with-director command is a setup command that automatically registers the ProxySG appliance with a Blue Coat Director, thus enabling that Director to establish a secure administrative session with the. During the registration process, Director can “lock out” all other administrative access to the appliance so that all configuration changes are controlled and initiated by Director.

If your appliance does not have an appliance certificate, you must specify the registration password that is configured on Director.

**Syntax**

```
# register-with-director dir_ip_address [appliance_name dir_serial_number]
```

**Example**

```
SGOS# register-with-director 192.0.2.0
Registration Successful
```
# reset-ui

**Synopsis**
Restores the Blue Coat Sky user-interface from the system image.

**Syntax**
```
# reset-ui
```

**Example**
```
SGOS# reset-ui
Resetting UI to bound system version...
ok
```
# restart

**Synopsis**

Restarts the system. The restart options determine whether the ProxySG appliance should simply reboot (regular) or reboot using the new image previously downloaded using the `load upgrade` command (upgrade).

**Syntax**

```
# restart [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

- `restart abrupt`
  
  Reboots the system abruptly, according to the version of the ProxySG appliance that is currently installed. Restart abrupt saves a core image. Note that the restart can take several minutes using this option.

- `restart regular`
  
  Reboots the version of the ProxySG appliance that is currently installed

- `restart upgrade`
  
  Reboots the system and boots the image selected as default.

**For More Information**

- `# load` on page 64

**Example**

```
SGOS# restart upgrade
ok
SGOS# Read from remote host 203.0.113.0: Connection reset by peer
Connection to 203.0.113.0 closed.
```
# restore-sgos5-config

Restores the ProxySG appliance to settings last used with SGOS 5.x. The ProxySG appliance retains the network settings. Note that a reboot is required to complete this command.

**Syntax**

```
# restore-sgos5-config
```

**Example**

```
SGOS# restore-sgos5-config
Restoring SGOS 5.x configuration requires a restart to take effect.
The current configuration will be lost and the system will be restarted.
Continue with restoring? (y/n)[n]: y
Restoring configuration ...
```

Or if there is no SGOS 5.x configuration found:

```
SGOS# restore-sgos5-config
%% No SGOS 5.x configuration is available on this system.
```

**For More Information**

- [# restore-defaults](#) on page 77
# restore-defaults

**Synopsis**
Restores the ProxySG appliance to the default configuration. When you restore system defaults, the ProxySG appliance’s IP address, default gateway, and the DNS server addresses are cleared. In addition, any lists (for example, forwarding or bypass) are cleared. After restoring system defaults, you need to restore the ProxySG appliance’s basic network settings and reset any customized configuration elements.

**Syntax**
```
# restore-defaults [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**
- `# restore-defaults factory-defaults`
  Reinitializes the ProxySG appliance to the original settings it had when it was shipped from the factory. This option resets all system settings, including the setup console password.
- `# restore-defaults force`
  Restores the system defaults without confirmation.
  If you don’t use the `force` command, you are prompted to enter `yes` or `no` before the restoration can proceed.
- `# restore-defaults keep-console [force]`
  Restores defaults except settings required for console access. Using the `keep-console` option retains the following settings:
  - Settings for all consoles (Telnet-, SSH-, HTTP-, and HTTPS-consoles), whether they are enabled, disabled, or deleted.
  - IP Addresses, including Gateways and DNS (VIPs are not retained)
  - Static Routes information
  If you use the `force` command, you are not prompted to enter `yes` or `no` before restoration can proceed.

**For More Information**
- “Maintaining the ProxySG Appliance” in *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**
```
SGOS# restore-defaults
Restoring defaults requires a restart to take effect.
The current configuration will be lost and the system will be restarted.
Continue with restoring? (y/n)[n]: n
Existing configuration preserved.
```
# reveal-advanced

**Synopsis**

The `reveal-advanced` command allows you to enable all or a subset of the advanced commands available to you when using the CLI. You can also use `SGOS#(config) hide-advanced {all | expand}` to reveal hidden commands.

**Syntax**

```
# reveal-advanced [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

- `reveal-advanced all` Reveals all advanced commands.
- `reveal-advanced expand` Enables expanded commands.

**For More Information**

- `hide-advanced` on page 59

**Example**

```
SGOS# reveal-advanced all
ok
```
Chapter 2:  Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

# show
The # show command displays all the show commands available in the standard mode plus the show commands available only in privileged mode and configuration mode. Only show commands available in privileged mode are discussed here. For show commands also available in the standard mode, see > show on page 22.

Synopsis
Use this command to display system information.

Syntax
# show [subcommands]

Subcommands

# show adn on page 84
Displays ADN configuration.

# show appliance-identifier
Displays the identifier of the appliance. The appliance identifier is the same as the value returned in the access log and policy substitution x-bluecoat-appliance-identifier. Refer to the "CPL Substitutions" appendix in the Content Policy Language Reference.

# show appliance-name
Displays the name of the appliance.

# show archive-configuration
Displays archive configuration settings.

# show attack-detection on page 85
Displays client attack-detection settings.

# show configuration on page 87
Displays system configuration.

# show connection-forwarding
Displays TCP connection forwarding status and peer IP address list.

# show content on page 88
Displays content-management commands.

# show content-filter {bluecoat | i-filter | intersafe | iwf | local | optenet | proventia | surfcontrol | status | webwasher}
Shows settings for Blue Coat Web Filter or the various third-party content-filtering vendors. You can get information on current content-filtering status by using the # show content-filter status command.

# show geolocation on page 89
Displays geolocation settings.

# show policy {listing | order | proxy-default}
Displays details for the specified policy element.

# show proxy-client
Displays ProxyClient settings.

# show proxy-services on page 90
Displays information on static and dynamic bypass and proxy-service behavior.

# show realms
Displays the status of each realm.

# show security on page 91
Displays security settings.
> show sources on page 37
    Displays content for the specified element.

# show ssh-console on page 92
    Displays SSH settings.

# show session-monitor
    Displays the session monitor, which monitors RADIUS accounting messages and maintains a session table based on the information in these messages.

# show ssl on page 93
    Also available in standard mode, the # show ssl command offers more options in privileged mode.

# show statistics-export
    Shows the settings for exporting statistics. This command displays the same information as the # (config statistics-export) view command. See # (config) statistics-export on page 468.

# show system-resource-metrics
    Displays system resource statistics.

Examples

# show archive-configuration
Archive configuration
    Protocol: FTP
    Host: 
    Path: 
    Filename:
    Username: 
    Password: ************

# show content-filter status
Provider: Blue Coat
Status: Ready
Lookup mode: Always
Download URL: https://list.bluecoat.com/bcwf/activity/download/bcwf.db
Download Username: BCWF-AUG1511
Automatic download: Enabled
Check for updates: All day
Category review message: Enabled
Dynamic Categorization:
    Service: Disabled
    Mode: Real-time
    Secure: Disabled
    Forward Target: <none>
    SOCKS Gateway Target: <none>
    Send request info: Enabled
    Send malware info: Enabled
Download log:
    Blue Coat download at: 2011/09/14 22:50:18 +0000
    Downloading from https://list.bluecoat.com/bcwf/activity/download/bcwf.db
    Requesting differential update
    Update cache entries: 1422
    Update cache version: 312570520
    File has not changed since last download attempt; no download required

Previous download:
Chapter 2: Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

Blue Coat download at: 2011/09/14 20:26:50 +0000
Downloading from https://list.bluecoat.com/bcwf/activity/download/bcwf.db
Requesting differential update
Download size: 57592
Differential update applied successfully
Database size: 276557578
Database date: Wed, 14 Sep 2011 20:14:41 UTC
Database expires: Fri, 14 Oct 2011 20:14:41 UTC
Database version: 312570500
Database format: 1.1
Memory Allocation: Normal
CPU Throttle: Enabled

# show realms
Local realm:
  No local realm is defined.
RADIUS realm:
  Realm name: RADIUS1
  Display name: RADIUS1
  Case sensitivity: enabled
  Primary server host: 10.9.59.210
  Primary server port: 1812
  Primary server secret: ************
  Alternate server host:
  Alternate server port: 1812
  Alternate server secret: ************
  Server retry count: 5
  Cache duration: 900
  Virtual URL:
  Server timeout: 5
  Spoof authentication: none
  One time passwords: no
LDAP realm(s):
  No LDAP realms are defined.

#show system-resource-metrics
Title Health Monitor Stats
Version 1.1

Overall Health
Current State: OK
Last Transition: Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:50:13 UTC

Health Stats
Stat: CPU Utilization
  Current State: OK
  Last Transition: Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:52 UTC
  Current Value: 1
  Unit of Measurement: percent
  Warning Threshold: 80
  Warning Interval: 120
  Critical Threshold: 95
  Critical Interval: 120
  Notification Method: log

Stat: Memory Utilization
  Current State: OK
  Last Transition: Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:52 UTC
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat: Interface 0:0 Utilization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current State                 : OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Transition               : Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:52 UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Value                 : 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit of Measurement           : percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Threshold             : 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Interval              : 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical Threshold            : 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical Interval             : 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Method           : log</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat: Interface 0:1 Utilization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current State                 : OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Transition               : Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:52 UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Value                 : 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit of Measurement           : percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Threshold             : 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning Interval              : 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical Threshold            : 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical Interval             : 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Method           : log</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat: Disk 1 Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current State       : OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Transition     : Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:57 UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Value       : present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Method : log, mail, trap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat: Motherboard temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current State                 : OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Transition               : Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:52 UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Value                 : 32.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit of Measurement           : degrees C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Critical Threshold       : 75.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Warning Threshold        : 65.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Method           : log, mail, trap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat: CPU temperature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current State         : OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Transition       : Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:52 UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Value         : 33.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unit of Measurement   : degrees C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Critical Threshold: 90.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High Warning Threshold : 75.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Method   : log, mail, trap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat: ADN Connection Status</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current State              : OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Transition            : Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:52 UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current Value              : Functionality disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Method        : log, mail, trap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stat: ADN Manager Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current State</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Last Transition</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current Value</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notification Method</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat: Health Check Status</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current State</strong></td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Last Transition</strong></td>
<td>Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:50:13 UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current Value</strong></td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notification Method</strong></td>
<td>log, mail, trap</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat: Cloud Services: Common Policy Expiration</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current State</strong></td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Last Transition</strong></td>
<td>Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:52 UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current Value</strong></td>
<td>Functionality disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit of Measurement</strong></td>
<td>days left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Warning Threshold</strong></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Warning Interval</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Critical Threshold</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Critical Interval</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notification Method</strong></td>
<td>log</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stat: Cloud Services: Common Policy Error Status</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current State</strong></td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Last Transition</strong></td>
<td>Thu, 20 Sep 2012 14:49:57 UTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current Value</strong></td>
<td>Functionality disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unit of Measurement</strong></td>
<td>hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Warning Threshold</strong></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Warning Interval</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Critical Threshold</strong></td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Critical Interval</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Notification Method</strong></td>
<td>log</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# show adn

**Synopsis**
Displays ADN settings and statistics.

**Syntax**

```bash
# show adn [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```bash
# show adn byte-cache
Displays ADN byte-cache settings.
```

```bash
# show adn routing [advertise-internet-gateway | server-subnets]
Displays ADN routing settings.
```

```bash
# show adn tunnel
Displays ADN tunnel configuration.
```

**For More Information**

- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

**Example**

```bash
# show adn
Application Delivery Network Configuration:
  ADN:                      disabled
  Manager port:             3034
  Tunnel port:               3035
  Primary manager:        none
  Backup manager:         none
  External VIP:               none
Byte-cache Configuration:
  Max number of peers: 10347
  Max peer memory:         30
Tunnel Configuration:
  proxy-processing http:    disabled
  TCP window size:             65536
  reflect-client-ip :              use-local-ip
Routing Configuration:
  Internet Gateway:         disabled
  Exempt Server subnet: 10.0.0.0/8
  Exempt Server subnet: 172.16.0.0/16
  Exempt Server subnet: 192.168.0.0/16
```
# show attack-detection

## Synopsis
Displays client attack-detection settings and client and server statistics.

## Syntax
```
# show attack-detection [subcommands]
```

## Subcommands
- `# show attack-detection client [blocked | connections | statistics]`
  Displays client attack-detection settings.
- `# show attack-detection configuration`
  Displays attack-detection configuration.
- `# show attack-detection server [statistics]`
  Displays server connection failure statistics.
# show cachepulse

## Synopsis
Displays CachePulse statistics, such as license information, registration status, the download URL for the CachePulse database, results of the last download, and the last successful download.

## Syntax
```
# show cachepulse
```

## Example
```
# show cachepulse
License Type:          Subscription
Licensed Until:        Thu, 01 Jan 2015 00:00:00 UTC
Service:               Enabled
Download method:       Direct
Last successful download:
  Time:                 Tue, 30 Jul 2013 17:35:00 UTC
  Downloading from:     https://subscription.es.bluecoat.com/cachepulse/latestPolicy
  Version:              20130402
```
Chapter 2: Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

# show configuration

**Synopsis**
Displays the current configuration, as different from the default configuration.

**Syntax**

`# show configuration [subcommands]`

**Subcommands**

`# show configuration`
Displays all settings

`# show configuration brief`
Displays the configuration without inline expansion.

`# show configuration expanded`
Displays the configuration with inline expansion.

`# show configuration noprompts`
Displays the configuration without --More-- prompts.

`# show configuration post-setup`
Displays the configuration made after console setup.

`# show configuration versions`
Displays the configurations saved for each SGOS version.

**Example**
Assuming non-default settings of:

- policy = <Proxy> DENY
- IP address of 10.167.42.38

```
interface 0:0 ;mode
ip-address 10.167.42.38
exit

inline policy local "end-326998078-inline"
<Proxy>
DENY
end-326998078-inline
```
# show content

**Synopsis**
Displays content-management commands. Note that you must be in enable mode to use the `show content` command.

**Syntax**
```
# show content [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**
- `# show content outstanding-requests`
  Displays the complete list of outstanding asynchronous content revalidation and distribute requests.
- `# show content priority [regex regex | url url]`
  Displays the deletion priority value assigned to the `regex` or `url`, respectively
- `# show content url url`
  Displays statistics of the specified URL To enter file or directory names that contain spaces, substitute each space with the following escape code: `%20`. If the `url` contains a percent sign, substitute the `%` with `%25`.

To show a CIFS file, the `url` should conform to the following format:
```
cifs://server/share/path-to-file
```
To show HTTP content, the `url` should use the following format:
```
http://host:port/path-to-file
```
To show FTP content, the `url` should use the following format:
```
ftp://host:port/path-to-file
```
To show streaming content, the `url` should use one of the following formats:
```
rtsp://host:port/path-to-file
mms://host:port/path-to-file
```

**For More Information**
- `SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide`
# show geolocation

Displays geolocation settings related to database download status and countries listed in the database.

Syntax

```
# show geolocation [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

```
# show geolocation
Displays the download URL for the geolocation database, and results of the last download and the last successful
download. This subcommand produces the same output as the `#(config geolocation) view` command.

# show geolocation countries
Displays a list of countries defined in the geolocation database (if one has been downloaded). In addition, this
subcommand also displays system-defined conditions for country names when geolocation is not enabled or
licensed, or if the database is otherwise unavailable. This subcommand produces the same output as the `#(config
geolocation) view countries` command.
```

Example

```
#show geolocation
License Type:           Subscription
Licensed Until:         Thu, 01 Jan 2015 00:00:00 UTC
Service:                Enabled
Download method:        Direct
Last successful download:
  Time:                 Wed, 10 Apr 2013 17:16:54 UTC
  Downloading from:     https://subscription.es.bluecoat.com/geoip/database
  Version:              20130402
```
# show proxy-services

**Synopsis**
Information about proxy services

**Syntax**

```
# show proxy-services [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
# show proxy-services
   Displays all proxy services configured on the system.

# show proxy-services dynamic-bypass
   Displays dynamic-bypass information.

# show proxy-services services bypass
   Display services containing a bypass action.

# show proxy-services services intercept
   Display services containing an intercept action.

# show proxy-services services name
   Display services with name substring match.

# show proxy-services services proxy
   Display services using a specific proxy.

# show proxy-services static-bypass
   Displays static-bypass information.
```

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*
Chapter 2: Standard and Privileged Mode Commands

# show security

Synopsis
Displays information about security parameters.

Syntax

```
# show security [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

```
# show security
Displays all security settings on the system.

# show security authentication-errors
Displays all authentication errors.

# show security authentication-forms
Displays authentication forms configured on the system.

# show security local-user-list
Displays the local user list configured on the system.

# show security local-user-list-group
Displays the groups in local user list.

# show security local-user-list-user
User in local user list

# show security trust-package
Displays information about the trust package download settings and the status of the latest download.
```

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

```
# show security
Account:
  Username: "admin"
  Hashed Password: $1$it$24YXwuAGbmvQ17zhaeG5u.
  Hashed Enable Password: $1$U1JZbCl1$itmTNhAwhymF2BWrBnum1/
  Hashed Front Panel PIN: "$1$50KI$KR0RtYxQ10226cL.5Pq5."
  Management console display realm name: ""
  Web interface session timeout: 15 minutes
  CLI session timeout: 5 minutes
  Access control is disabled
  Access control list (source, mask):
  Flush credentials on policy update is enabled
  Default authenticate.mode: auto
  Transparent proxy authentication:
    Method: cookie
    Cookie type: session
    Cookie virtual-url: "www.cfauth.com/"
  IP time-to-live: 15
  Verify IP: yes
  Allow redirects: no
```
# show ssh-console

**Synopsis**
Displays the SSH service details.

**Syntax**
```
# show ssh-console [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**
```
# show ssh-console client-key [username]
Displays the client key fingerprint for the specified username.

# show ssh-console director-client-key [key_id]
Displays all client key fingerprints or the client key fingerprint of the specified key ID.

# show ssh-console host-public-key [sshv1 | sshv2]
Displays the sshv1 or sshv2 host public key. Both keys are displayed if you do not specify a version.

# show ssh-console user-list
Displays a list of users with imported RSA client keys.

# show ssh-console versions-enabled
Displays which SSH version or versions are enabled.
```

**For More Information**

° *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**
```
# show ssh-console versions-enabled
SSHv2 is enabled.
```
# show ssl

## Synopsis
Displays SSL settings.

## Syntax
```
# show ssl [subcommands]
```

## Subcommands
- `show ssl ca-certificate name`  
  Displays the CA certificate configuration.
- `show ssl ccl [list_name]`  
  Displays currently configured CA certificate lists or configuration for the specified list_name. This option can also be viewed from standard mode.
- `show ssl certificate keyring_id`  
  Displays the certificate configuration for the specified keyring.
- `show ssl crl crl_id`  
  Displays the SSL certificate Revocation List (CRL) of the specified ID.
- `show ssl external-certificate name`  
  Displays external certificate configuration of the specified name.
- `show ssl intercept`  
  Displays the SSL intercept configuration.
- `show ssl keypair {des | des3 | unencrypted} keyring_id`  
  Displays the keypair. If you want to view the keypair in an encrypted format, you can optionally specify des or des3 before the keyringID. If you specify either des or des3, you are prompted for the challenge entered when the keyring was created.
- `show ssl keyring [keyring_id]`  
  Displays all keyrings or the keyring of the specified ID.
- `show ssl secure-signing-request keyring_id`  
  Displays signed certificate signing request for the specified keyring.
- `show ssl signing-request keyring_id`  
  Displays the certificate signing request configuration for the specified keyring.
- `show ssl ssl-client [ssl_client]`  
  Displays information about all SSL clients or the specified SSL client. This option can also be viewed from standard mode.
- `show ssl ssl-nego-timeout`  
  Displays the SSL negotiation timeout configuration.
- `show ssl summary {ca-certificate | crl | external-certificate}`  
  Displays the SSL summary information for CA certificates, CRLs, or external certificates.

## For More Information
- `SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide`
Example

```bash
# show ssl keyring
KeyringID: configuration-passwords-key
  Is private key showable? yes
  Have CSR? no
  Have certificate? no
KeyringID: default
  Is private key showable? yes
  Have CSR? no
  Have certificate? yes
  Is certificate date range valid? yes
  CA: Blue Coat SG200 Series
  Expiration Date: Mar 02 22:25:32 2016 GMT
```
# temporary-route

This command is used to manage temporary route entries. After a reboot these routes are lost.

Syntax

```
# temporary-route [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

- `# temporary-route add destination_address netmask gateway_address`
  Adds a temporary route entry.
- `# temporary-route delete destination_address`
  Deletes a temporary route entry.
# test

This command is used to test subsystems. A test http get command to a particular origin server or URL, for example, can verify Layer 3 connectivity and also verify upper layer functionality.

Syntax

```
# test [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

```
# test adn IP_server_address port
Tests the ADN connection by connecting to a server. The IP_server_address can be either IPv4 or IPv6.

# test content-filter URL
Displays the categories for the specified URL, as determined by the content filter data source and policy.

# test dns [host_name|IP_address] [ipv4|ipv6] [DNS_server_IP] [bypass-cache]
Performs a DNS lookup and displays debugging information that describes the lookup.

Note: If you invoke the DNS_server_IP option, the bypass-cache option is implied and is not required.
```

```
# test geolocation IP_address
Displays the country associated with an IP address. You must have a geolocation database and a valid subscription in order to use the geolocation feature.

# test http get URL
Does a test GET of an HTTP object specified by URL.

# test service source-ip destination-ip port-range [protocol-type]
Perform a test of proxy services to determine how a specific request will be handled (bypass/intercept) by the ProxySG appliance, based on client address and destination address and port.
```

Example

```
SGOS# test service 192.168.1.5 8.21.6.225 80
Service : External HTTP
Proxy Type : http
Listener Match : All -> Transparent (80)
Action : intercept

SGOS# test http get http://www.google.com
Type escape sequence to abort.
Executing HTTP get test
* HTTP request header sent:
GET http://www.google.com/ HTTP/1.0
Host: www.google.com
User-Agent: HTTP_TEST_CLIENT
* HTTP response header recv'd:
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Connection: close
Date: Tue, 15 Jul 2003 22:42:12 GMT
Cache-control: private
Content-Type: text/html
Content-length: 2691
Set-Cookie: PREF=ID=500cde1707c20ac;TM=1058308932;LM=1058308932;S=du3WuiW7FC_lJ
Rgn; expires=Sun, 17-Jan-2038 19:14:07 GMT; path=/; domain=.google.com
```
Measured throughput rate is 66.72 Kbytes/sec
HTTP get test passed
# traceroute

See > traceroute on page 40.
# traceroute6

See > traceroute6 on page 41.
# upload

Uploads the current access log or running configuration.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
# upload {subcommands}
```

**Subcommands**

- `upload access-log all`
  Uploads all access logs to a configured host.

- `upload access-log log log_name`
  Uploads a specified access log to a configured host.

- `upload configuration`
  Uploads running configuration to a configured host.

**Example**

```bash
SGOS# upload configuration
ok
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

This chapter describes and provides examples for privileged mode configure command, which allows you to configure the ProxySG appliance settings.

Configure Mode Commands

The configure command, available only in enabled mode, allows you to configure the Blue Coat ProxySG settings from your current terminal session (configure terminal), or by loading a text file of configuration settings from the network (configure network).

The prompt changes from a pound sign (#) to a #(config) prompt, acting as an indicator that you are in configuration mode.

Enter configuration mode from privileged mode by using the configure command:

```
SGOS# conf t
SGOS#(config)
```

No additional password is required to enter configure mode.
#(config) accelerated-pac

**Syntax**

#(config) accelerated-pac no path  
Clears the network path to download PAC file.

#(config) accelerated-pac path url  
Specifies the location on the Web server from which the PAC file should be downloaded.

**For More Information**

- # inline on page 60
- # load on page 64

**Example**

#(config) accelerated-pac path  
http://www.comp.com/pac/accelerated_pac_base.pac

#(config) load accelerated-pac
#(config) access-log

**Synopsis**
The ProxySG can maintain an access log for each HTTP request made. The access log can be stored in one of three formats, which can be read by a variety of reporting utilities.

**Syntax**
```plaintext
#(config) access-log
```
This changes the prompt to:
```plaintext
#(config access-log)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config access-log) create log log_name
  Creates an access log.
#(config access-log) create format format_name
  Creates an access log format.
#(config access-log) cancel-upload all
  Cancels upload for all logs.
#(config access-log) cancel-upload log log_name
  Cancels upload for a log
#(config access-log) default-logging {cifs | epmapper | ftp | http
  | https-forward-proxy | https-reverse-proxy | im | mapi | mms | p2p | rtsp | socks | ssl | tcp-tunnel | telnet} log_name
  Sets the default log for the specified protocol.
#(config access-log) delete log log_name
  Deletes an access log.
#(config access-log) delete format format_name
  Deletes an access log format.
#(config access-log) disable
  Disables access logging.
#(config access-log) early-upload megabytes
  Sets the log size in megabytes that triggers an early upload.
#(config access-log) edit log log_name—changes the prompt (see #(config
  log log_name) on page 106)
#(config access-log) edit format format_name—changes the prompt (see
  #(config format format_name) on page 110)
#(config access-log) enable
  Enables access logging.
#(config access-log) exit
  Exits #(config access-log) mode and returns to #(config) mode.
#(config access-log) max-log-size megabytes
  Sets the maximum size in megabytes that logs can reach.
```
#(config access-log) no default-logging {cifs | epmapper | ftp | http | https-forward-proxy | https-reverse-proxy | im | mapi | mms | p2p | rtsp | socks | ssl | tcp-tunnel | telnet}
Disables default logging for the specified protocol.

#(config access-log) overflow-policy delete
Deletes the oldest log entries (up to the entire log).

#(config access-log) overflow-policy stop
Stops access logging until logs are uploaded.

#(config access-log) upload all
Uploads all logs.

#(config access-log) upload log log_name
Uploads a log.

#(config access-log) view
Shows access logging settings.

#(config access-log) view {log {brief | log_name}}
Shows the entire access log configuration, a brief version of the access log configuration, or the configuration for a specific access log.

#(config access-log) view {format {brief | format_name}}
Shows the entire log format configuration, a brief version of the log format configuration, or the configuration for a specific log format.

#(config access-log) view {statistics {log_name}}
Shows access log statistics for all logs or for the specified log.

#(config access-log) view default-logging
Shows the access log default policy

Example

```
SGOS#(config) access-log
SGOS#(config access-log) create log test
  ok
SGOS#(config access-log) max-log-size 1028
  ok
SGOS#(config access-log) overflow-policy delete
  ok
```

View the results. (This is a partial output.)

```
SGOS#(config access-log) view log
Settings:
  Log name: main
  Format name: main
  Description: Logs uploaded using FTP client
  Logs upload as gzip file
  Wait 60 seconds between server connection attempts
  FTP client:
  Filename format: SG_%f_%l%m%d%H%M%S.log
  Filename uses utc time
  Use PASV: yes
  Use secure connections: no
  Primary host site:
  Host: 
  Port: 21
  Path: 
  Username: 
```
Password: ************
Alternate host site:
Host:
Port: 21
Path:
#(config log log_name)

## Synopsis

Use these commands to edit an access log.

## Syntax

```
#(config) access-log
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config access-log)
```

```
#(config access-log) edit log log_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config log log_name)
```

### Subcommands

```
#(config log log_name) bandwidth-class bwm_class_name
```

Specifies a bandwidth-management class for managing the bandwidth of this log. In order to bandwidth-manage this log, bandwidth management must be enabled. Bandwidth management is enabled by default.

---

**Note:** You must also create a bandwidth class for this access log (in bandwidth-management mode) before you can select it here. See `#(config) bandwidth-management` on page 137 for more information.

```
#(config log log_name) client-type bluecoat
```

Uploads log using the Blue Coat Reporter client.

```
#(config log log_name) client-type custom
```

Uploads log using the custom client.

```
#(config log log_name) client-type ftp
```

Uploads log using the FTP client.

```
#(config log log_name) client-type http
```

Uploads log using the HTTP client.

```
#(config log log_name) client-type none
```

Disables uploads for this log.

```
#(config log log_name) commands cancel-upload
```

Disables uploads for this log.

```
#(config log log_name) commands close-connection
```

Closes a manually opened connection to the remote server.

```
#(config log log_name) commands delete-logs
```

Permanently deletes all access logs on the appliance.

```
#(config log log_name) commands open-connection
```

Manually opens a connection to the remote server.

```
#(config log log_name) commands rotate-remote-log
```

Switches to a new remote log file.

```
#(config log log_name) commands send-keep-alive
```

Sends a keep-alive log packet to the remote server.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config log log_name) commands test-upload
Tests the upload configuration by uploading a verification file.

#(config log log_name) commands upload-now
Uploads access log now.

#(config log log_name) connect-wait-time seconds
Sets time to wait between server connect attempts.

#(config log log_name) continuous-upload seconds
Uploads access log continuously to remote server.

#(config log log_name) continuous-upload keep-alive seconds
Sets the interval between keep-alive log packets.

#(config log log_name) continuous-upload lag-time seconds
Sets the maximum time between log packets (text upload only).

#(config log log_name) continuous-upload rotate-remote {daily rotation_hour (0-23) | hourly hours [minutes]}
Specifies when to switch to new remote log file.

#(config log log_name) custom-client alternate hostIP-address
Configures the alternate custom server address. The hostIP-address must be defined as an IPv4 address.

#(config log log_name) custom-client no {alternate | primary}
Deletes the alternate or primary custom host site.

#(config log log_name) custom-client primary hostIP-address [port]
Configures the primary custom server address. The hostIP-address must be defined as an IPv4 address.

#(config log log_name) custom-client secure {no | yes}
Selects whether to use secure connections (SSL). The default is no.

#(config log log_name) description description
Sets the log description.

#(config log log_name) description description
Sets the log description.

#(config log log_name) early-upload megabytes
Sets log size in megabytes that triggers an early upload.

#(config log log_name) encryption certificate certificate_name
Specifies access-log encryption settings.

#(config log log_name) exit
Exits #(config log log_name) mode and returns to #(config access-log) mode.

#(config log log_name) format-name format_name
Sets the log format.

#(config log log_name) ftp-client alternate {[encrypted-password encrypted_password | host hostname [port] | password password | path path | username username}]
Configures the alternate FTP host site. The hostname can be defined as an IPv4 or IPv6 address, or a domain name that resolves to an IPv4 or IPv6 address.

#(config log log_name) ftp-client filename format
Configures the remote filename format.
#(config log log_name) ftp-client no {alternate | filename | primary}
Deletes the remote filename format or the alternate or primary host parameters.

#(config log log_name) ftp-client pasv {no | yes}
Sets whether PASV or PORT command is sent.

#(config log log_name) ftp-client primary {encrypted-password
encrypted_password | host hostname [port] | password password |
path path | username username}
Configures the primary FTP host site. The hostname can be defined as an IPv4 or IPv6
address, or a domain name that resolves to an IPv4 or IPv6 address.

#(config log log_name) ftp-client secure {no | yes}
Selects whether to use secure connections (FTPS). The default is no. If yes, the hostname
must match the hostname in the certificate presented by the server.

#(config log log_name) ftp-client time-format {local | utc}
Selects the time format to use within upload filename.

#(config log log_name) http-client alternate {encrypted-password
encrypted_password | host hostname [port] | password password |
path path | username username}
Configures the alternate HTTP host site. The hostname can be defined as an IPv4 or IPv6
address, or a domain name that resolves to an IPv4 or IPv6 address.

#(config log log_name) http-client filename format
Configures the remote filename format.

#(config log log_name) http-client no {alternate | filename | primary}
Deletes the remote filename format or the alternate or primary host parameters.

#(config log log_name) http-client primary {encrypted-password
encrypted_password | host hostname [port] | password password |
path path | username username}
Configures the primary HTTP host site. The hostname can be defined as an IPv4 or IPv6
address, or a domain name that resolves to an IPv4 or IPv6 address.

#(config log log_name) http-client secure {no | yes}
Selects whether to use secure connections (HTTPS). The default is no. If yes, the hostname
must match the hostname in the certificate presented by the server.

#(config log log_name) http-client time-format {local | utc}
Selects the time format to use within upload filename.

#(config log log_name) no {encryption | bandwidth-class | signing}
Disables access-log encryption, bandwidth management, or digital signing for this log.

#(config log log_name) periodic-upload enable
Uploads access log daily/hourly to remote server.

#(config log log_name) periodic-upload upload-interval {daily
upload_hour (0-23) | hourly hours [minutes]}
Specifies access log upload interval.

#(config log log_name) remote-size megabytes
Sets maximum size in MB of remote log files.

#(config log log_name) signing keyring keyring_id
Specifies the keyring to be used for digital signatures.

#(config log log_name) upload-type {gzip | text}
Sets upload file type (gzip or text).
#(config log log_name) view
   Shows log settings.

For More Information

- #(config) access-log on page 103

Example

SGOS#(config) access-log
SGOS#(config access-log) edit log testlog
SGOS#(config log testlog) upload-type gzip
   ok
SGOS#(config log testlog) exit
SGOS#(config access-log) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config format format_name)

**Synopsis**

Use these commands to edit an access log format.

**Syntax**

```shell
#(config) access-log
```

This changes the prompt to:

```shell
#(config access-log) edit format format_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```shell
#(config format format_name)
```

**Subcommands**

- **#(config format format_name) exit**
  
  Exits #(config format format_name) mode and returns to #(config access-log) mode.

- **#(config format format_name) multi-valued-header-policy log-all-headers**
  
  Sets multi-valued header policy to log all headers.

- **#(config format format_name) multi-valued-header-policy log-first-header**
  
  Sets multi-valued header policy to log the first header.

- **#(config format format_name) multi-valued-header-policy log-last-header**
  
  Sets multi-valued header policy to log the last header.

- **#(config format format_name) type custom format_string**
  
  Specifies custom logging format.

- **#(config format format_name) type elff format_string**
  
  Specifies W3C extended log file format.

- **#(config format format_name) view**
  
  Shows the format settings.

**For More Information**

- [#(config) access-log](#) on page 103

**Example**

```shell
SGOS#(config) access-log
SGOS#(config access-log) edit format testformat
SGOS#(config format testformat) multi-valued-header-policy log-all-headers
  ok
SGOS#(config format testformat) exit
SGOS#(config access-log) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config) adn

## Synopsis
ADN optimization allows you to reduce the amount of tunneled TCP traffic across a WAN by means of an overlay network called an Application Delivery Network, or ADN. ProxySG devices that participate in the ADN utilize byte caching technology, which replaces large chunks of repeated data with small tokens representing that data. ProxySG devices in the ADN also use gzip compression to further reduce the amount of data flowing over the WAN.

## Syntax
```
SGOS#(config) adn
```
The prompt changes to
```
SGOS#(config adn)
```

## Subcommands
```
SGOS#(config adn) byte-cache
  Configures byte caching parameters. The prompt changes to SGOS#(config adn byte-cache)

SGOS#(config adn byte-cache) exit
  Exits the SGOS#(config adn byte-cache) submode and returns to SGOS#(config adn) mode.

SGOS#(config adn byte-cache) adaptive-compression {enable | disable}
  Enables or disables adaptive compression. When adaptive compression is enabled, the ProxySG determines whether to increase or decrease the compression level based on CPU usage. When extra CPU is available, it will adapt compression to use these additional resources, resulting in higher CPU usage.

SGOS#(config adn byte-cache) delete-peer peer-id [force]
  Deletes the specified ADN peer. If the peer has an established dictionary or a dictionary that is manually sized, you will be prompted to confirm that you want to proceed with the deletion. The force argument allows you to delete a peer without confirmation.

SGOS#(config adn byte-cache) max-disk-usage percentage
  Sets the maximum percentage of disk space that can be used for byte caching. When this setting is changed, an immediate resizing is done. If the statistics have changed since the last resizing, the recommended dictionary sizes and the rankings for each peer might change. However, if there has been no traffic (and it is still the same day), or if the changes balance out, there might be no change to either the recommended dictionary sizes or the rankings.

SGOS#(config adn byte-cache) peer-size peer-id
  {size_in_megabytes | auto | none}
  Manually sets the amount of memory used to keep track of the byte-cache hash table or disables compression to this peer. Generally, the dynamic settings are acceptable; you do not need to change the dictionary size. Only if you determine that the algorithm performance does not guarantee the right dictionary size for a specific peer should you manually set the dictionary size.

SGOS#(config adn byte-cache) view
  Views the current configuration of the byte caching parameters.

SGOS#(config adn) {enable | disable}
  Enables or disables the ADN optimization network.
Command Line Interface Reference

SGOS#(config adn) exit
Exits the SGOS#(config adn) submode and returns to SGOS#(config) mode.

SGOS#(config adn) load-balancing
Configures load-balancing parameters. The prompt changes to SGOS#(config adn load-balancing).

SGOS#(config adn load-balancing) {enable | disable}
Enables or disables load-balancing functionality.

SGOS#(config adn load-balancing) exit
Exits the submode and returns to SGOS#(config adn) mode.

SGOS#(config adn load-balancing) external-vip IP_address
Sets the external VIP. The IP_address can be either IPv4 or IPv6, but must be reachable by all branch peers. The same VIP must be configured on each ProxySG in the cluster, and the VIP must exist on an external load balancing device. The external VIP is used in explicit external load balancing.

SGOS#(config adn load-balancing) group group_name
Sets the group name for an ADN group. Groups are used in transparent load balancing.

SGOS#(config adn load-balancing) load-balance-only {enable | disable}
Specifies whether the node can take participate in load balancing (disable) or if it acts as a load balancer only (enable).

SGOS#(config adn load-balancing) no {external-vip | group}
Removes the external VIP or group name.

SGOS#(config adn load-balancing) view
Views the load-balancing configuration.

SGOS#(config adn) manager
Configures manager parameters. The prompt changes to SGOS#(config adn manager).

SGOS#(config adn manager) approved-peers
Configures approved-peers. The prompt changes to SGOS#(config adn approved-peers).

SGOS#(config adn approved-peers) add peer-serial-number
SGOS#(config adn approved-peers) exit
Exits the SGOS#(config adn approved-peers) submode and returns to SGOS#(config adn manager) mode.

SGOS#(config adn approved-peers) remove
Removes the peer(s) from the approved peers list.

SGOS#(config adn approved-peers) view
Views the list of approved devices and connections, as well as the device ID of the ADN manager and backup manager.

SGOS#(config adn manager) backup-manager {IP_address [device_id] | self | none}
Defines the backup ADN manager; the IP_address can be IPv4 or IPv6. While optional, defining a backup ADN manager is highly recommended. If the primary ADN manager goes offline for any reason, routing updates are no longer available which prevent nodes from learning when other nodes enter and leave the network. Existing route information is still retained by the peers, however.

SGOS#(config adn manager) exit
Exits the SGOS#(config adn manager) submode and returns to SGOS#(config adn) mode.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

SGOS#(config adn manager) open-adn {enable | disable}
Enables or disables Open-ADN mode.

SGOS#(config adn manager) pending-peers
Configures pending peers. The prompt changes to SGOS#(config adn pending-peers)

SGOS#(config adn pending-peers) {accept | reject} {device-id | all}
Allows or denies a specific peer or all peers that want to join a network.

SGOS#(config adn pending-peers) {enable | disable}
Enables or disables the pending-peers functionality.

SGOS#(config adn pending-peers) exit
Exits the SGOS#(config adn pending-peers) submode and returns to SGOS#(config adn manager) mode.

SGOS#(config adn pending-peers) view
Views the list of pending devices and connections.

SGOS#(config adn manager) port port_number
Sets the port number for the primary and backup ADN managers. All ProxySG devices in the ADN must use the same manager port number. The default is port 3034; it should not be changed.

SGOS#(config adn manager) primary-manager {IP_address [device_id | self | none]
Defines the primary ADN manager; the IP_address can be IPv4 or IPv6. The responsibility of the ADN manager is to keep up to date the routing information from each ProxySG node on the WAN optimization network and to broadcast that information to all the peers.

SGOS#(config adn manager) secure-port port_number

SGOS#(config adn manager) view
Views the adn manager configuration.

SGOS#(config adn) routing
Configures routing information. The prompt changes to SGOS#(config adn routing).

SGOS#(config adn routing) advertise-internet-gateway
Enters advertise-internet-gateway mode to enable the ProxySG as an Internet gateway. Changes the prompt to SGOS#(config adn advertise-internet-gateway).

SGOS#(config adn routing advertise-internet-gateway) {disable | enable}
Enables or disables the ability for this peer to be used as an Internet gateway.

SGOS#(config adn routing advertise-internet-gateway) exempt-subnets {add subnet prefix[/prefix_length] | clear-all | remove subnet prefix[/prefix_length] | view}
Manages subnets that must not be routed to Internet gateway(s). The subnets can be IPv4, IPv6, or a combination. The subnet prefix can be in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

SGOS#(config adn routing advertise-internet-gateway) exit
Leaves the advertise-internet-gateway submode and returns to the routing submode.

SGOS#(config adn routing advertise-internet-gateway) view
Displays the advertise-internet-gateway parameters.
**Command Line Interface Reference**

**SGOS#(config adn routing) prefer-transparent {enable | disable}**
Forces peers to always use advertised routes or to allow them to use transparent routes if they are available.

**SGOS#(config adn routing) exit**
Exits the SGOS#(config adn routing) submode and returns to SGOS#(config adn) mode.

**SGOS#(config adn routing) server-subnets**
Configures server-subnets that will be advertised to other peers on the WAN optimization network. The server subnets can be IPv4, IPv6, or a combination. The prompt changes to SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets).

- **SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets) add subnet prefix [prefix length]**
  Adds a subnet with the specified prefix and, optionally, the prefix length, to the ProxySG routes that it sends to the ADN manager. The *subnet prefix* can be in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

- **SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets) clear-all**
  Deletes all subnets listed on the system.

- **SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets) remove subnet_prefix [prefix length]**
  Removes a subnet with the specified prefix and, optionally, the prefix length, to the ProxySG routes that it sends to the ADN manager. The *subnet_prefix* can be in either IPv4 or IPv6 format.

- **SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets) exit**
  Exits the SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets) submode and returns to SGOS#(config adn routing) submode.

- **SGOS#(config adn routing server-subnets) view**
  Views the current configuration of the server subnets.

**SGOS#(config adn routing) view**
Views the current parameters of the routing configuration.

**SGOS#(config adn) security**
Configures authorization parameters. Changes the prompt to SGOS#(config adn security).

- **SGOS#(config adn security) authorization {enable | disable}**
  Enables connection authorization.

- **SGOS#(config adn security) exit**
  Leaves the security submode. Returns to (config adn) mode.

- **SGOS#(config adn security) manager-listening-mode {plain-only | plain-read-only | secure-only | both}**
  Configure manager listening mode. Both refers to plain-only or secure-only.

- **SGOS#(config adn security) no ssl-device-profile**
  Clears the SSL device profile name.

- **SGOS#(config adn security) secure-outbound {none | secure/proxies | all}**
  Configure outbound connection encryption, where none indicates the encryption is disabled, secure-proxies enables encryption on secure proxy (that is, HTTPS or SSL) traffic, and all indicates that encryption is enabled on all outbound connections.

- **SGOS#(config adn security) tunnel-listening-mode {plain-only | secure-only | both}**
  Starts the specified tunnel listening mode.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

SGOS#(config adn security) view
View security configuration.

SGOS#(config adn) tunnel
Configures parameters for tunnel connections. Tunnel connections are established between ADN peers in order to carry optimized traffic over the WAN. Changes the prompt to SGOS#(config adn tunnel).

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) connect-transparent {enable [fast|regular] | disable}
Control outbound ADN transparent tunnel initiation. Use the regular option when the concentrator is running SGOS 5.5 and the branch peer is running SGOS 6.6.x, 6.5.x, 6.4.x, 6.3.x, 6.2.2, or 6.1.4.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) exit
Exits the SGOS#(config adn tunnel) submode and returns to SGOS#(config adn) mode.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) last-peer-detection {enable | disable}
Allows traffic to be optimized across the entire data path of a transparent ADN deployment: from the branch office, through one or more intermediate concentrators, all the way to the main data center.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) port port_number
Sets the port number for the client or data port used by ADN tunnel connections. Each ADN node has a TCP listener on this port in order to receive tunnel connections. The default is port 3035; it should not be changed.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) preferred-ip-addresses
Configure a list of preferred tunnel or control IP addresses. By default, the list is empty; this means that all IP addresses configured on the ProxySG are eligible to be used for inbound ADN control connections and explicit tunnel connections. The IP addresses that are not in the preferred list will not be advertised for use in tunnel and control connections. Note that this list indicates a preference only; if the concentrator gets an inbound ADN connection on an IP address that is not in the preferred list, that connection is still accepted.

In an open, unmanaged transparent ADN deployment, the concentrator looks at the list of preferred IP addresses and determines which IP address to send to the branch peer by following the guidelines below:

1. The concentrator’s first choice is to use a preferred IP address of the same address family as the source address on the interface that the connection came on.
2. If that’s not possible, it uses a preferred IP address of the same address family as the source address, on an interface that is different from the interface that the connection came on.
3. If the concentrator can’t use an IP from the same address family, the concentrator uses a preferred IP address of a different address family on the interface that the connection came on.
4. If the same interface isn’t possible, it uses a preferred IP address of a different address family, on an interface that is different from the interface that the connection came on.
5. If none of the above are applicable, the concentrator uses the first data IP address in the preferred IP list.

Note: If there isn’t a preferred list, the concentrator selects the first IP configured on the incoming tunnel connection interface.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel preferred-ip-addresses) add IP address
Add an IP address to the preferred list. The IP address can be IPv4 or IPv6. This list is
communicated to ADN peers so that they can form explicit tunnels and control connections.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel preferred-ip-addresses) clear-all
Remove all IP addresses from the preferred list. When the list is empty, all IP addresses configured on the ProxySG are available for tunnel and control connections.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel preferred-ip-addresses) remove IP address
Remove an IP address from the preferred list. This IP address will no longer be preferred for tunnel and control connections. Existing control/tunnel connections using a deleted IP address will not be effected; only new connections will use the new configuration.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel preferred-ip-addresses) view
View the list of preferred IP addresses.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) reflect-client-ip {allow | deny | use-local-ip}
Configures the Concentrator peer to follow (allow), reject (deny), or ignore (use-local-ip) the Branch peer reflect-client-ip settings. When allow is specified, both ProxySG and ProxyClient branch peers will be set to allow. When deny is specified, ProxySG branch peers will be set to deny, and ProxyClient peers will be set to use-local-ip. When use-local-ip is specified, both ProxySG and ProxyClient Branch peers will be set to use-local-ip. The local IP is the IP address of the Concentrator ProxySG.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) reflect-client-ip peer-sg {allow | deny | use-local-ip}
Determines the behavior of the ADN Concentrator peer when a ProxySG Branch peer requests client IP reflection for an inbound tunnel connection. The allow option allows the request and reflects the client IP. The deny option rejects the request and the connection. The use-local-ip option allows the connection but uses the IP address of the Concentrator peer.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) secure-port port_number
Configure listening port for secure ADN tunnel

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) tcp-window-size {auto | size_in_bytes}
Sets the TCP window size for ADN optimization tunnel connections based on current
network conditions and on the receiving host’s acknowledgement. Auto is the default; under most circumstances, this option should not be set manually.

SGOS#(config adn tunnel) view
Views the current configuration ADN tunnel parameters.

For More Information

SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide, Configuring Application Delivery Network chapter

SGOS#(config adn) enable
SGOS#(config adn) manager
SGOS#(config adn manager) primary-manager 2001:418:9804:111::169
SGOS#(config adn) backup-manager 10.25.36.48
SGOS#(config adn) tunnel
tcp-window-size 200000
SGOS#(config adn tunnel) exit
SGOS#(config adn) enable
SGOS#(config adn manager) primary-manager 2001:418:9804:111::169
SGOS#(config adn) backup-manager 10.25.36.48
SGOS#(config adn) tunnel
tcp-window-size 200000
SGOS#(config adn tunnel) exit
SGOS#(config adn) manager
SGOS#(config adn manager) primary-manager 2001:418:9804:111::169
SGOS#(config adn) backup-manager 10.25.36.48
SGOS#(config adn) tunnel
tcp-window-size 200000
SGOS#(config adn tunnel) exit

Application Delivery Network Configuration:
ADN: enabled
External VIP: none
Manager Configuration:
Primary manager: self
Backup manager: none
Port: 3034
Secure port: 3036
Approved device Connecting from
Allow pending devices: enabled
Pending device Connecting from
Byte-cache Configuration:
Max number of peers: 10347
Max peer memory: 30

Tunnel Configuration:
Port: 3035
Secure port: 3037
Bypass if no concentrator: disabled
proxy-processing http: disabled
accept-transparent: enabled
connect-transparent: enabled
last-peer-detection: enabled
preserve-dest-port: enabled
TCP window size: 65536
reflect-client-ip peer-sg: use-local-ip
reflect-client-ip proxy-client: use-local-ip
Preferred IP Addresses: <None>

Routing Configuration:
Internet Gateway: disabled
Exempt Server subnet: 10.0.0.0/8
Exempt Server subnet: 172.16.0.0/12
Exempt Server subnet: 192.168.0.0/16
Exempt Server subnet: fe80::/10
Exempt Server subnet: fc00::/7

Security Configuration:
Device-auth-profile: bluecoat
Manager-listening mode: plain-only
Tunnel-listening mode: plain-only
Authorization: enabled
Secure-outbound: none
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) alert

Synopsis

Configures the notification properties of hardware environmental metrics (called sensors) and the threshold and notification properties of system resource health monitoring metrics. These health monitoring metrics allow you to assess the health of the ProxySG.

Note: Sensor thresholds are not configurable.

Syntax

#(config) alert threshold metric_name warning_threshold warning_interval critical_threshold critical_interval
#(config) alert notification metric_name notification_method
#(config) alert severity sensor power-supply condition

Subcommands

Threshold

#(config) alert threshold cloud-common-policy [entitlement]
{warn-threshold | crit-threshold} update-errors {warn-threshold
| warn-interval | crit-threshold}}
Sets alert threshold properties for cloud common policy entitlement and update errors. All settings revert to defaults if the appliance is deregistered from the cloud service.

#(config) alert threshold cpu-utilization {warn-threshold | warn-interval | crit-threshold | crit-interval}
Sets alert threshold properties for CPU utilization metrics.

#(config) alert threshold icap deferred-connections <crit-threshold>
Sets alert threshold properties for deferred ICAP connections. The crit-threshold value is a percentage between 1 and 1000, (80% default) based on the number of ICAP connections in a deferred state.

#(config) alert threshold icap queued-connections <crit-threshold>
Sets alert threshold properties for ICAP queued connections. The crit-threshold value is a percentage between 1 and 1000 based on the number of connections queued awaiting an available ICAP connection.

#(config) alert threshold license-utilization {warn-threshold | warn-interval | crit-threshold | crit-interval}
Sets alert threshold properties for licenses with user limits.

#(config) alert threshold license-expiration {sgos | ssl} {warn-threshold | warn-interval | crit-threshold | crit-interval}
Sets alert threshold properties for license expiration.
#(config) alert threshold memory-utilization {warn-threshold | warn-interval | crit-threshold | crit-interval}
Sets alert threshold properties for memory pressure metrics.

#(config) alert threshold network-utilization
  adapter[:interface]{warn-threshold | warn-interval | crit-threshold | crit-interval}
Sets alert threshold properties for interface utilization metrics.

**Notification**

#(config) alert notification adn {connection | manager}
Sets alert notification properties for ADN.

#(config) alert notification cloud-common-policy {entitlement
  {email | log | trap | none} | update-errors {email | log | trap
  | none}}
Sets the alert notification properties for cloud common policy and related synchronization update errors. Set the e-mail properties using the event-log mail command. All settings revert to defaults if the appliance is deregistered from the cloud service.

#(config) alert notification cpu-utilization {email | log | trap | none}
Sets alert notification properties for cpu utilization metrics.

#(config) alert notification disk-status {email | log | trap | none}
Sets alert notification properties for disk status messages.

#(config) alert notification failover {email | log | trap | none}
Sets alert notification properties for failover partners. If a failover occurs, notification is sent by the new master.

#(config) alert notification health-check {email | log | trap | none}
Sets alert notification properties for health-checks globally.

#(config) alert notification icap deferred-connections {email | log | trap | none}
Sets alert notification properties for deferred ICAP connections. When the percentage of deferred ICAP connections exceeds the threshold defined with alert threshold icap deferred-connections, the ProxySG appliance will output a message via the configured method. When the number of connections decreases below the configured threshold, another log entry is added to the specified output.

#(config) alert notification icap queued-connections {email | log | trap | none}
Sets alert notification output for ICAP connections that exceed the number of available connections configured in the ICAP service, based on the percentage configured with alert threshold icap queued-connections. When the number of queued ICAP connections drops below the configured threshold, another log entry is added to the specified output.

#(config) alert notification license-expiration {sgos {email | log | trap | none} | ssl {email | log | trap | none}}
Sets the alert notification properties for SGOS or SSL license expiration.

#(config) alert notification license-utilization users {email | log | trap | none}
Sets alert notification properties for licenses with user limits.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) alert notification memory-utilization {email | log | trap | none}
Sets the notification alert properties for memory utilization.

#(config) alert notification network-utilization
    adapter[:interface] {email | log | trap | none}
Sets the alert notification properties for network utilization.

#(config) alert notification reboot {email | log | trap | none}
Sets the alert notification properties for system reboot. When this command is set and the
system reboots, a reboot notification is sent by e-mail, event log, SNMP trap, or a combination
of these. Set the e-mail properties using the event-log mail command. If email is set but
not log, the reboot will still be logged.

#(config) alert notification sensor
    fan {email | log | trap | none} | power-supply {email | log | trap | none} | temperature
    {email | log | trap | none} | voltage {email | log | trap | none}
Sets alert notification properties for hardware environmental. See “Sensors” on page 121 for a
description of the sensor types.

Severity

#(config) alert severity sensor power-supply {critical | no-effect | warning}
Sets the severity level for an undetected power-supply.

Sensors

The following table describes the sensor metrics. The hardware and environmental metrics are
referred to as sensors. Sensor threshold values are not configurable and are preset to optimal
values. For example, if the CPU temperature reaches 55 degrees Celsius, it is considered to
have entered the Warning threshold.

Table 3-1. Sensor Health Monitoring Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>MIB</th>
<th>Threshold States</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disk status</td>
<td>Disk</td>
<td>Critical:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Warning:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Removed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Offline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OK:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Not Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
<td>Sensor</td>
<td>Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bus temperature</td>
<td></td>
<td>Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU temperature</td>
<td></td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fan</td>
<td>Sensor</td>
<td>Critical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU Fan</td>
<td></td>
<td>Warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Thresholds

The following table describes the health monitoring metrics and default thresholds. Sensor thresholds cannot be configured.

Table 3-2. System Resource Health Monitoring Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Threshold and Interval Defaults</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CPU Utilization</td>
<td>Percentage</td>
<td>Critical: 95/120 Warning: 80/120</td>
<td>Measures the value of CPU 0 on multi-processor systems—not the average of all CPU activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory Utilization</td>
<td>Percentage</td>
<td>Critical: 95/120 Warning: 90/120</td>
<td>Memory pressure occurs when memory resources become limited, causing new connections to be delayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Utilization</td>
<td>Percentage</td>
<td>Critical: 90/120 Warning: 60/120</td>
<td>Measures the traffic (in and out) on the interface to determine if it is approaching the maximum allowable bandwidth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License Utilization</td>
<td>Percentage</td>
<td>Critical: 90/0 Warning: 80/0</td>
<td>For licenses that have user limits, monitors the number of users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGOS Base and SSL Proxy License Expiration</td>
<td>Days</td>
<td>Critical: 0/0 Warning: 15/0</td>
<td>Warns of impending license expiration. For license expiration metrics, intervals are ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud Services: Common Policy Entitlement</td>
<td>0 days / 0</td>
<td>Critical: 0/0 Warning: 30/0</td>
<td>Warns of impending entitlement expiration. For license expiration metrics, intervals are ignored.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the purposes of notification, thresholds are defined by two variables, the threshold level and the threshold interval:

- The threshold level describes the state of the metric: OK, Warning, or Critical.
- The threshold interval specifies the period of time that the metric must stay in the level before an alert is triggered.

Consider the following command:
```
#(config) alert threshold cpu-utilization 80 20 90 20
```

The preceding command sets the cpu-utilization threshold values as follows:

- Warning Threshold=80 (percent)
Warning Interval=20 (seconds)
Critical Threshold=90 (percent)
Critical Interval=20 (seconds)

In this example, if CPU activity hovers between 80% and 89% for 20 seconds, the cpu-utilization metric is considered to be in the Warning condition.

Notification occurs when a threshold state changes, for example, from OK to Warning. See “Notification Methods” on page 123 for more information.

Notification Methods
The following notification methods can be set. To set more than one type of notification, separate the notification method by spaces. For example:

```plaintext
#(config) alert notification license-utilization users email log trap
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>email</td>
<td>Notify using e-mail (set in the <code>event-log mail</code> command)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>log</td>
<td>Notify using Event log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trap</td>
<td>Notify using SNMP trap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>Disable notification</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

 Licenses
The license utilization and expiration alert settings can be modified for the following licenses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sgos</td>
<td>Alert properties for SGOS (expiration only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ssl</td>
<td>Alert properties for SSL Proxy (expiration only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud services</td>
<td>Alert properties for cloud services (expiration only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>common-policy</td>
<td>Alert properties for common policy (expiration only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The threshold values for license expiration metrics are set in days until expiration. In this context, a "critical" threshold indicates that license expiration is imminent. This is the only metric in which the Critical threshold value should be smaller than the Warning threshold value. For example, if you set the Warning threshold to 45, an alert is sent when there are 45 days remaining in the license period. The Critical threshold would be less than 45 days, for example 5 days.

For the license expiration metrics, the threshold interval is irrelevant and is set by default to 0. The Critical threshold is configured to 0, which means that a trap is immediately sent upon license expiration.

You should set the Warning Threshold to a value that gives you ample time to renew your license.
For More Information

❐ SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Examples

```plaintext
#(config) alert threshold cpu-utilization 80 20 90 20
#(config) alert threshold license-utilization users 80 20 90 20
#(config) alert threshold license-expiration sgos 65 30
#(config) alert notification cpu-utilization trap
#(config) alert notification license-utilization users email log trap
#(config) alert notification sensor fan email
#(config) alert notification sensor voltage trap
```
#(config) appliance-name

**Synopsis**
Use this command to assign a name to a ProxySG appliance. Any descriptive name that helps identify the system is sufficient.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) appliance-name name
```
Associates name with the current ProxySG.

**For More Information**
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**
```
SGOS#(config) appliance-name ProxyDev1
ok
```
#(config) application-protection

## Synopsis

(Available in SGOS 6.5.2) Allows you to configure the Application Protection service.

## Syntax

```
#(config) application-protection
```

This enters application-protection mode and changes the prompt to:
```
#(config application-protection)
```

## Subcommands

```
#(config application-protection) disable
```

Disables the Application Protection service. When you issue this command, it checks if SQL injection detection is enabled in policy. If it is enabled, the CLI warns that disabling the Application Protection service also disables the SQL injection detection policy.

```
#(config application-protection) download get-now
```

Downloads the latest data. The CLI displays the download progress and status. If the database is already up-to-date, the appliance does not download it again.

```
#(config application-protection) download notify-only disable
```

Disables the notify-only setting.

```
#(config application-protection) download notify-only enable
```

When a new database version is available for download, a notification is sent to the administrator and also recorded in the event log. You can use this setting only after the first successful database download. Use this setting in a test environment.

```
#(config application-protection) enable
```

Enables the Application Protection service.

```
#(config application-protection) exit
```

Exits application-protection mode and returns to the #(config) prompt.

```
#(config application-protection) view
```

Displays the current Application Protection service settings, including download status.

## Example

Enable the notify-only setting for use in a test environment.

```
#(config application-protection) download notify-only enable
```

ok
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) archive-configuration

Synopsis

Archiving a ProxySG system configuration on a regular basis is always a good idea. In the rare case of a complete system failure, restoring a ProxySG to its previous state is simplified by loading an archived system configuration from an FTP, HTTP, or HTTPS server. The archive contains all system settings differing from system defaults, along with any forwarding and security lists installed on the ProxySG.

Unless you restore the SSL configuration-passwords-key keyring from the source device, archives can only be restored onto the same device that was the source of the archive. This is because the encrypted passwords in the configuration (login, enable, FTP, etc.) cannot be decrypted by a device other than that on which it was encrypted.

Syntax

#(config) archive-configuration [subcommands]

Subcommands

#(config) archive-configuration archive-signing {enforce-signed {enable | disable} | signing-keyring {keyring-name} | verify-ccl {ccl-name}}

Configures the archiving signing options. A signed archive is a configuration backup that is cryptographically signed with a key known only to the signing entity—the digital signature guarantees the integrity of the content and the identity of the originating device. You can then use a trusted CA Certificate List (CCL) to verify the authenticity of the archive.

The enforce-signed option enforces installation of only signed archives. The signing-keyring option specifies the keyring that will be used to sign archives. The verify-ccl option specifies the CCL to use for verifying signed archives.

#(config) archive-configuration encrypted-password

Encrypted password for upload host (not required for TFTP)

#(config) archive-configuration filename-prefix filename

Specifies the prefix that should be applied to the archive configuration on upload. For example, %H (Hour in 24-hour format). Refer to the “Backing Up the Configuration” chapter in the SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide for a complete list of file name prefixes.

#(config) archive-configuration host hostname

Specifies the HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, or TFTP host to which the archive configuration should be uploaded. The hostname can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address, or a domain name that resolves to an IPv4 or IPv6 address. If an IPv6 address is specified for the hostname, it must be enclosed in brackets, for example: archive-configuration host [2001:db8:85a3::8a2e:370:7334]

#(config) archive-configuration no signing-keyring

Disables the requirement for signed archives.

#(config) archive-configuration password password

Specifies the password for the host to which the archive configuration should be uploaded

#(config) archive-configuration path path

Specifies the path to the HTTP, HTTPS, or FTP host to which the archive configuration should be uploaded. Not required for TFTP.

#(config) archive-configuration port port

Specifies the port to use for uploading the archive.
## Command Line Interface Reference

### archive-configuration protocol {ftp | tftp | http | https}

Uploads the archive using the specified protocol—HTTP, HTTPS, FTP, or TFTP.

### archive-configuration ssl-device-profile

Specifies the device profile used for SSL connections. An SSL device profile contains the information required for device authentication, including the name of the keyring that contains the private key and certificate this device uses to authenticate itself. The default keyring is appliance-key.

### archive-configuration username username

Specifies the username for the remote host to which the archive configuration should be uploaded. Not required for TFTP.

### For More Information

- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

### Example

```bash
SGOS#(config) archive-configuration host host3
  ok
```
#(config)asymmetric-route-bypass

**Synopsis**
When reflect-client-ip is enabled, the appliance is able to detect asymmetric routing for intercepted connections. New connections from the same source and destination IP pair are dynamically bypassed after asymmetric routing is detected (detection occurs on the first reset packet). The IP pairs are added to a table that contains the list of dynamically bypassed asymmetric routes.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) asymmetric-route-detection
This changes the prompt to:
#(config asymmetric-route-detection)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config asymmetric-route-detection) clear
Clears all asymmetric route entries.
#(config asymmetric-route-detection) [disable | enable]
Disables/enables asymmetric route detection.
#(config asymmetric-route-detection) exit
Leaves #(config asymmetric-route-detection) mode and returns to #(config) mode.
#(config asymmetric-route-detection) max-entries number_of_entries
Set maximum number of entries allowed in the asymmetric route bypass list.
#(config asymmetric-route-detection) remove [* | source_ip] [* | destination_ip]
Remove an asymmetric bypass route.
#(config asymmetric-route-detection) server-threshold entries
Configure threshold to trigger consolidation of entries.
#(config asymmetric-route-detection) timeout minutes
Set the expiration timeout.
#(config asymmetric-route-detection) view
View the current configuration.
#(config)attack-detection

**Synopsis**
Configure attack detection and prevention methods.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) attack-detection
```

This changes the prompt to
```
#(config attack-detection)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config attack-detection) client
```

Changes the prompt to
```
#(config client)
```
Configure client-side attack detection. See "#(config client)" on page 131.

```
#(config attack-detection) exit
```

Return to the #(config) prompt.

```
#(config attack-detection) server
```

Changes the prompt to
```
#(config server)
```
Configure server-side attack detection. See "#(config server)" on page 134.

```
#(config attack-detection) view {client | configuration | server}
```

Displays the specified attack detection settings.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config client)

**Synopsis**
Configures a client for attack detection.

**Syntax**
```
#(config attack-detection) client
```
This changes the prompt to
```
#(config client)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config client) block ip_address [minutes]
```
Blocks a specific IP address for the number of minutes listed. If the optional minutes argument is omitted, the client is blocked until explicitly unblocked.

```
#(config client) concurrent-request-limit integer_between_1_and_2147483647
```
Indicates the maximum number of simultaneous requests that effective client IP sources (with client.effective_address policy) or explicit client IP sources (without client.effective_address policy) are allowed to make. The default value is unlimited.

```
#(config client) create ip_address or ip_address_and_length
```
Creates a client with the specified IP address or subnet.

```
#(config client) default {block-action {drop | send-tcp-rst} | connection-limit number_of_tcp_connections | failure-limit number_of_requests | unblock-time minutes | warning-limit number_of_warnings}
```
Default indicates the values that are used if a client does not have specific limits set. These settings can over overridden on a per-client basis.
If they are modified on a per-client basis, the specified limits become the default for new clients. To change the limits on a per-client basis, see edit, below.

System defaults for attack-detection limits are:
- block-action: drop
- connection-limit: 100
- failure-limit: 50
- unblock-time: unlimited
- warning-limit: 10

```
#(config client) delete ip_address or ip_address_and_length
```
Deletes the specified client.

```
#(config client) disable-limits
```
Disables attack detection.

```
#(config client) edit ip_address
```
Changes the prompt to #(config client ip_address).

```
#(config client IP_address) block-action {drop | send-tcp-rst}
```
Indicates the behavior when the client is at the maximum number of connections or exceed the warning limit: drop connections that are over the limit or send TCP RST for connections over the limit. The default is drop.
#(config client IP_address) connection-limit
number_of_tcp_connections
Indices the number of simultaneous connections between 1 and 65535. The default is 100.

#(config client IP_address) enable-limits
Enables attack detection. This is a global setting and cannot be configured individually for specific clients.

#(config client IP_address) exit
Exits the #(config client ip_address) submode and returns to #(config client) mode.

#(config client IP_address) failure-limit number_of_requests
Indices the maximum number of failed requests a client is allowed before the proxy starts issuing warnings. Default is 50. This limit can be modified on a per-client basis.

#(config client IP_address) interval minutes
Indices the amount of time, in multiples of 10 minutes, that client activity is monitored. The default is 20. Note that this is a global limit and cannot be modified for individual clients.

#(config client IP_address) monitor-only
Enables monitor-only mode, which logs the defined thresholds that have been exceeded, but does not enforce the rules. The default value is disabled. This limit can be modified on a per-client basis.

**Note:** The monitor-only mode setting has a higher precedence level than the default enforce mode. Enabling monitor-only mode disables rule enforcement.

#(config client IP_address) no default {connection-limit | failure-limit | warning-limit | unblock-time}

#(config client IP_address) no {connection-limit | failure-limit | warning-limit | unblock-time}
Clears the specified limits on a per-client basis. If you edit an existing client’s limits to a smaller value, the new value only applies to new connections to that client. For example, if the old value was 10 simultaneous connections and the new value is 5, existing connections above 5 are not dropped.

#(config client IP_address) request-limit
integer_between_1_and_2147483647
Indices the maximum number of HTTP requests that IP sources are allowed to make during a one-minute interval. The default value is unlimited. This limit can be applied on a per-client basis.

#(config client IP_address) unblock ip_address
Releases a specific IP address.

#(config client IP_address) unblock-time minutes
Indices the amount of time a client is blocked at the network level when the client-warning-limit is exceeded. Time must be a multiple of 10 minutes, up to a maximum of 1440. The default is unlimited.

#(config client IP_address) view [blocked | connections | statistics]
Views all limits for all clients, or you can show clients blocked at the network level, view the client connection table, or view client request failure statistics.

#(config client IP_address) warning-limit number_of_warnings
Indices the number of warnings sent to the client before the client is blocked at the network level and the administrator is notified. The default is 10; the maximum is 100.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config client) **enable limits**
Enables attack detection.

#(config client) **exit**
Exits the #(config client) submode and returns to #(config attack-detection) mode.

#(config client) **interval minutes**
Indicates the amount of time, in multiples of 10 minutes, that client activity is monitored. The default is 20. Note that this is a global limit and cannot be modified for individual clients.

#(config client) **no default {connection-limit | failure-limit | warning-limit | unblock-time}**
Clears the specified limit settings. These settings are applied to all new clients.

#(config client) **unblock ip_address**
Releases a specific IP address.

#(config client) **view [blocked | connections | statistics]**
Views all limits for all clients, or you can show clients blocked at the network level, view the client connection table, or view client request failure statistics.

For More Information

Example

SGOS#(config) **attack-detection**
SGOS#(config attack-detection) **client**
SGOS#(config client) **view**
Client limits enabled: true
Client interval: 20 minutes
Default client limits:
Client connection limit: 700
Client failure limit: 50
Client warning limit: 10
Blocked client action: Drop
Client connection unblock time: unlimited

Client limits for 10.9.17.159:
Client connection limit: unlimited
Client failure limit: unlimited
Client warning limit: unlimited
Blocked client action: Drop
Client connection unblock time: unlimited

Client limits for 10.9.17.134:
Client connection limit: 700
Client failure limit: 50
Client warning limit: 10
Blocked client action: Drop
Client connection unblock time: unlimited
#(config server)

**Synopsis**
Configures a server for attack detection.

**Syntax**
```
#(config attack-detection) server
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config server)
```

**Subcommands**
- **create hostname**
  Creates a server or server group that is identified by the hostname.
- **delete hostname**
  Deletes a server or server group.
- **edit hostname**
  Modifies the limits for a specific server.
- **exit**
  Exits the #(config server) submode and returns to #(config attack-detection) mode.
- **view [statistics]**
  Displays the request limit for all servers or server groups.

**For More Information**
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**
```
SGOS#(config) attack-detection
SGOS#(config attack-detection) server
SGOS#(config server) create test1
  ok
SGOS#(config server) edit test1
SGOS#(config server test1) add 10.9.17.134
  ok
SGOS#(config server test1) view
Server configuration for test1:
Request limit: 1000
Host: 10.9.17.134
```
#(config) background-dns-updates

**Synopsis**

Background DNS updates allows configuration of background DNS updates used in forwarding systems.

**Syntax**

#(config) background-dns-updates [subcommands]

**Subcommands**

- #(config) background-dns-updates failure-interval seconds
  Sets the seconds between DNS resolution attempts when DNS failures.

- #(config) background-dns-updates maximum-ttl {none | seconds}
  Disables or sets the maximum seconds allowed before the next DNS resolution attempt.

- #(config) background-dns-updates minimum-ttl seconds
  Sets the minimum seconds allowed before the next DNS resolution attempt.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

SGOS#(config) background-dns-updates failure-interval 100
ok
#(config) bandwidth-gain

**Synopsis**

Bandwidth gain is a measure of the effective increase of server bandwidth resulting from the client’s use of a content accelerator. For example, a bandwidth gain of 100% means that traffic volume from the ProxySG to its clients is twice as great as the traffic volume being delivered to the ProxySG from the origin server(s). Using bandwidth gain mode can provide substantial gains in apparent performance.

Keep in mind that bandwidth gain is a relative measure of the ProxySG’s ability to amplify traffic volume between an origin server and the clients served by the device.

**Syntax**

- `#(config) bandwidth-gain disable`
  
  Disables bandwidth-gain mode

- `#(config) bandwidth-gain enable`
  
  Enables bandwidth-gain mode.

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) bandwidth-gain enable
ok
```
#(config) bandwidth-management

**Synopsis**

Bandwidth management allows you to classify, control, and, if required, limit the amount of bandwidth used by a class of network traffic flowing into or out of the ProxySG.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) bandwidth-management
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config bandwidth-management)
```

**Subcommands**

- `(config bandwidth-management) create class_name`  
  Creates a bandwidth-management class.

- `(config bandwidth-management) delete class_name`  
  Deletes the specified bandwidth-management class. Note that if another class has a reference to the specified class, this command fails.

- `(config bandwidth-management) disable`  
  Disables bandwidth-management.

- `(config bandwidth-management) edit class_name`  
  Changes the prompt (see `(config bandwidth-management class_name)` on page 138)

- `(config bandwidth-management) enable`  
  Enables bandwidth-management.

- `(config bandwidth-management) exit`  
  Exits `(config bandwidth-management)` mode and returns to `(config)` mode.

- `(config bandwidth-management) view configuration [bandwidth_class]`  
  Displays bandwidth-management configuration for all bandwidth-management classes or for the class specified.

- `(config bandwidth-management) view statistics [bandwidth_class]`  
  Displays bandwidth-management statistics for all bandwidth-management classes or for the class specified.

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```plaintext
SGOS#(config) bandwidth-management
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) enable
  ok
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) create Office_A
  ok
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) edit Office_A
SGOS#(config bw-class Office_A) exit
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config bandwidth-management class_name)

**Synopsis**
This command allows you to edit a bandwidth-management class.

**Syntax**
```
#(config)
bandwidth-management
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config bandwidth-management)
```
```
#(config bandwidth-management) edit class_name
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config bw-class class_name)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config bw-class class_name) exit
   Exits #(config bw-class class_name) mode and returns to #(config bandwidth-management) mode.
```
```
#(config bw-class class_name) max-bandwidth maximum_in_kbps
   Sets the maximum bandwidth for this class.
```
```
#(config bw-class class_name) min-bandwidth minimum_in_kbps
   Sets the minimum bandwidth for this class.
```
```
#(config bw-class class_name) no max-bandwidth
   Resets the maximum bandwidth of this bandwidth-management class to the default (unlimited—no maximum)
```
```
#(config bw-class class_name) no min-bandwidth
   Resets the minimum bandwidth of this bandwidth-management class to the default (no minimum).
```
```
#(config bw-class class_name) no parent
   Clears the parent from this bandwidth-management class.
```
```
#(config bw-class class_name) parent class_name
   Makes the specified class a parent of the class being configured.
```
```
#(config bw-class class_name) priority value_from_0_to_7
   Sets the priority for this bandwidth-management class. The lowest priority level is 0 and the highest is 7.
```
```
#(config bw-class class_name) view [children]
   Displays the settings for this bandwidth-management class or displays the settings for the children of this bandwidth-management class.
```

**For More Information**
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*
Example

SGOS#(config) bandwidth-management
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) edit CEO_A
SGOS#(config bw-class CEO_A) min-bandwidth 500
   ok
SGOS#(config bw-class CEO_A) priority 1
   ok
SGOS#(config bw-class CEO_A) exit
SGOS#(config bandwidth-management) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config) banner

**Synopsis**

This command enables you to define a login banner for your users.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) banner login string
Sets the login banner to the value of string.
```

```plaintext
#(config) banner no login
Sets the login banner to null.
```

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```plaintext
#(config) banner login "Sales and Marketing Intranet Web"
ok
```
#(config) bridge

**Synopsis**

Allows you to configure bridging.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) bridge
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config bridge)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config bridge) bandwidth-class bridgename
  Sets bridge bandwidth class.

#(config bridge) create bridgename
  Creates a bridge. This bridge name is case insensitive. You cannot name one bridge “ABC” and another bridge “abc”.

#(config bridge) delete bridgename
  Deletes the bridge.

#(config bridge) edit bridgename
  Changes the prompt to #(#(config bridge bridgename)

#(config bridge bridgename) exit
  Exits the #(config bridge hostname) submode and returns to #(config bridge) mode.

#(config bridge) no bandwidth-class
  Clears the bandwidth-class settings.

#(config bridge) view {configuration | statistics | fwtable} bridgename
  Displays information for the specified bridge or all bridges.
```

**Note:** To bandwidth-manage a bridge, bandwidth management must be enabled. Bandwidth management is enabled by default if you have a valid bandwidth-management license. You must also create a bandwidth class for bridging (in bandwidth-management mode) before you can select it here. See #(config bandwidth-management class_name) on page 138 for more information.

---

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) bridge
SGOS#(config bridge) create test
  ok
SGOS#(config bridge) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config bridge bridge_name)

**Synopsis**
This command allows you to edit a bridge.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) bridge
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config bridge)
```
```
#(config bridge) edit bridge_name
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config bridge bridge_name)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config bridge bridgename) attach-interface adapter#:interface#
   Attaches the interface to the bridge.

#(config bridge bridgename) clear-fwtable {static}
   Clears bridge forwarding table.

#(config bridge bridgename) clear-statistics
   Clears the bridge statistics.

#(config bridge bridgename) exit
   Exits #(config bridge bridgename) mode and returns to #(config bridge) mode.

#(config bridge bridgename) failover {group | mode} {parallel | serial}
   Associates the bridge to a failover group or sets the bridge failover mode.

#(config bridge bridgename) mode {disable | fail-open | fail-closed}
   Sets the bridge mode on appliances equipped with a programmable adapter card.
```

The following adapter card modes are available:
- **disable**: Disables the bridge and allows the adapter interfaces to be reused as NICs or as part of another bridge.
- **fail-open**: If the ProxySG fails, all traffic passes through the bridge so clients can still receive data.
- **fail-closed**: If the ProxySG fails, all traffic is blocked and service is interrupted. This mode provides the same functionality as a user-configured software bridge.

```
#(config bridge bridgename) mute {enable | disable}
   Specifies whether to mute the bridge interfaces upon detecting a bridge loop. By default, muting is enabled.

#(config bridge bridgename) no {interface | failover | static-fwtable-entry}
   Clears the settings as follows:
- **interface**: Removes the interface from the bridge.
- **failover**: Negates failover settings.
- **static-fwtable-entry**: Clears the static forwarding table entry.
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config bridge bridgename) spanning-tree adapter#:interface#
    {enable | disable}
    Enables or disables spanning tree participation.

#(config bridge bridgename) propagate-failure {enable | disable}
    Enables or disables link error propagation.

#(config bridge bridgename) static-fwtable-entry
    adapter#:interface# mac-address
    Adds a static forwarding table entry.

#(config bridge bridgename) mute-on-loop {enable | disable}
    Enable/disable interface muting when a bridge loop is detected. Muting is enabled by default.

#(config bridge bridgename) view {configuration | statistics | fwtable}
    Displays information for the specified bridge.

For More Information

❐ SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config) bridge
SGOS#(config bridge) edit b_1
SGOS#(config bridge b_1) attach interface 0:1
    ok
SGOS#(config bridge b_1) failover mode parallel
    ok
SGOS#(config bridge b_1) exit
SGOS#(config bridge) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config)cachepulse

## Synopsis
Allows you to configure the CachePulse service.

## Syntax
```
#(config) cachepulse
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config cachepulse)
```

## Subcommands
```
#(config cachepulse) disable
   Disables the CachePulse service.

#(config cachepulse) download get-now
   Download the latest data. The CLI displays the download progress and status. If the
database is already up-to-date, the appliance does not download it again.

#(config cachepulse) enable
   Enables the CachePulse service.

#(config cachepulse) exit
   Exits the cachepulse node and returns to #(config) prompt.

#(config cachepulse) view
   Displays CachePulse statistics, such as license information, registration status, the download
URL for the CachePulse database, results of the last download, and the last successful
download. This subcommand produces the same output as the #show cachepulse
command.

## For More Information
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

## Example
```
#(config cachepulse) view
License Type:           Perpetual
Service:                Enabled
Download method:        Direct
Last successful download:
   Time:                 Tue, 30 Jul 2013 20:15:39 UTC
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config)caching

Synopsis
Objects can be stored and managed for later retrieval.

Discussion
When a stored HTTP object expires, it is placed in a refresh list. The ProxySG processes the refresh list in the background, when it is not serving requests. Refresh policies define how the device handles the refresh process.

The HTTP caching options allow you to specify:
- Maximum object size
- Negative responses
- Refresh parameters

In addition to HTTP objects, the ProxySG can store objects requested using FTP. When the device retrieves and stores an FTP object, it uses two methods to determine how long the object should stay cached.

- If the object has a last-modified date, the ProxySG assigns a refresh date to the object that is a percentage of the last-modified date.
- If the object does not have a last-modified date, the ProxySG assigns a refresh date to the object based on a fixed period of time.

Syntax

#(config) caching

This changes the prompt to:

#(config caching)

Subcommands

#(config caching) always-verify-source
Specify the ProxySG to always verify the freshness of an object with the object source.

#(config caching) exit
Exits the #(config caching) mode and returns to #(config) mode.

#(config caching) ftp
Changes the prompt to #(config caching ftp) on page 147

#(config caching) max-cache-size megabytes
Specify the maximum size of the cache to the value indicated by megabytes.

#(config caching) negative-response minutes
Specify that negative responses should be cached for the time period identified by minutes

#(config caching) no always-verify-source
Specify that the ProxySG appliance should never verify the freshness of an object with the object source

#(config caching) no automatic-backoff
Disables the HTTP Disk Backoff feature. Enabled by default, this feature monitors disk activity and prevents cache reading or writing during periods of peak activity. If disabled, this feature can be enabled by entering automatic-backoff at the (config caching) prompt.
#(config caching) `no refresh`
Disables asynchronous adaptive refresh (AAR).

#(config caching) `refresh bandwidth {automatic | kbps}`
Specifies the amount of bandwidth (in kilobits per second) that the ProxySG appliance should use for asynchronous adaptive refresh activity. The range is 0–2097151 kbps; a value of 0 disables adaptive refresh. To have the ProxySG automatically adjust the amount of bandwidth necessary to refresh content, use `automatic`. Asynchronous adaptive refresh is disabled by default.

#(config caching) `view`
Displays caching parameters.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config) `caching`
SGOS#(config caching) `always-verify-source` ok
SGOS#(config caching) `max-cache-size 100` ok
SGOS#(config caching) `negative-response 15` ok
SGOS#(config caching) `refresh bandwidth automatic` ok
SGOS#(config caching) `exit` ok
SGOS#(config)
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config caching ftp)

**Synopsis**

The FTP caching options allow you to specify:

- Transparency
- Caching objects by date
- Caching objects without a last-modified date: if an FTP object is served without a last modified date, the ProxySG caches the object for a set period of time.

**Syntax**

```bash
#(config) caching
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config caching)
```

```
#(config caching) ftp
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config caching ftp)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config caching ftp) {disable | enable}
```

Disables or enables caching FTP objects

```
#(config caching ftp) exit
```

Exits #(config caching ftp) mode and returns to #(config caching) mode.

```
#(config caching ftp) type-m-percent percent
```

Specifies the TTL for objects with a last-modified time.

```
#(config caching ftp) type-n-initial hours
```

Specifies the TTL for objects with no expiration.

```
#(config caching ftp) view
```

Shows the current FTP caching settings.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

```
SGOS#(config caching) ftp
SGOS#(config caching ftp) enable
 ok
SGOS#(config caching ftp) type-m-percent 20
 ok
SGOS#(config caching ftp) type-n-initial 10
 ok
SGOS#(config caching ftp) exit
SGOS#(config caching) exit
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) cifs

Synopsis

Configures the CIFS proxy for SMBv1 connections. See #(config) smbv2 on page 396 for configuring settings for SMBv2 connections.

Syntax

```
SGOS#(config) cifs
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
SGOS#(config cifs)
```

Subcommands

```
SGOS#(config cifs) directory-cache-time seconds
```

This option determines how long SMBv1 directory information is kept in cache. Changes made to a directory by clients not using the ProxySG may not be visible to clients until at least this much time has elapsed. The default cache time is 60 seconds.

```
SGOS#(config cifs) disable
```

Disable protocol-based acceleration for SMBv1 connections. All SMBv1 connections are passed through, allowing the CIFS proxy to accelerate them with byte caching and compression techniques (if enabled for the CIFS service). No object caching is performed on SMBv1 connections.

```
SGOS#(config cifs) enable
```

Enable protocol-based acceleration for SMBv1 connections.

```
SGOS#(config cifs) exit
```

Returns to the (config) submode.

```
SGOS#(config cifs) read-ahead {disable | enable}
```

This option is enabled by default and improves performance of SMBv1 connections by attempting to fetch and cache blocks of data that might be requested by a client before the actual request occurs. Disabling this option causes the appliance to fetch and cache only data actually requested by clients.

```
SGOS#(config cifs) remote-storage-optimization {disable | enable}
```

When this option is enabled, Windows Explorer modifies the icons of uncached folders on remote servers, indicating to users that the contents of the folder have not yet been cached by the ProxySG. Applies to SMBv1 connections only.

```
SGOS#(config cifs) smb-signing domain domain
```

Configure the domain name to which the username belongs; the ProxySG will use this domain to perform SMB signing. Specifying the domain is optional. SMB signing is supported on SMBv1 connections only.

```
SGOS#(config cifs) smb-signing encrypted-password encrypted-password
```

Specify the encrypted password that the ProxySG sends to access the domain when performing SMB signing. Specifying the encrypted password is optional. SMB signing is supported on SMBv1 connections only.

```
SGOS#(config cifs) smb-signing optimize {disable | enable}
```

Enable/disable CIFS optimizations on signed SMBv1 traffic. Note: Before enabling SMB signing on the ProxySG, you must create a user in the domain that represents the ProxySG. When SMB signing is required by the OCS, the CIFS proxy uses this virtual user’s credentials. This user cannot be a guest or anonymous. SMB signing is supported on SMBv1 connections only.
Note: If the client is configured to require SMB signing, which is not a common configuration, the ProxySG cannot provide CIFS optimization; the traffic passes through with only the benefits provided by the general ADN configuration.

```
SGOS#(config cifs) smb-signing password password
Specify the user password that the ProxySG sends to access the domain when performing SMB signing. SMB signing is supported on SMBv1 connections only.

SGOS#(config cifs) smb-signing username username
Specify the user in the domain that will be used to perform SMB signing. Ensure you enter the name exactly as created. Specifying the user name is required. SMB signing is supported on SMBv1 connections only.

SGOS#(config cifs) strict-directory-expiration {disable | enable}
This option is disabled by default. When this option is enabled and directory-cache-time is past its expiration, directories are refreshed synchronously instead of in the background. This is needed when the set of visible objects in a directory returned by a server can vary between users.

SGOS#(config cifs) suppress-folder-customization {disable | enable}
To speed the display of remote folders, enable Suppress Folder Customization to skip extra transactions and always display remote folders in the default view.

SGOS#(config cifs) view {configuration | statistics}
Views the configuration or statistics for SMBv1.

SGOS#(config cifs) write-back {full | none}
This option is set to full by default, which improves performance by acknowledging client writes immediately and sending them to the server in the background. Setting this option to none forces all writes to be sent to the server synchronously.
```

For More Information
- “Accelerating File Sharing” chapter in the SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
- #(config) smbv2 on page 396

Example
```
SGOS#(config)cifs
SGOS#(config cifs) directory-cache-time 240
  ok
SGOS#(config cifs) read-ahead enable
  ok
SGOS#(config cifs) write-back full
  ok
SGOS#(config cifs) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config) clock

Synopsis
To manage objects in the cache, a ProxySG must know the current Universal Time
Coordinates (UTC) time. By default, the device attempts to connect to a Network Time
Protocol (NTP) server to acquire the UTC time. The ProxySG includes a list of NTP servers
available on the Internet, and attempts to connect to them in the order they appear in the NTP
server list on the NTP tab. If the ProxySG cannot access any of the listed NTP servers, you
must manually set the UTC time using the clock command.

Syntax
#(config) clock [subcommands]

Subcommands
#(config) clock day day
Sets the Universal Time Code (UTC) day to the day indicated by day. The value can be any
integer from 1 through 31.

#(config) clock hour hour
Sets the UTC hour to the hour indicated by hour. The value can be any integer from 0 through
23.

#(config) clock minute minute
Sets the UTC minute to the minute indicated by minute. The value can be any integer from 0
through 59.

#(config) clock month month
Sets the UTC month to the month indicated by month. The value can be any integer from 1
through 12.

#(config) clock second second
Sets the UTC second to the second indicated by second. The value can be any integer from 0
through 59.

#(config) clock year year
Sets the UTC year to the year indicated by year. The value must take the form xxxx.

For More Information
» SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example
SGOS#(config) clock year 2003
ok
SGOS#(config) clock month 4
ok
SGOS#(config) clock day 1
ok
SGOS#(config) clock hour 0
ok
SGOS#(config) clock minute 30
ok
SGOS#(config) clock second 59
ok
## #(config) cloud-service

### Synopsis

Use the cloud-service commands to configure options relating to the Blue Coat Cloud Service. The Blue Coat Cloud Service enables all subscribed devices to share the same common policy, whether on-premise or off-premise. The policy can also be modified on the appliance to conform to local conditions. In this way, you can create general policies that apply to all locations while overriding rules that conflict with local requirements. To use this service, you must first obtain a Blue Coat Cloud Service account (contact your Blue Coat sales representative).

The Advanced Lab Network (ALN) is a Blue Coat cloud service testing environment. It includes all current functionality plus yet-to-be released new features. ALN access is limited to specific Blue Coat customers, and is not available with all cloud service subscriptions. Contact your local Blue Coat Sales Engineer to inquire about accessing the ALN to preview and test new features and provide feedback to Blue Coat.

### Syntax

```
# (config) cloud-service
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
# (config cloud-service)
```

If you have an ALN subscription, you must use the `reveal-advanced all` command at the `enable` or `config` prompt to view ALN CLI options:

```
# (config) reveal-advanced all
```

For more information, see `# reveal-advanced` on page 78.

### Subcommands

```
#(config cloud-service) common-policy {disable | enable}
```

Enables or disables subscription to the policy installed on the Blue Coat cloud service. To use this service, Blue Coat WebFilter (BCWF) must be enabled and the appliance must be registered with the cloud service. Enabling the cloud common-policy enables all subscribed devices to share the same policy configuration, whether on-premise and off-premise. The policy synchronizes with the master file every 15 minutes from last boot time. This interval cannot be changed but you can force an immediate update.

```
#(config cloud-service) deregister [force]
```

Removes the appliance from the Blue Coat cloud service. The `force` option forces deregistration even if there are errors (the appliance removes all cloud-provisioned policy and returns the system to the pre-registration state).

```
#(config cloud-service) exit
```

Returns to the (config) submode.

```
#(config cloud-service) register location-name cloud-service-username [password]
```

Registers the appliance with the Blue Coat cloud service. Before registering the appliance, you must have obtained a Blue Coat cloud service account.

```
#(config cloud-service) update-now [force]
```

Synchronizes the installed common policy with the master file in the cloud. You can use this command to re-download the common policy even if the ProxySG appliance has the latest copy of policy as this may be useful when troubleshooting.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config cloud-service) cloud-network {advanced-labs | production}
Selects the cloud service network to use, the Advanced Labs Network (ALN) or production. By default the appliance will always use the production portal. To view this option, you must enter the reveal-advanced all command from the config or enable prompt.

**Note:** You must have an ALN account to use the Advanced Labs Network. To obtain an account, contact your Blue Coat sales representative.

#(config cloud-service) view
View Blue Coat cloud service status for the appliance.

For More Information

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

Example

```
SGOS#(config) register chicago2 admin@example.com Admin
ok
SGOS#(config) common-policy enable
ok
SGOS#(config) view
Location: chicago2
Last successful update time: 2012-07-11 14:42:04-07:00PDT
Last attempted update time: 2012-07-12 08:03:38-07:00PDT
Failed update attempts: 0
Entitlements:
    Common Policy: enabled, expires on 2014-02-28
SGOS#(config) update-now
```
#(config) content

**Synopsis**

Use this command to manage and manipulate content distribution requests and re-validate requests for HTTP, FTP, CIFS, and streaming content.

**Note:** The content command options are not compatible with transparent FTP.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) content [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) content cancel outstanding-requests
Specifies to cancel all outstanding content distribution requests and re-validate requests.
```

```
#(config) content cancel url url
Specifies to cancel outstanding content distribution requests and re-validate requests for the URL identified by url.
```

```
#(config) content delete regex regex
Specifies to delete content based on the regular expression identified by regex.
```

```
#(config) content delete url url
Specifies to delete content for the URL identified by url.
```

```
#(config) content distribute url [from from_url]
Specifies that the content associated with url should be distributed from the origin server and placed in the ProxySG cache. Specify the [from from_url] when users will be accessing content from a different location than what is specified when pre-populating the cache; for example, the [from from_url] is useful when you are pre-populating content in a lab environment using a different host from the one that will be used once the appliance is deployed.

To pre-populate a CIFS file, the url should conform to the following format:

cifs://domain;username:password@server/share/path-to-file

To pre-populate HTTP content, the url should use the following format:

http://username:password@host:port/path-to-file

To pre-populate FTP content, the url should use the following format:

ftp://username:password@host:port/path-to-file
```

**Note:**

To pre-populate streaming content, the url must use one of the following formats:

```
rtsp://username:password@host:port/path-to-file
mms://username:password@host:port/path-to-file
```
The sub-fields in the URL are subject to the following requirements:

| domain     | • For CIFS content only  
|            | • Can contain the following characters only:  
|            |   a-z A-Z 0-9 ~!%&*()-_=+;`,  
|            | Note: Credentials (domain;username;password) must be supplied in the URL that is being sent to the server. The credentials will be part of the url field unless the from_url is specified; in this case, the credentials are specified as part of the from_url. |
| username   | Can contain the following characters only:  
|            |   a-z A-Z 0-9 ~!%&*()-_=+;`,  
| password   | Can contain any character except spaces and the following symbols:  
| server/host| • Can contain the following characters only:  
|            |   a-z A-Z 0-9 ~!%&*()-_=+;`,  
|            |   Spaces are not allowed.  
| share      | • For CIFS content only  
|            | • Can contain any characters except the following:  
|            |   <>:"/\?*  
| path-to-file| • Can reference a specific file or a directory. If you specify a directory (without a filename), all files and subdirectories in that directory will be pre-populated.  
|            | • Can contain any characters except the following:  
|            |   <>:"/\?*  
|            | • If the path-to-file contains spaces, enclose the entire URL in quotation marks, or substitute each space with the following escape code: %20. If the path-to-file contains a percent sign, substitute the % with %25.  
|            | Note for CIFS URLs: If you do not specify a path, all files and directories in the specified share will be pre-populated.  

#(config) **content priority regex** priority_0-7 regex  
Specifies to add a content deletion policy based on the regular expression identified by regex.  

#(config) **content priority url** priority_0-7 url  
Specifies to add a content deletion policy for the URL identified by url.  

#(config) **content revalidate regex** regex  
Revalidates the content associated with the regular expression identified by regex with the origin server.  

#(config) **content revalidate url** url [from from_url]  
Revalidates the content associated with the url.

---

For More Information

- Blue Coat Director Configuration and Management Guide

Example

SGOS#(config) **content distribute** http://www.bluecoat.com  
Current time: Mon, 01 Apr 2003 00:34:07 GMT  
SGOS#(config) **content revalidate url** http://www.bluecoat.com  
Last load time: Mon, 01 Apr 2003 00:34:07 GMT  
SGOS#(config) **content distribute** http://www.bluecoat.com
Current time: Mon, 01 Apr 2003 00:35:01 GMT
SGOS#(config) content priority url 7 http://www.bluecoat.com
SGOS#(config) content cancel outstanding-requests
SGOS#(config) content delete url http://www.bluecoat.com
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) content-filter

Synopsis

The ProxySG offers the option of using content filtering to control the type of retrieved content and to filter requests made by clients. The ProxySG supports the following content filtering methods:

- **Local database**
  This method allows you to create and maintain your own content-filtering list locally, through the ProxySG CLI or Management Console.

- **Blue Coat Web Filter (BCWF)**
  BCWF is a highly effective content-filtering service that can quickly learn and adapt to the working set of its users. Also, BCWF can use Dynamic Real Time Rating (DRTR) to analyze requested Web pages in real time, blocking new, unrated content on the fly, while providing the database with instant updates that impact all users without service interruption.

- **Internet Watch Foundation® (IWF)**
  The IWF is a non-profit organization that provides enterprises with a list of known child pornography URLs. The IWF database features a single category called IWF-Restricted, which is detectable and blockable using policy. IWF can be enabled along with other content-filtering services.

- **Vendor-based content filtering**
  This method allows you to block URLs using vendor-defined categories. For this method, use content-filtering solutions from the following vendors:

  - i-FILTER
  - InterSafe™
  - Optenet
  - Proventia™
  - SurfControl™
  - WebWasher®

  You can also combine this type of content filtering with the ProxySG policies, which use CPL.

- **YouTube™**
  You can enable Blue Coat categories for YouTube and then add policy that refers to these categories to control traffic. For example, you could block videos that YouTube categorizes as Entertainment and Movies. You can enable and disable this feature in the CLI.

**Note:** This feature is provided on an "as-is" basis. Blue Coat has no control of, and is not responsible for, information and content provided (or not) by YouTube. Customer is required to apply and use its own API key in order to activate this feature, and therefore obligated to comply with all terms of use regarding the foregoing (for example, see https://developers.google.com/youtube/terms), including
quotas, restrictions and limits on use that may be imposed by YouTube. Blue Coat shall not be liable for any change, discontinuance, availability or functionality of the features described herein.

- Denying access to URLs through policy

  This method allows you to block by URL, including filtering by scheme, domain, or individual host or IP address. For this method, you define ProxySG policies, which use CPL.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

Syntax

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter)
```

Subcommands

```
#(config content-filter) bluecoat
    Enters configuration mode for Blue Coat Web Filter. See #(config bluecoat) on page 162.

#(config content-filter) categories
    Shows available categories.

#(config content-filter) cpu-throttle enable | disable
    Specifies whether to limit CPU utilization to 25% for content filtering database updates. By default, this option is enabled (meaning that CPU is limited for database downloads).

#(config content-filter) exit
    Exits configure content filter mode and returns to configure mode.

#(config content-filter) i-filter
    Enters configuration mode for i-FILTER.

#(config content-filter) intersafe
    Enters configuration mode for InterSafe. See

#(config content-filter) iwf
    Enters configuration mode for IWF. See #(config iwf) on page 164.

#(config content-filter) local—changes the prompt (see #(config) security local on page 343)
    Enters configuration mode for Local database.

#(config content-filter) memory-allocation {high | low | normal}
    Sets the amount of RAM that the content filter service can use.
```

**Note:** The default memory allocation (normal) is ideal for most deployments. Changing the memory allocation might have significant impacts on performance of the appliance. Be sure that the setting you choose is appropriate for your deployment.

Content filtering databases are becoming larger and can cause CPU spikes, restarts and issues with the ProxySG appliance’s performance. If you find this is the case, you can change the amount of RAM (the ceiling) that the content filtering service (CFS) is allowed to use. The high option maximizes memory use for content-filtering, and the low option minimizes memory use for content-filtering.

Adjust the amount of memory allocated to the database in the following situations:

- If you are not using ADN and have a high transaction rate for content filtering, you can increase the memory allocation setting to high. This helps content filtering run more efficiently.

- If you are using both ADN and content filtering but the transaction rate for content filtering is not very high, you can reduce the memory allocation setting to low. This makes more resources available for ADN, allowing it to support a larger number of concurrent connections.

The command causes a reload of all enabled content filter providers, with the new effective ceiling in place.
If you downgrade the SGOS, memory allocation reverts to normal for the platform. When re-upgraded, the selected setting is reinstated on the ProxySG appliance.

```plaintext
#(config content-filter) no review-message
Specifies that vendor categorization review be turned off.

#(config content-filter) optenet
Enters configuration mode for Optenet.

#(config content-filter) proventia
Enters configuration mode for Proventia.

#(config content-filter) provider bluecoat {disable | enable | lookup-mode {always | uncategorized}}
Enables or disables Blue Coat Web Filter database. The lookup-mode option specifies whether every URL should be categorized by the downloaded filter.

#(config content-filter) provider local {disable | enable | lookup-mode {always | uncategorized}}
Enables or disables a local user database. The lookup-mode option specifies whether every URL should be categorized by the downloaded filter.

#(config content-filter) provider iwf {disable | enable | lookup-mode {always | uncategorized}}
Enables or disables IWF filtering. The lookup-mode option specifies whether every URL should be categorized by the downloaded filter.

#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party i-filter
Selects i-FILTER content filtering.

#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party intersafe
Selects InterSafe content filtering.

#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party lookup-mode
Sets lookup mode for a 3rd party provider for content filtering.

#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party none
Specifies that a third-party vendor not be used for content filtering.

#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party optenet
Selects Optenet content filtering.

#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party proventia
Selects Proventia Web Filter content filtering.

#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party surfcontrol
Selects SurfControl content filtering.

#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party webwasher
Selects Webwasher URL Filter content filtering.

#(config content-filter) provider youtube {disable | enable}
Disables or enables Blue Coat categories for YouTube. It is disabled by default.

#(config content-filter) review-message
Used for categorization review for certain Content Filtering vendors. The review-message setting enables two substitutions that can be used in exceptions pages to allow users to review or dispute content categorization results.

#(config content-filter) test-url url
Displays categories for a URL assigned by the current configuration.

#(config content-filter) view
Shows the current settings for the local database (if it is in use) and the selected provider (if one is selected).
**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) provider 3rd-party proventia
loading database....
  ok
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config bluecoat)

**Synopsis**
Use this command to configure Blue Coat WebFilter content filtering.

**Syntax**
```
#(config)
content-filter
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config content-filter) bluecoat
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config bluecoat)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config bluecoat) download all-day
Checks for database updates all day.

#(config bluecoat) download auto
Enables automatic database downloads.

#(config bluecoat) download between-hours start stop
Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

#(config bluecoat) download encrypted-password encrypted_password
Specifies the encrypted password for the database download server.

#(config bluecoat) download get-now
Download the latest data. The CLI displays the download progress and status. If the database is already up-to-date, the appliance does not download it again.

#(config bluecoat) download password password
Specifies the password for the database download server.

#(config bluecoat) download url {default | url}
Specifies using either the default URL or a specific URL for the database download server.

#(config bluecoat) download username username
Specifies the username for the database download server.

#(config bluecoat) exit
Exits configure bluecoat mode and returns to configure content-filter mode.

#(config bluecoat) no download auto
Disables automatic download.

#(config bluecoat) no download encrypted-password
Clears the encrypted password for the database download server.

#(config bluecoat) no download password
Clears the password for the database download server.

#(config bluecoat) no download url
Clears the URL for the database download server.

#(config bluecoat) no download username
Clears the username for the database download server.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

### Privileged Mode Configure Commands

- **service**
  - `{disable | enable}
  - Disables or enables the dynamic categorization service.

- **service forward**
  - `{none | host or group_alias}
  - Configures the forwarding host for use with dynamic categorization; stops forwarding of dynamic service requests <host-or-group-alias>.

- **service secure**
  - `{enable | disable}
  - Configures the security of the connection.

- **service send-https-url**
  - `{full | path | disable}
  - Configures the HTTPS mode and level of information sent in dynamic categorization requests for HTTPS transactions sent to WebPulse:
    - full — Send entire URL (domain, path, and query string).
    - path — Send only the domain and path.
    - disable — Do not send a rating request for HTTPS transactions.

- **service socks-gateway**
  - `{none | gateway_alias}
  - Configures the SOCKS gateway for use with dynamic categorization; stops the use of a SOCKS gateway with dynamic service requests <gateway-alias>.

- **service mode**
  - `{background | realtime | none}
  - Configures the default dynamic categorization to run in the background, run in real time, or to not run.

- **service send-request-info**
  - `{enable | disable}
  - Configures default dynamic rating service information handling.

- **service send-malware-info**
  - `{enable | disable}
  - Configures malware found notifications to the WebPulse service.

- **view**
  - Shows the current Blue Coat content filtering settings.

### Example

SGOS#(config) content-filter
SGOS#(config content-filter) bluecoat
SGOS#(config bluecoat) service mode background
ok
SGOS#(config bluecoat) exit
SGOS#(config content-filter) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config iwf)

**Synopsis**
Use this command to configure Internet Watch Foundation content filtering.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) content-filter
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config content-filter) iwf
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config iwf)
```

**Subcommands**

- `download between-hours start stop`
  Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

- `download get-now background`
  Download the latest data in the background. You can continue to use the CLI while the download is in progress. If the database is already up-to-date, the appliance does not download it again.

- `download between-hours start stop`
  Sets the interval for automatic database update checks.

- `download get-now background`
  Download the latest data in the background. You can continue to use the CLI while the download is in progress. If the database is already up-to-date, the appliance does not download it again.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config)connection-forwarding

**Synopsis**

This command enables you to configure the TCP Connection Forwarding aspect of ADN transparent tunnel load balancing and asymmetric routing.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) connection-forwarding
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config connection-forwarding)
```

**Subcommands**

SGOS# (config connection forwarding) {add | remove} ip_address  
Add or remove a ProxySG to a connection forwarding peer group.

SGOS# (config connection forwarding) port number  
Specify the port used by all peers in the peer group to communicate connection information (each peer in the group *must* use the same port number). The default is 3030.

SGOS# (config connection forwarding) {enable | disable}  
Enables or disables connection forwarding on this ProxySG.

SGOS# (config connection forwarding) clear  
Clear the list of forwarding peers from this ProxySG.

SGOS# (config connection forwarding) exit  
Exits (config connection forwarding) mode and returns to #{config} mode.

SGOS# (config connection forwarding) view  
View the TCP connection forwarding information.

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) connection-forwarding
SGOS#(connection-forwarding) add 10.9.59.100
   ok
SGOS#(config connection-forwarding) port 3030
   ok
SGOS#(config connection-forwarding) enable
   ok
```
#(config) diagnostics

**Synopsis**

This command enables you to configure the remote diagnostic feature Heartbeat.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) diagnostics
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config diagnostics)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config diagnostics) cpu-monitor {disable | enable}
Enables or disables the CPU monitor (the CPU monitor is disabled by default).
```

```
#(config diagnostics) cpu-monitor interval seconds
Sets the periodic interval of the CPU monitor from 1 to 59 seconds (the default setting is 5 seconds).
```

```
#(config diagnostics) exit
Exits #(config diagnostics) mode and returns to #(config) mode.
```

```
#(config diagnostics) heartbeat {disable | enable}
Enables or disables the appliance Heartbeat features.
```

```
#(config diagnostics) monitor {disable | enable}
Enables or disables the Blue Coat monitoring feature.
```

```
#(config diagnostics) send-heartbeat
Triggers a heartbeat report.
```

```
#(config diagnostics) service-info
Changes the prompt (see #(config service-info) on page 168)
```

```
#(config diagnostics) snapshot (create | delete) snapshot_name
Create or delete a snapshot job. By default, the sysinfo snapshot job keeps the last 100 snapshots. The sysinfo_stats snapshot job keeps the last 168 snapshots. Snapshots created in SGOS 6.5.2 or later are not viewable if you downgrade to SGOS 6.5.1 or earlier.
```

```
#(config diagnostics) edit snapshot_name
Changes the prompt to #(config snapshot snapshot_name) on page 170
```

```
#(config diagnostics) view configuration
Displays diagnostics settings for Heartbeats, CPU monitor, automatic service-info, and snapshots.
```

```
#(config diagnostics) view cpu-monitor
Displays the CPU Monitor results.
```

```
#(config diagnostics) view service-info
Displays service-info settings and progress.
```

```
#(config diagnostics) view snapshot snapshot_name
Displays the snapshot settings (target, status, interval, to keep, to take, and next snapshot) for the snapshot name specified.
```

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

SGOS#(config) diagnostics
SGOS#(config diagnostics) heartbeat enable
  ok
SGOS#(config diagnostics) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config service-info)

**Synopsis**
This command allows you to send service information to Symantec.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) diagnostics
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config diagnostics) service-info
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config service-info)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config service-info) auto {disable | enable}
Disables or enables the automatic service information feature.
```
```
#(config service-info) auto no sr-number
Clears the service-request number for the automatic service information feature.
```
```
#(config service-info) auto sr-number sr_number
Sets the service-request number for the automatic service information feature.
```
```
#(config service-info) bandwidth-class bandwidth class name
Sets a bandwidth class used to manage the bandwidth of service-information transfers.
```
```
In order to do bandwidth-manage service-information transfers, bandwidth management must be enabled. You must also create a bandwidth class for service-information transfers (in bandwidth-management mode) before you can select it here.
```
```
#(config service-info) cancel all
Cancel all service information being sent to Blue Coat.
```
```
#(config service-info) cancel one_or_more_from_view_status
Cancel certain service information being sent to Symantec.
```
```
#(config service-info) exit
Exits #(config service-info) mode and returns to #(config) mode.
```
```
#(config service-info) no bandwidth-class
Disables bandwidth-management for service-information transfers
```
```
#(config service-info) send sr_number one_or_more_commands_from_view_available
Sends a specific service request number along with a specific command or commands (chosen from the list provided by the view available command) to Symantec.
```
```
#(config service-info) view available
Shows list of service information than can be sent to Symantec.
```
```
#(config service-info) view status
Shows transfer status of service information to Symantec.
```

For More Information

- `(config) bandwidth-management` on page 137
- `SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide`

Example

```
SGOS#(config) diagnostics
SGOS#(config diagnostics) service-info
SGOS#(config service-info) view available
Service information that can be sent to Symantec

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Approx Size (bytes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event_log</td>
<td>188,416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System_information</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snapshot_sysinfo</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Snapshot_sysinfo_stats</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SGOS#(config service-info) send 1-4974446 event_log system_information snapshot_sysinfo
Sending the following reports
Event_log
System_information
Snapshot_sysinfo

SGOS#(config service-info) view status

Name                                      | Transferred        |
-----------------------------------------|--------------------|
Event_log                                 | Transferred        |
Snapshot_sysinfo                          | Transferred        |
Event_log                                 | Transferred        |
System_information                        | Transferred        |

SGOS#(config service-info) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config snapshot snapshot_name)

**Synopsis**
This command allows you to edit a snapshot job.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) diagnostics
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config diagnostics) snapshot edit snapshot_name
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config snapshot snapshot_name)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config snapshot snapshot_name) clear-reports
   Clears all stored snapshots reports.

#(config snapshot snapshot_name) {disable | enable}
   Disables or enables this snapshot job.

#(config snapshot snapshot_name) exit
   Exits #(config diagnostics snapshot_name) mode and returns to #(config diagnostics service-info) mode.

#(config snapshot snapshot_name) interval minutes
   Specifies the interval between snapshots reports in minutes.

#(config snapshot snapshot_name) keep number_to_keep (from 1 - 1000)
   Specifies the number of snapshot reports to keep.

#(config snapshot snapshot_name) take {infinite | number_to_take}
   Specifies the number of snapshot reports to take.

#(config snapshot snapshot_name) target object_to_fetch
   Specifies the object to snapshot.

#(config snapshot snapshot_name) view
   Displays snapshot status and configuration.
```

**For More Information**
- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

**Example**
```
SGOS#(config) diagnostics
SGOS#(config diagnostics) snapshot testshot
SGOS#(diagnostics snapshot testshot) enable
   ok
SGOS#(diagnostics service-info) interval 1440
   ok
SGOS#(diagnostics snapshot testshot) exit
SGOS#(config diagnostics) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config) dns

**Synopsis**

The `dns` command enables you to modify the DNS settings for the ProxySG. Note that the alternate DNS servers are only checked if the servers in the standard DNS list return: “Name not found.”

**Subcommands**

#(config) dns clear imputing
  Sets all entries in the name imputing list to null.

#(config) dns client-affinity {disable | enable}
  Enable or disable client-affinity.
  When enabled, requests from the same client resolve the hostname in the same order.
  www.google.com resolves to 66.102.7.99, 66.102.7.147, and 66.102.7.104. If client-affinity is
  enabled and the appliance receives a request (http, streaming or other proxy request) for
  www.google.com, it uses the client’s IP address to determine the order of the resolved
  addresses. If client-affinity is disabled, the order of the resolved addresses changed each time
  the appliance receives a request.

#(config) dns imputing name
  Identifies the file indicated by `name` as the name imputing list.

#(config) dns negative-cache-ttl-override seconds
  Set the DNS negative cache time-to-live value for `seconds`.
  A DNS request to an unknown domain name is cached by the ProxySG. This type of caching is
  called a negative cache because it does not resolve to an actual IP address. The TTL value for a
  negative cache entry can be overwriten by this command.

#(config) dns no imputing imputed_name
  Removes the imputed name identified by `imputed_name` from the name imputing list.

#(config) dns no negative-cache-ttl-override
  Do not override the negative cache time-to-live value.

#(config) dns recursion {disable | enable}
  Enable or disable DNS recursion. By default, recursion is disabled. When recursion is enabled,
  if a server returns authoritative server information instead of an A record, the ProxySG follows
  the referrals until it receives an answer or detects a recursion loop. If there are more than eight
  referrals, the ProxySG assumes that there is a loop and aborts the request.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) dns imputing name bluecoat.com
ok
SGOS#(config) dns clear imputing
ok
SGOS#(config) dns recursion enable
ok
```
#(config) dns-forwarding

**Synopsis**

The `dns-forwarding` command enables you to create, delete, and edit DNS forwarding groups for the ProxySG.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) dns-forwarding
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config dns forwarding)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config dns forwarding) create group-alias [host-ip]
```

Creates a DNS forwarding group.

```
#(config dns forwarding) delete group-alias
```

Deletes a DNS forwarding group.

```
#(config dns forwarding) edit {primary | alternate | group-alias}
```

Edit a DNS forwarding group. Changes the prompt to `#(config dns forwarding group_name)` on page 174.

```
#(config dns forwarding) exit
```

Exits `#(config dns forwarding)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

```
#(config dns forwarding) view
```

Displays snapshot status and configuration.

**For More Information**

> SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Examples**

```
SGOS#(config dns forwarding) create testgroup 1.1.1.1
ok
SGOS#(config dns forwarding) delete testgroup
ok
SGOS#(config dns forwarding) edit primary
SGOS#(config dns forwarding primary) exit
SGOS#(config dns forwarding) view
```

DNS Forwarding configuration:

- **Group: testgroup**
  - **Servers:**
    - 1.1.1.1
  - **Domains:**

- **Group: primary**
  - **Servers:**
  - **Domains:**
    - *

- **Group: alternate**
  - **Servers:**
Domains:
*
SGOS#(config dns forwarding) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config dns forwarding group_name)

**Synopsis**

This command allows you to edit a DNS forwarding group.

**Syntax**

```shell
#(config dns forwarding) edit {primary | alternate | group-alias}
```

This changes the prompt to:

```shell
#(config dns forwarding group_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```shell
#(config dns forwarding group_name) add {domain domain | server server ip}
```

Add domains or DNS servers to this group. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6.

```shell
#(config dns forwarding group_name) clear {domain | server}
```

Clear the domain or server list for this group.

```shell
#(config dns forwarding group_name) demote server_ip[slots]
```

Demote the specified server IP address.

```shell
#(config dns forwarding group_name) exit
```

Return to the `#(config dns forwarding)` prompt.

```shell
#(config dns forwarding group_name) promote server_ip[slots]
```

Promote the specified server IP address in the DNS server list the number of places indicated. Must be a positive number. If the number is greater than the number of servers in the list, the server is promoted to the first entry in the list.

```shell
#(config dns forwarding group_name) remove {domain | server}
```

Remove a domain or server from the list.

```shell
#(config dns forwarding group_name) view
```

View the DNS forwarding configuration for this group.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Examples**

SGOS#(config dns forwarding primary) add server 1.1.1.1
ok
SGOS#(config dns forwarding primary) demote 1.1.1.1
% Server is already last in the list.
SGOS#(config dns forwarding primary) promote 1.1.1.1
SGOS#(config dns forwarding primary) view
Group:  primary
    Servers:
    1.1.1.1
    1.2.1.1
    Domains:
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) event-log

Synopsis
You can configure the ProxySG appliance to log system events as they occur. Event logging allows you to specify the types of system events logged, the size of the event log, and to configure Syslog monitoring. The ProxySG can also notify you by e-mail if an event is logged.

Syntax
#(config) event-log
This changes the prompt to:
#(config event-log)

Subcommands
#(config event-log) exit
   Exits #(config event-log) mode and returns to #(config) mode.

#(config event-log) level configuration
   Writes severe and configuration change error messages to the event log.

#(config event-log) level informational
   Writes severe, configuration change, policy event, and information error messages to the event log.

#(config event-log) level policy
   Writes severe, configuration change, and policy event error messages to the event log.

#(config event-log) level severe
   Writes only severe error messages to the event log.

#(config event-log) level verbose
   Writes all error messages to the event log.

#(config event-log) log-size megabytes
   Specifies the maximum size of the event log in megabytes.

#(config event-log) mail add email_address
   Specifies an e-mail recipient for the event log output.

#(config event-log) mail clear
   Removes all e-mail recipients from the event log e-mail output distribution list.

#(config event-log) mail remove email_address
   Removes the e-mail recipient indicated by email_address from the event log e-mail output distribution list.

#(config event-log) syslog add {host_name | ip_address}
   Adds a system logging loghost. Enter the IPv4 or IPv6 address of your loghost server, or specify a domain name that resolves to an IPv4 or IPv6 address.

#(config event-log) syslog clear
   Removes all loghosts from system logging notification.

#(config event-log) syslog {disable | enable}
   Disables or enables system logging notifications.

#(config event-log) syslog facility {auth | daemon | kernel | local0 | local1 | local2 | local3 | local4 | local5 | local6 | local7 | lpr | mail | news | syslog | user | uucp}
   Sets the facility that is used when sending to a syslog server.
#(config event-log) syslog remove {host_name | ip_address}
Removes the specified system logging loghost.

#(config event-log) view [configuration] [start YYYY-mm-dd [HH:MM:SS]] [end YYYY-mm-dd [HH:MM:SS]] [regex regex | substring string]
View the event-log configuration, using the #(config event-log) configuration command, or view the contents of the event-log, using the filters offered to narrow the view.

#(config event-log) when-full {overwrite | stop}
Specifies what should happen to the event log when the maximum size has been reached. overwrite overwrites the oldest information in a FIFO manner; stop disables event logging.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

```
SGOS#(config) event-log
SGOS#(config event-log) syslog enable
ok
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) exceptions

Synopsis
These commands allow you to configure built-in and user-defined exception response objects.

Syntax

```
#(config) exceptions
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config exceptions)
```

Subcommands

```
#(config exceptions) create exception_id
   Creates the given exception.
```

```
#(config exceptions) company-name name
   Sets the name used for the $(exception.company_name) substitution.
```

```
#(config exceptions) delete exception_id
   Deletes the exception specified by exception_id.
```

```
#(config exceptions) edit exception_id or user_defined_exception_id
   Changes the prompt to `#(config exceptions [user-defined.]exception_id)` on page 179.
```

```
#(config exceptions) exit
   Exits `#(config exceptions)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.
```

```
#(config exceptions) http-code HTTP_code
   Specifies the default HTTP response code for all exceptions.
```

```
#(config exceptions) inline {contact {eof_marker} | details {eof_marker} | format {eof_marker} | help {eof_marker} | http {contact {eof_marker} | details {eof_marker} | format {eof_marker} | help {eof_marker} | summary {eof_marker}} | summary {eof_marker}}
   Configures defaults for all exception objects.
```

```
#(config exceptions) load exceptions
   Downloads new exceptions.
```

```
#(config exceptions) no path
   Clears the network path to download exceptions.
```

```
#(config exceptions) path url
   Specifies the network path to download exceptions.
```

```
#(config exceptions) user-defined [inline {contact eof_marker | details eof_marker | format eof_marker | help eof_marker | http {contact eof_marker | details eof_marker | format eof_marker | help eof_marker | summary eof_marker} | summary eof_marker} | http-code numeric http response code]
   Configures the top-level values for user-defined exceptions.
```

For More Information

- `SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide`
Example

SGOS#(config) exceptions
SGOS#(config exceptions) default contact
   ok
SGOS#(config exceptions) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config exceptions [user-defined.]exception_id)

**Synopsis**
These commands allow you to edit an exception or a user-defined exception.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) exceptions
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config exceptions) user_defined_exception_id
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config exceptions user_defined_exception_id)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config exceptions user-defined.exception_id) exit
   Exits #(config exceptions user-defined.exception_id) mode and returns
   to #(config exceptions) mode.

#(config exceptions user-defined.exception_id) http-code
   numeric_http_response_code
   Configures this exception's HTTP response code.

#(config exceptions user-defined.exception_id) inline {contact
eof_marker | details eof_marker | format eof_marker | help
eof_marker | http {contact eof_marker | details eof_marker | format
eof_marker | help eof_marker | summary eof_marker} |
summary eof_marker}
   Configures this exception's substitution values.
```

**For More Information**
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**
```
SGOS#(config) exceptions
SGOS#(config exceptions) edit testname
SGOS#(config exceptions user-defined.testname) http-code 000
   ok
SGOS#(config exceptions user-defined.testname) exit
SGOS#(config exceptions) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config) exit

**Synopsis**

Exits from Configuration mode to Privileged mode, from Privileged mode to Standard mode. From Standard mode, the `exit` command closes the CLI session.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) exit
```

The `exit` command has no parameters or subcommands.
#(config) external-services

**Synopsis**

These commands allow you to configure your external services.

Use the edit ICAP commands to configure the ICAP service used to integrate the ProxySG with a virus scanning server. The configuration is specific to the virus scanning server and includes the server IP address, as well as the supported number of connections. If you are using the ProxySG with multiple virus scanning servers or multiple scanning services on the same server, add an ICAP service for each server or scanning service.

**Note:** When you define virus scanning policies, use the same service name. Make sure you type the ICAP service name accurately, whether you are configuring the service on the ProxySG or defining policies, since the name retrieves the other configuration settings for that service.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) external-services
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config external-services)
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config external-services) create icap icap_service_name
Creates an ICAP service.

#(config external-services) create service-group service_group_name
Creates a service group.

#(config external-services) delete name
Deletes an external service.

#(config external-services) edit service_name
See `#(config)icap service_name` on page 215.

#(config external-services) exit
Exits `#(config external-services)` mode and returns to `#(config)` mode.

#(config external-services) icap feedback interactive patience-page {seconds}
For traffic associated with a Web browser, display a patience page after the specified duration.

#(config external-services) icap feedback {interactive [trickle-start {seconds} | trickle-end {seconds} | none] | non-interactive [trickle-start {seconds} | trickle-end {seconds} | none]}
For interactive traffic (associated with a Web browser) or non-traffic (originating from a client other than a Web browser), employ a data trickling method so the user receives a small amount (trickle-start) or large amount (trickle-end) of object data while waiting for the results of the content scan (ICAP). Begin trickling after the specified duration.

#(config external-services) inline http icap-patience {details eof | header eof | help eof | summary eof}
Customizes ICAP patience page details for HTTP connections.

#(config external-services) inline ftp icap-patience text eof
Customizes ICAP patience page details for FTP connections.

#(config external-services) view
Shows external services and external service groups.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config) external-services
SGOS#(config external-services) create icap testicap
  ok
SGOS#(config external-services) exit
SGOS#(config)
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) failover

Synopsis
These commands allow you to configure redundancy into your network.

Syntax

#(config) failover
This changes the prompt to:
#(config failover)

Subcommands

#(config failover) create group_address
Creates a failover group.

#(config failover) delete group_address
Deletes a failover group.

#(config failover) edit group_address
Changes the prompt to #(config failover group_address).

#(config failover group_address) {disable | enable}
Disables or enables failover group indicated by group_address.

#(config failover group_address) encrypted-secret
encrypted_secret
(Optional but recommended) Refers to an encrypted password shared only with the group.

#(config failover group_address) exit
Exits #(config failover group_address) mode and returns to #(config failover) mode.

#(config failover group_address) interval interval_in_seconds
(Optional) Refers to the time between advertisements from the master to the multicast address. The default is 40 seconds.

#(config failover group_address) master
Defines the current system as the master and all other systems as slaves.

#(config failover group_address) multicast-address multicast_address
Refers to a multicast address where the master sends the keepalives (advertisements) to the slave systems.

#(config failover group_address) no interval
Resets the interval to the default value (40 seconds).

#(config failover group_address) no multicast-address
Removes the multicast address from the failover group.

#(config failover group_address) no master
Removes as configured master.

#(config failover group_address) no priority
Resets the priority to the default value (100).

#(config failover group_address) no secret
Clears the secret from the failover group.
Command Line Interface Reference

#(config failover group_address) priority relative_priority
(Optional) Refers to the rank of slave systems. The range is from 1 to 253. (The master
system, the one whose IP address matches the group address, gets 254.)

#(config failover group_address) secret secret
(Optional but recommended) Refers to a password shared only with the group. You can
create a secret, which is then hashed.

#(config failover group_address) view
Shows the current settings for the failover group indicated by group_address.

#(config failover) exit
Exits #(config failover) mode and returns to #(config) mode.

#(config failover) view {configuration [group_address | <Enter>] |
statistics}
View the configuration of a group or all groups or view all statistics.

For More Information

SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Examples

SGOS#(config) failover
SGOS#(config failover) create 10.9.17.135
    ok
SGOS#(config failover) exit
SGOS#(config)

SGOS#(config) failover
SGOS#(config failover) edit 10.9.17.135
SGOS#(config failover 10.9.17.135) master
    ok
SGOS#(config failover 10.9.17.135) exit
SGOS#(config failover) exit
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) forwarding

Synopsis
Configures forwarding of content requests to defined hosts and groups through policy.

Syntax
#(config) forwarding
This changes the prompt to:
#(config forwarding)

Subcommands
#(config forwarding) create host host_alias host_name [http [=port] [https [=port]] [ftp [=port]] [mms [=port]] [rtsp [=port]] [tcp [=port]] [telnet [=port]] [ssl-verify-server [=yes | =no]] [group=group_name] [server | proxy]
The forwarding host (host_name) can be an IPv4 or IPv6 host or address.

#(config forwarding) create group group_name
Creates a forwarding host/group. The only required entries under the create option (for a host) are host_alias, host_name, a protocol, and a port number. The port number can be defined explicitly (i.e., http=8080), or it can take on the default port value of the protocol, if one exists (i.e., enter http, and the default port value of 80 is entered automatically).

To create a host group, you must also include the group=group_name command. If this is the first mention of the group, group_name, then that group is automatically created with this host as its first member. Do not use this command when creating an independent host.

#(config forwarding) default-sequence add host_or_group_alias
Adds an alias to the end of the default failover sequence.

#(config forwarding) default-sequence clear
Clears the default failover sequence.

#(config forwarding) default-sequence demote host_or_group_alias
Demotes an alias one place toward the end of the default failover sequence.

#(config forwarding) default-sequence promote host_or_group_alias
Promotes an alias one place toward the start of the default failover sequence.

#(config forwarding) default-sequence remove host_or_group_alias
Removes an alias from the default failover sequence.

#(config forwarding) delete all
Deletes all forwarding hosts and groups.

#(config forwarding) delete group group_name
Deletes only the group identified by group_name.

#(config forwarding) delete host host_alias
Deletes only the host identified by host_alias.

#(config forwarding) download-via-forwarding {disable | enable}
Disables or enables configuration file downloading using forwarding.

#(config forwarding) edit host_or_group_alias
Changes the prompt to:
• #(config forwarding group_alias) on page 189
• #(config forwarding host_alias) on page 191

#(config forwarding) exit
Exits #(config forwarding) mode and returns to #(config) mode.

#(config forwarding) failure-mode {closed | open}
Sets the default forwarding failure mode to closed or open.

#(config forwarding) host-affinity http method {accelerator-cookie [host_or_group_alias] | client-ip-address [host_or_group_alias] | default [host_or_group_alias] | none [host_or_group_alias]}
Selects a host affinity method for HTTP. If a host or group alias is not specified for the accelerator-cookie, client-ip-address, or none options, the global default is used. Use the default option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified host or group.

#(config forwarding) host-affinity ssl method {accelerator-cookie [host_or_group_alias] | client-ip-address [host_or_group_alias] | default [host_or_group_alias] | none [host_or_group_alias] | ssl-session-id [host_or_group_alias]}
Selects a host affinity method for SSL. If a host or group alias is not specified for the accelerator-cookie, client-ip-address, none, or ssl-session-id options, the global default is used. Use the default option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified host or group.

#(config forwarding) host-affinity other method {client-ip-address [host_or_group_alias] | default [host_or_group_alias] | none [host_or_group_alias]}
Selects a host affinity method (non-HTTP or non-SSL). If a host or group alias is not specified for the client-ip-address, or none options, the global default is used. Use the default option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified host or group.

#(config forwarding) host-affinity timeout minutes
Sets the timeout in minutes for the host affinity.

#(config forwarding) integrated-host-timeout minutes
Sets the timeout for aging out unused integrated hosts.

Sets if and how load balancing hashes between group members. If a group alias is not specified for the domain-hash, least-connections, round-robin, url, or none options, the global default is used. Use the default option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified group.

#(config forwarding) load-balance method {default [host_alias] | least-connections [host_alias] | none [host_alias] | round-robin [host_alias]}
Sets the load balancing method. If a host alias is not specified for the least-connections, round-robin, or none options, the global default is used. Use the default option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified host.

#(config forwarding) no path
Negates certain forwarding settings.

#(config forwarding) path url
Sets the network path to download forwarding settings.

#(config forwarding) view
Displays the currently defined forwarding groups or hosts.
For More Information

*SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*
Example

SGOS#(config) forwarding
SGOS#(config forwarding) download-via-forwarding disable
  ok
SGOS#(config forwarding) failure-mode closed
  ok
SGOS#(config forwarding) host-affinity method client-ip-address
  ok
SGOS#(config forwarding) load-balance hash domain group_name1
  ok
SGOS#(config forwarding) exit
SGOS#(config)
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config forwarding group_alias)

Synopsis
These commands allow you to edit the settings of a specific forwarding group.

Syntax

#(config) forwarding
This changes the prompt to:

#(config forwarding) create host_alias hostname protocol=port
          group=group_alias
#(config forwarding) edit group_alias
This changes the prompt to:

#(config forwarding group_alias)

Subcommands

#(config forwarding group_alias) add
   Adds a new group.

#(config forwarding group_alias) exit
   Exits #(config forwarding group_alias) mode and returns to #(config forwarding) mode.

#(config forwarding group_alias) host-affinity http
   {accelerator-cookie | client-ip-address | default | none}
   Changes the host affinity method (non-SSL) for this group.

#(config forwarding group_alias) host-affinity other
   {client-ip-address | default | none}
   Changes the other host affinity method for this group.

#(config forwarding group_alias) host-affinity ssl
   {accelerator-cookie | client-ip-address | default | ssl-session-id | none}
   Changes the host affinity method (SSL) for this group.

#(config forwarding group_alias) load-balance method
   {default | domain-hash | least-connections | none | round-robin | url-hash}
   Changes the load balancing method.

#(config forwarding group_alias) remove
   Removes an existing group.

#(config forwarding group_alias) view
   Shows the current settings for this forwarding group.

For More Information

   SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

SGOS#(config) forwarding
SGOS#(config forwarding) edit test_group
SGOS#(config forwarding test_group) load-balance hash domain
ok
SGOS#(config forwarding test_group) exit
SGOS#(config forwarding) exit
SGOS#(config)
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config forwarding host_alias)

**Synopsis**
These commands allow you to edit the settings of a specific forwarding host.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) forwarding
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config forwarding) create host_alias hostname protocol=port
#(config forwarding) edit host_alias
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config forwarding host_alias)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config forwarding host_alias) exit
    Exits #(config forwarding host_alias) mode and returns to #(config forwarding) mode.

#(config forwarding host_alias) ftp [port]
    Changes the FTP port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

#(config forwarding host_alias) host host_name
    Changes the host name.

#(config forwarding host_alias) host-affinity http
    [accelerator-cookie | client-ip-address | default | none]
    Changes the host affinity method (non-SSL) for this host.

#(config forwarding host_alias) host-affinity other
    [client-ip-address | default | none]
    Changes the other host affinity method for this host.

#(config forwarding host_alias) host-affinity ssl
    [accelerator-cookie | client-ip-address | default | ssl-session-id | none]
    Changes the host affinity method (SSL) for this host.

#(config forwarding host_alias) http [port]
    Changes the HTTP port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

#(config forwarding host_alias) https [port]
    Changes the HTTPS port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

#(config forwarding host_alias) load-balance method {default | least-connections | round-robin | none}
    Changes the load balancing method.

#(config forwarding host_alias) mms [port]
    Changes the MMS port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

#(config forwarding host_alias) no {ftp | http | https | mms | rtsp | ssl-verify-server | tcp | telnet}
    Deletes a setting for this host.

#(config forwarding host_alias) proxy
    Makes the host a proxy instead of a server; any HTTPS or TCP ports are deleted.
#(config forwarding host_alias) rtsp [port]
Changes the RTSP port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

#(config forwarding host_alias) server
Makes the host a server instead of a proxy.

#(config forwarding host_alias) ssl-verify-server
Sets SSL to verify server certificates.

Note: This command sets the default for the server.certificate.validate() property.

#(config forwarding host_alias) tcp [port]
Changes the TCP port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

#(config forwarding host_alias) telnet [port]
Changes the Telnet port to the default port or to a port that you specify.

#(config forwarding host_alias) view
Shows the current settings for this forwarding host.

For More Information

▷ SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config) forwarding
SGOS#(config forwarding) edit test_host
SGOS#(config forwarding test_host) server
    ok
SGOS#(config forwarding test_host) exit
SGOS#(config forwarding) exit

front-panel

Synopsis

Use this command to configure the front panel. For instance, the front-panel LCD behavior can be configured using the backlight command.

Syntax

    #(config) front-panel
This changes the prompt to:

    #(config front-panel)

Subcommands

    #(config front-panel) backlight flash
The front-panel LCD is configured to flash, which can, for instance, help you locate a particular appliance in a room full of appliances.

    #(config front-panel) backlight state {off | on | timeout}
The front-panel LCD is configured to be always turned on, always turned off, or to turn off after a specified length of time (use the backlight timeout command to configure the length of time).
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config front-panel) **backlight timeout seconds**
Configures the length of time before the front-panel LCD turns off. You must also set the **backlight state timeout** command to configure timeout mode.

#(config front-panel) **exit**
Exits #(config front-panel) mode and returns to #(config) mode.

#(config front-panel) **no backlight flash**
Stops the front-panel LCD from flashing.

#(config front-panel) **view**
Displays the front panel settings.

**For More Information**
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) front-panel
SGOS#(config front-panel) backlight state timeout
   ok
SGOS#(config front-panel) backlight timeout 60
   ok
SGOS#(config front-panel) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config) ftp

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure FTP parameters.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) ftp login-syntax {raptor | checkpoint}
```

Toggles between Raptor and Checkpoint login syntax. The default is Raptor.

**Note:** Neither proxy authentication for transparent FTP nor proxy chaining are supported with the Checkpoint syntax. When native FTP traffic from an FTP client (such as WSFtp) is being authenticated by the ProxySG using the Raptor syntax, the recommended authentication mode is auto or proxy.

```
#(config) ftp no welcome-banner
```

No text is displayed to an FTP client when a connection occurs.

```
#(config) ftp passive-mode {enable | disable}
```

Enables or disables support for passive mode to clients. This applies to allowing "PASV" method when IPv4 is in use, and applies to allowing "EPSV" method when IPv6 is in use.

```
#(config) ftp welcome-banner banner
```

Customizes the text displayed to an FTP client when a connection occurs.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
- #(config caching ftp) on page 147

**Example**

```
SGOS #(config) ftp login-syntax checkpoint
ok
```

Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) general

Synopsis
Use these commands to set global defaults for user behavior when license or resource limits are exceeded, or to reflect client IP addresses when forwarding requests, or to trust client-provided destination IP addresses.

Syntax

SGOS#(config) general

This changes the prompt to:

SGOS#(config general)

Subcommands

SGOS#(config general) exit
Returns to #(config) prompt.

• SGOS#(config general) reflect-client-ip {disable | enable}
  Configures the client IP reflection.

• Enabling multi-tenant support automatically disables Universal Policy (cloud/on-premises SG hybrid) support.

• Disabling this command will result in multi-tenant policies being cleared between appliance reboots.

SGOS#(config general) resource-overflow-action {bypass | drop}
Configures the resource overflow action by choosing to either bypass or drop new connections when resources are scarce.

SGOS#(config general) trust-destination-ip {enable | disable}
Allows the ProxySG appliance to trust a client-provided destination IP address and not do a DNS lookup.

• Proxy Edition default: disable
• MACH5 Edition default: enable

SGOS#(config general) tunnel-on-protocol-error {enable | disable}
Enable this option to have the appliance tunnel traffic when protocol errors occur. This option applies to the SSL proxy and the HTTP proxy:

• The SSL proxy tunnels the connection when non-SSL traffic arrives at the SSL port (by default, port 443).

• The HTTP proxy tunnels the connection when it receives non-HTTP traffic or a broken HTTP request.

SGOS#(config general) user-overflow-action {bypass | none | queue}
Set overflow behavior when there are more licensed-user connections going through the system than is allowed by the model license. If set to none, the licensed user limit is not enforced.

SGOS#(config general) view
View general mode settings.

For More Information

• SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

SGOS#(config general) trust-destination-ip enable
ok
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config)geolocation

Synopsis
This command allows you to specify download parameters, disable geolocation settings, and view current geolocation settings.

Syntax

#(config) geolocation
This enters geolocation mode and changes the prompt to:
#(config geolocation)

Subcommands

#(config geolocation) download get-now
Download the latest data. The CLI displays the download progress and status. If the database is already up-to-date, the appliance does not download it again.

#(config geolocation) service disable
Disables the geolocation service.

#(config geolocation) service enable
Enables the geolocation service.

#(config geolocation) view
Displays geolocation statistics, such as license information, registration status, the download URL for the geolocation database, results of the last download, and the last successful download. This subcommand produces the same output as the #show geolocation command.

#(config geolocation) view countries
Displays the list of countries defined in the geolocation database (if one has been downloaded). This subcommand produces the same output as #show geolocation countries.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

#(config geolocation)view
License Type: Subscription
Licensed Until: Thu, 01 Jan 2015 00:00:00 UTC
Service: Enabled
Download method: Direct
Last successful download:
  Time: Wed, 10 Apr 2013 17:16:54 UTC
  Downloading from: https://subscription.es.bluecoat.com/geoip/database
Version: 20130402
#(config geolocation)
#(config) health-check

**Synopsis**
Use this command to configure health check settings.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) health-check
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config health-check)
```

**Subcommands**

#(config health-check) `copy source-alias target-alias`
Copy from one health check to another (creating if necessary).

#(config health-check) `create {composite alias_name | http alias_name url | https alias_name url | icmp alias_name hostname | ssl alias_name hostname [port] | tcp alias_name hostname [port]}`
Create a user-defined health check of the type specified. *Hostname* can be an IPv4 or IPv6 host or address.

#(config health-check) `default e-mail {healthy {enable | disable} | report-all-ips {enable | disable} | sick {enable | disable}}`
Configure defaults for e-mail options.

#(config health-check) `default event-log {healthy {disable | information | severe} | report-all-ips {enable | disable} | sick {information | disable | severe}}`
Configure defaults for event-log options. An informational or a severe event-log message is logged depending on the setting chosen.

#(config health-check) `default failure-trigger {none | count}`
Configure defaults for the failure-trigger options.

#(config health-check) `default interval {healthy seconds | sick seconds}`
Configure defaults for interval options.

#(config health-check) `default snmp {healthy {enable | disable} | report-all-ips {enable | disable} | sick {enable | disable}}`
Configure defaults for snmp options.

#(config health-check) `default severity {critical | no-effect | warning}`
Configure default severity for health checks.

#(config health-check) `default threshold {healthy count | response-time milliseconds | sick count}`
Configure defaults for threshold options.

#(config health-check) `delete alias_name`
Delete the specified health check.

#(config health-check) `disable {healthy alias_name | sick alias_name}
Disable the specified health check and have it always report health or sick.

#(config health-check) `edit auth.test_name`
Allows you to configure options for the authentication health check you specify.
#(config health-check auth.test_name) clear-statistics
Clears statistics for this health check.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) e-mail [healthy {default | enable | disable}] [report-all-ips {default | enable | disable}] [sick {default | enable | disable}]
Sends e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) event-log [healthy {default | disable | information | severe}] [report-all-ips {default | enable | disable}] [sick {default | disable | information | severe}]
Logs an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses. An informational or a severe event-log message is logged depending on the setting chosen.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) exit
Exits the health check editing mode.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) failure-trigger {default | none | count}
Configures options for the failure-trigger.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) interval [healthy {default | seconds}] [sick {default | seconds}]
Configures intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) perform-health-check
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) severity {critical | no-effect | default | warning}
Configures default severity for the health check.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) snmp [healthy {default | enable | disable}] [report-all-ips {default | enable | disable}] [sick {default | enable | disable}]
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

#(config health-check auth.host_name) threshold [healthy {default | count}] [response-time {default | none | milliseconds}] [sick {default | count}]
Sets the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) use-defaults
Resets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

#(config health-check auth.test_name) view {configuration | events | statistics}
Displays the health check’s configuration, recent event-log messages or statistics.

#(config health-check) edit composite_health_check
Edit the specified composite health check.

#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) add member_name
Add the specified member to the composite health check group.

#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) combine [all-healthy | any-healthy | some-healthy]
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

Require that all, some, or any members of the group report as healthy to have the composite health check report as healthy.

```text
#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) e-mail
    [healthy [default | enable | disable] | report-all-ips
     [healthy [default | enable | disable] | sick [default | enable | disable]]
```

Send e-mail notification when a health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

```text
#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) event-log
    [healthy [default | disable | information | severe] | report-all-ips
     [healthy [default | enable | disable] | sick [default | enable | disable]]
```

Log an event when a health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

```text
#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) exit
```

Leaves the composite health check editing submode.

```text
#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) perform-health-check
```

Does a health check on the members of the composite immediately and reports the result.

```text
#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) remove
    member_name
```

Remove a member from the composite group.

```text
#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) snmp
    [healthy [default | enable | disable] | report-all-ips
     [healthy [default | enable | disable] | sick [default | enable | disable]]
```

Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

```text
#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) severity
    [critical | default | no-effect | warning]
```

Sets the severity level of the health check, which determines how this health check affects the overall health of the device.

```text
#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) use-defaults
```

Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

```text
#(config health-check user.composite_health_check) view
    [configuration | events | statistics]
```

Views the composite health check’s configuration, event log messages, or statistics.

```text
#(config health-check) edit dns.test_name
```

Allows you to configure options for the DNS health check you specified.

```text
#(config health-check dns.test_name) clear-statistics
```

Clears statistics for this health check.

```text
#(config health-check dns.test_name) e-mail
    [healthy [default | enable | disable] | report-all-ips
     [default | enable | disable] | sick [default | enable | disable]]
```

Sends e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

```text
#(config health-check dns.test_name) event-log
    [healthy [default | disable | information | severe] | report-all-ips
     [default | enable | disable] | sick [default | disable | information | severe]]
```

Logs an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports
are for all IP addresses. An informational or a severe event-log message is logged depending on the setting chosen.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) exit`  
Exits the health check editing mode.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) failure-trigger {default | none | count}`  
Configures options for the failure-trigger.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) interval {healthy {default | seconds} | sick {default | seconds}}`  
Configures intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) hostname {default | hostname}`  
Sets the hostname for the DNS Server health check to the default hostname or to a user-defined hostname.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) perform-health-check`  
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) severity {critical | no-effect | default | warning}`  
Configures default severity for the health check.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) snmp {healthy {default | enable | disable} | report-all-ips {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}`  
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) threshold {healthy {default | count} | response-time {default | none | milliseconds} | sick {default | count}}`  
Sets the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) use-defaults`  
Resets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

`#(config health-check dns.test_name) view {configuration | events | statistics}`  
Displays the health check’s configuration, recent event-log messages or statistics.

`#(config health-check) edit drtr.test_name`  
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

`#(config health-check drtr.test_name) clear-statistics`  
Clears statistics for this health check.

`#(config health-check drtr.test_name) e-mail {healthy {default | enable | disable} | report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}`  
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

`#(config health-check drtr.test_name) event-log {healthy {default | disable | information | severe} | report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}`  
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config health-check drtr.test_name) exit
Leaves the health check editing mode.

#(config health-check drtr.test_name) failure-trigger [default | none | count]
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

#(config health-check drtr.test_name) interval [healthy [default | seconds] | sick [default | seconds])
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

#(config health-check drtr.test_name) perform-health-check
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

#(config health-check drtr.test_name) snmp [healthy [default | enable | disable] | report-all-ips [healthy [default | enable | disable] | sick [default | enable | disable]]
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

#(config health-check drtr.test_name) threshold [healthy [default | count] | response-time [default | none | milliseconds] | sick [default | count])
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

#(config health-check drtr.test_name) use-defaults
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

#(config health-check drtr.test_name) view [configuration | statistics]
Views the health check’s configuration or statistics.

#(config health-check) edit fwd.group_name
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

#(config health-check fwd.group_name) combine [all healthy | any-healthy | some-healthy]
Combines the results when a group test is healthy.

#(config health-check fwd.group_name) e-mail [healthy [default | enable | disable] | report-all-ips [healthy [default | enable | disable] | sick [default | enable | disable]]
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

#(config health-check fwd.group_name) event-log [healthy [default | disable | information | severe] | report-all-ips [healthy [default | enable | disable] | sick [default | enable | disable]]
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

#(config health-check fwd.group_name) exit
Leaves the health check editing mode.

#(config health-check fwd.group_name) perform-health-check
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

#(config health-check fwd.group_name) snmp [healthy [default | enable | disable] | report-all-ips [healthy [default | enable | disable] | sick [default | enable | disable]]
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

Views the health check’s configuration or statistics.

Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

(Used with HTTP or HTTPS health checks.) To test Basic authentication, you can enter the username and password of the target.

Clears statistics for this health check.

Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

Leaves the health check editing mode.

Configure options for the failure-trigger.

Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

(Used with HTTP or HTTPS health checks, when intermediate proxies are between you and the target.) Enter the username and password of the intermediate proxy.

To manage a list of codes that are considered successes, you can add or remove codes, separated by semi-colons. If a success code is received by the health check, the health check considers the HTTP/HTTPS test to be successful.

Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config health-check fwd host_name) threshold {healthy {default | count} | response-time {default | none | milliseconds} | sick {default | count})
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

#(config health-check fwd host_name) type {http URL | https URL | icmp hostname | ssl hostname [port] | tcp hostname [port]}
Set the number of consecutive healthy or sick test results before the health check actually reports as healthy or sick.

#(config health-check fwd host_name) use-defaults
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

#(config health-check fwd host_name) view {configuration | statistics}
Views the health check’s configuration or statistics.

#(config health-check) edit health_check_name
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

#(config health-check user health_check_name) authentication {basic | disable | encrypted-password encrypted-password | password password | username username}
(Used with HTTP or HTTPS health checks.) To test Basic authentication, you can enter the username and password of the target.

#(config health-check user health_check_name) clear-statistics
Clears statistics for this health check.

#(config health-check user health_check_name) e-mail {healthy {default | enable | disable} | report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}]
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

#(config health-check user health_check_name) event-log {healthy {default | disable | information | severe} | report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}]
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

#(config health-check user health_check_name) exit
Leaves the health check editing mode.

#(config health-check user health_check_name) failure-trigger {default | none | count}
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

#(config health-check user health_check_name) interval {healthy {default | seconds} | sick {default | seconds}]
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

#(config health-check user health_check_name) perform-health-check
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

#(config health-check user health_check_name) proxy-authentication {basic | disable | encrypted-password encrypted-password | password password | username username}
(Used with HTTP or HTTPS health checks, when intermediate proxies are between you and the target.) Enter the username and password of the intermediate proxy.
To manage a list of codes that are considered successes, you can add or remove codes, separated by semi-colons. If a success code is received by the health check, the health check considers the HTTP/HTTPS test to be successful.

Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

Set the number of consecutive healthy or sick test results before the health check actually reports as healthy or sick.

Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

Views the health check’s configuration or statistics.

Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

Clears statistics for this health check.

Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

Leaves the health check editing mode.

Configure options for the failure-trigger.

Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config health-check icap.test_name) snmp {healthy {default | enable | disable} | report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

#(config health-check icap.test_name) threshold {healthy {default | count} | response-time {default | none | milliseconds} | sick {default | count}}
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

#(config health-check icap.test_name) use-defaults
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

#(config health-check icap.test_name) view {configuration | statistics}
Views the health check’s configuration or statistics.

#(config health-check) edit socks.test_name
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) clear-statistics
Clears statistics for this health check.

#(config health-check socks.test_name)e-mail {healthy {default | enable | disable} | report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) event-log {healthy {default | disable | information | severe} | report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) exit
Leaves the health check editing mode.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) failure-trigger {default | none | count}
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) interval {healthy {default | seconds} | sick {default | seconds}}
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) perform-health-check
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) snmp {healthy {default | enable | disable} | report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) threshold {healthy {default | count} | response-time {default | none | milliseconds} | sick {default | count}}
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.
#(config health-check socks.test_name) type{http URL | https URL | icmp hostname | ssl hostname[port] | tcp hostname[port]}
Set the number of consecutive healthy or sick test results before the health check actually reports as healthy or sick.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) use-defaults
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.

#(config health-check socks.test_name) view {configuration | statistics}
Views the health check’s configuration or statistics.

#(config health-check) edit ws.test_name
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) clear-statistics
Clears statistics for this health check.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) e-mail [healthy {default | enable | disable}] [report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}]
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) event-log [healthy {default | disable | information | severe}] [report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}]
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) exit
Leaves the health check editing mode.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) failure-trigger {default | none | count}
Configure options for the failure-trigger.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) interval [healthy {default | seconds}] [sick {default | seconds}]
Configure intervals before the health check is re-run. The intervals can be different for health checks that are reporting healthy and health checks that are reporting sick.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) perform-health-check
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) snmp [healthy {default | enable | disable}] [report-all-ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}]
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) test-url {default | url}
Sets the test URL to default.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) threshold [healthy {default | count}] [response-time {default | none | milliseconds} [sick {default | count}]
Set the level when health checks will report healthy or sick.

#(config health-check ws.test_name) use-defaults
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

```shell
#(config health-check ws.test_name) view {configuration | statistics}
Views the health check’s configuration or statistics.
```

```shell
#(config health-check) edit ws.group_name
Allows you to configure options for the health check you specified.
```

```shell
#(config health-check ws.group_name) combine {all healthy | any-healthy | some-healthy}
Combines the results when a group test is healthy.
```

```shell
#(config health-check ws.group_name) e-mail {healthy {default | enable | disable} | report-all ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}
Send e-mail notification when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.
```

```shell
#(config health-check ws.group_name) event-log {healthy {default | disable | information | severe} | report-all ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}
Log an event when the health check reports healthy or sick, whether or not those reports are for all IP addresses.
```

```shell
#(config health-check ws.group_name) exit
Leaves the health check editing mode.
```

```shell
#(config health-check ws.group_name) perform-health-check
Starts the health check immediately and reports the result.
```

```shell
#(config health-check ws.group_name) snmp {healthy {default | enable | disable} | report-all ips {healthy {default | enable | disable} | sick {default | enable | disable}}
Sends a trap when the health check reports healthy, whenever an IP address health check reports healthy, or when a health check reports sick.
```

```shell
#(config health-check ws.group_name) use-defaults
Re-sets the defaults of the health check to use the global defaults instead of any explicitly set values.
```

```shell
#(config health-check ws.group_name) view {configuration | statistics}
Views the health check’s configuration or statistics.
```

```shell
#(config health-check) enable alias_name
Enable the health check of the specified name.
```

```shell
#(config health-check) exit
Leave the health-check configuration mode.
```

```shell
#(config health-check) perform-health-check alias_name
Runs the specified health check.
```

```shell
#(config health-check) view {configuration | quick-statistics | statistics}
Views the configuration or statistics for all health checks. You can also view a summary of the health-check statistics.
```

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

SGOS#(config) health-check
SGOS#(config health-check) create composite composite1
SGOS#(config health-check) edit composite1
SGOS#(config health-check user.composite1) view statistics
Enabled   Health check failed   DOWN
#(config) hide-advanced

See

- # hide-advanced on page 59.
#(config) http

Synopsis

Use this command to configure HTTP settings.

Syntax

#(config) http [no] add-header client-ip
   Adds the client-ip header to forwarded requests.

#(config) http [no] add-header front-end-https
   Adds the front-end-https header to forwarded requests.

#(config) http [no] add-header via
   Adds the via header to forwarded requests.

#(config) http [no] add-header x-forwarded-for
   Adds the x-forwarded-for header to forwarded requests.

#(config) http [no] allow-upstream-407
   (Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Enables or (after it has already been enabled) disables upstream HTTP error code 407 authentication challenges.

#(config) http [no] byte-ranges
   Enables HTTP byte-range support.
   If byte-range support is disabled, then HTTP treats all byte range requests as non-cacheable. This means that HTTP never even checks to see if the object is in the cache, but forwards the request to the origin-server and does not cache the result. So the range request has no affect on the cache. For instance, if the object was in the cache before a range request, it would still be in the cache afterward—the range request does not delete any currently cached objects. Also, the Range header is not modified when forwarded to the origin-server.
   If the requested byte range is type 3 or 4, then the request is treated as if byte-range support is disabled. That is, the request is treated as non-cacheable and has no affect on objects in the cache.

#(config) http [no] cache authenticated-data
   Caches any data that appears to be authenticated.

#(config) http [no] cache expired
   Retains cached objects older than the explicit expiration.

#(config) http [no] cache personal-pages
   Caches objects that appear to be personal pages.

#(config) http [no] clientless-requests
   Limits the number of clientless requests (used for caching and optimization) and prevent overwhelming an OCS.

#(config) http [no] exception-on-network-error
   Using the no option prevents the ProxySG from sending exception pages to clients when upstream connection errors occur.

#(config) http [no] force-ntlm
   Uses NTLM for Microsoft Internet Explorer proxy.

#(config) http ftp-proxy-url root-dir
   URL path is absolute in relation to the root.

#(config) http ftp-proxy-url user-dir
   URL path is relative to the user’s home directory.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) http [no] location-header-rewrite
Auto rewrite location header in reverse proxy.

#(config) http [no] parse meta-tag [cache-control | expires | pragma-no-cache]
Parses HTML objects for the cache-control, expires, and pragma-no-cache meta-tags.

#(config) http [no] persistent client
Enables support for persistent client requests from the browser.

#(config) http [no] persistent server
Enables support for persistent server requests to the Web server.

#(config) http [no] persistent-timeout client num_seconds
Sets persistent connection timeout for the client to num_seconds.

#(config) http [no] persistent-timeout server num_seconds
Sets persistent connection timeout for the server to num_seconds.

#(config) http [no] pipeline client [requests | redirects]
Prefetches either embedded objects in client requests or redirected responses to client requests.

#(config) http [no] pipeline prefetch [requests | redirects]
Prefetches either embedded objects in pipelined objects or redirected responses to pipelined requests.

#(config) http [no] proprietary-headers bluecoat
Enables Blue Coat proprietary HTTP header extensions. By default the proprietary headers are disabled. This is a deprecated method for troubleshooting HTTP responses. Blue Coat recommends that you refer to the access log and use the Advanced URLS for troubleshooting HTTP responses instead.

#(config) http receive-timeout client num_seconds
Sets receive timeout for client to num_seconds.

#(config) http receive-timeout refresh num_seconds
Sets receive timeout for refresh to num_seconds.

#(config) http receive-timeout server num_seconds
Sets receive timeout for server to num_seconds.

#(config) http [no] revalidate-pragma-no-cache
Revalidates "Pragma: no-cache."

#(config) http [no] strict-expiration refresh
Forces compliance with explicit expirations by never refreshing objects before their explicit expiration.

#(config) http [no] strict-expiration serve
Forces compliance with explicit expirations by never serving objects after their explicit expiration.

#(config) http [no] strip-from-header
Removes HTTP information from headers.

#(config) http [no] substitute conditional
Uses an HTTP "get" in place of HTTP 1.1 conditional get.

#(config) http [no] substitute ie-reload
Uses an HTTP "get" for Microsoft Internet Explorer reload requests.

#(config) http [no] substitute if-modified-since
Uses an HTTP "get" instead of "get-if-modified."

#(config) http [no] substitute pragma-no-cache
Uses an HTTP "get" instead of "get pragma: no-cache."
#(config) **http [no] tolerant-request-parsing**
Enables or disables the HTTP tolerant-request-parsing flag.

#(config) **http upload-with-pasv disable**
Disables uploading with Passive FTP.

#(config) **http upload-with-pasv enable**
Enables uploading with Passive FTP.

#(config) **http version {1.0 | 1.1 | preserve}**
Indicates the version of HTTP that should be used by the ProxySG. The preserve option preserves the inbound HTTP version.

#(config) **http [no] www-redirect**
Redirects to www.host.com if host not found.

#(config) **http [no] xp-rewrite-redirect**
Rewrites origin server 302s to 307s for Windows XP IE requests.

**For More Information**
- #(config http-console) on page 232
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

#(config identd) **view**
Displays current identd settings.

**For More Information**
- 

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) identd
SGOS#(config identd) enable
  ok
SGOS#(config identd) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config)icap service_name

**Synopsis**
Use this command to configure the specified ICAP service.

**Syntax**
#(config external-services)edit service_name
This changes the prompt to:
#(config icap service_name)

**Subcommands**
#(config icap service_name)defer-threshold
   Set the threshold at which the appliance defers the oldest ICAP connection that has not yet received
   a full object. The range is 0 percent – 100 percent.
#(config icap service_name)exit
   Finish configuring the ICAP service.
#(config icap service_name)event-log connection-failure
   Log connection failures.
#(config icap service_name)max-conn
   Set the maximum number of connections for the ICAP service.
#(config icap service_name)methods [REQMOD | RESPMOD]
   Support request modification or response modification.
#(config icap service_name)no subcommand
   Negate the specified subcommand.
#(config icap service_name)notify virus-detected
   If the ICAP scan detects a virus, the event is noted in the event log and a notification is emailed to
   the administrator and the event log email list.
#(config icap service_name)persistent-connection
   Enable persistent connection to the ICAP server.
#(config icap service_name)port {number | default}
   Specify the plain ICAP port or use default port 1344.
#(config icap service_name)preview-size bytes
   Set the preview size for the RESPMOD service if one of the following applies to your deployment:
   If you use file scanning policies based on file extensions on the ProxyAV appliance, specify 0 bytes
   so that only response headers are sent to the ICAP server. More object data is sent if the ICAP
   server requests it.
   If you have enabled the Kaspersky Apparent Data Types feature on the ProxyAV appliance, specify
   a non-zero value (512 is recommended). The ICAP server reads the object up to the specified
   byte total. The ICAP server either continues with the transaction (that is, receives the remainder
   of the object for scanning) or opts out of the transaction.
#(config icap service_name)secure-port {number | default}
   Specify the secure ICAP port or use default port 11344. In addition, make sure that you specify an
   SSL device profile for secure ICAP connections.


#(config icap service_name) send {authenticated-groups | authenticated-user | client-address | server-address }
Forward the specified additional information to the ICAP server.

#(config icap service_name) sense-settings
Automatically configure the ICAP service using the ICAP server parameters.

#(config icap service_name) service-type {dlp | threat-protection | other}
(Introduced in 6.5.9.14) Identify the ICAP service type as being DLP, Threat Protection, or Other. 
Use this service if you are migrating appliance policy to the Blue Coat Web Security Service; 
however, policy rules that reference an Other service are not enforceable in the Web Security 
Service.

#(config icap service_name) ssl-device-profile profile_name
Specify the SSL device profile to use for secure ICAP connections. This is required for secure ICAP.

#(config icap service_name) timeout seconds
Specify a value from 1 to 65535. This is the number of seconds that the appliance waits for replies 
from the ICAP server. The default timeout is 70.

#(config icap service_name) url URL
Specify the ICAP server URL, which can be the URL schema, ICAP server hostname, or IP address. 
If you use third-party ICAP, refer to the vendor for the appropriate URL format.

#(config icap service_name) use-vendor-virus-page
If applicable, use the default ICAP vendor's error exception page.

#(config icap service_name) view
Display the service's current configuration.

Example
Associate an existing SSL device profile and use a non-default port for secure ICAP 
connections.

#(config icap ICAP_1) ssl-device-profile ssl_1
  ok
#(config icap ICAP_1) secure-port 90
  ok
#(config) inline

See

- # inline on page 60
#(config) installed-systems

**Synopsis**

Use this command to manage the list of installed ProxySG systems. **Syntax**

```
#(config) installed-systems
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config installed-systems)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config installed-systems) default system_number [ignore-warnings]
```

Sets the default system to the system indicated by `system_number`. The `ignore-warnings` option allows you to set the default system even if you receive a disk layout compatibility warning. Keep in mind that if you use the `ignore-warnings` option to forcing a change to a default system that is incompatible with your disk layout may result in configuration and/or data loss.

```
#(config installed-systems) delete system_number
```

Deletes the system indicated by `system_number`.

```
#(config installed-systems) enforce-signed {enable | disable}
```

Restricts system image download and installation to signed images only. The default, `disable`, allows all images to be downloaded.

```
#(config installed-systems) exit
```

Exits configure installed-systems mode and returns to configure mode.

```
#(config installed-systems) lock system_number
```

Locks the system indicated by `system_number`.

```
#(config installed-systems) no {lock system_number | replace}
```

- `lock system_number`: Unlocks the system indicated by `system_number` if it is currently locked.
- `replace`: Specifies that the system currently tagged for replacement should not be replaced.

```
#(config installed-systems) replace system_number
```

Specifies that the system identified by `system_number` is to be replaced next.

```
#(config installed-systems) view
```

Shows installed ProxySG systems.

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) installed-systems
SGOS#(config installed-systems) default 2
ok
SGOS#(config installed-systems) lock 1
ok
SGOS#(config installed-systems) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) interface

Synopsis
This command enables you to configure the network interfaces (both physical and Virtual LAN).
The built-in Ethernet adapter is configured for the first time using the setup console. If you want to modify the built-in adapter configuration, or if you have multiple adapters, you can configure each one using the command-line interface.

Syntax

#(config) interface fast-ethernet interface_number
where interface_number sets the number of the fast Ethernet connection to interface_number. Valid values for interface_number are 0 through 3, inclusive.

#(config) interface adapter_number:interface_number
This changes the prompt to #(config interface 0:00, for example

#(config) interface adapter_number:interface_number.vlan_id
Allows you to associate VLAN identification numbers with a physical interfaces.
#(config interface aggr_number)

Synopsis

(Introduced in 6.5.9.8) Edit the aggregated link, adding or removing interfaces. The identifier value must be between 0 and 31.

Syntax

#(config) interface aggr:number

This changes the prompt to #(config interface aggr:number)

Subcommands

#(config interface aggr:number) add
Add a physical interface to the aggregate interface

#(config interface aggr:number) clear
Clear aggregate interface settings.

#(config interface aggr:number) disable
Disable the interface

#(config interface aggr:number) enable
Enable the interface

#(config interface aggr:number) label
Configure the interface label

#(config interface aggr:number) remove
Remove a physical interface from the aggregate interface

#(config interface aggr:number) view
Show interface settings.

Notes

- To add a specific physical network interface to the aggregate interface, use the following command:
  #(config interface <aggr:x>) add <adapter:interface>
- To remove an interface from an aggregate interface, use the following command:
  #(config interface <aggr:x>) remove <adapter:interface>
- To remove all physical interfaces from an aggregate interface, and clear all link configuration, use the following command:
  #(config interface <aggr:x>) clear <adapter:interface>
- To view the status of the aggregate interface, the LACP status, and the common link settings, use the following commands:
  #(config interface <aggr:x>) view
- Use the Disable and Enable commands to disable and enable an aggregate interface. Use the member interface edit mode for a specific interface to disable or enable that individual interface within the aggregate group.
For More Information

SGOS Administration Guide

Example

```
#(config)interface aggr:1
#(config interface aggr:1)add 5:2
   ok
#(config interface aggr:1)add 5:1
   ok
#(config interface aggr:0)view
   Ethernet aggregate aggr:1
      Status: enabled
      MTU size: 1500
      LACP state: 2 Up
      Reject inbound: disabled
      Allow intercept: enabled
      VLAN trunk: enabled
      Native VLAN: 1
      Spanning tree: disabled
      IPv6 auto-linklocal: enabled
      Member interfaces:
         Ethernet interface 5:1 (LAN)
            Status: enabled
            LACP state: Up
            Internet address: 192.0.2.0 netmask 255.255.255.0
            Link status: autosensed to full duplex, 1 gigabit/sec
            network
         Ethernet interface 5:2 (WAN)
            Status: enabled
            LACP state: Up
            Internet address: 2001:cdba:0:0:0:3257:9652 prefixlen 64
            Link status: autosensed to full duplex, 1 gigabit/sec
            network
```
#(config interface interface_number)

Syntax

#'(config) interface interface_number

This changes the prompt to #'(config interface interface_number)

Subcommands

#'(config interface interface_number) allow-intercept {enable | disable}

Allows interception on this interface.

#'(config interface interface_number) clear-all-vlans

Resets all VLAN parameters to their default values.

Note:

#'(config interface interface_number) exit

Exits #'(config interface number) mode and returns to #'(config) mode.

#'(config interface interface_number) full-duplex

Configures the interface for full-duplex.

#'(config interface interface_number) half-duplex

Configures the interface for half-duplex.

#'(config interface interface_number) ip-address ip-address

[subnet_mask_for IPv4] [prefix_length_for IPv6]

Sets the IPv4 address and subnet mask or IPv6 address and prefix length for this interface.

#'(config interface interface_number) ipv6 auto-linklocal {enable | disable}

Enables or disables the automatic generation of link-local addresses for this interface. After a link-local address is generated for an interface, it will stay configured until it is manually removed using the no ip-address command or until the ProxySG appliance is rebooted.

#'(config interface interface_number) label label_name

Give the interface a name for easy identification.

#'(config interface interface_number) link-autosense {enable | disable}

Specifies that the interface should autosense speed and duplex.

#'(config interface interface_number) mtu-size size

Specifies the MTU (maximum transmission unit) size.

Jumbo frames are Ethernet frames with more than 1500 bytes of payload. By configuring the mtu size of an interface to 1500 bytes or more you are enabling jumbo frames. You can configure jumbo frames between 1500 and 9000 MTUs. The max mtu size depends on the NIC you are using. If you have attempted to configure the mtu size to one that is not compatible with the NIC you are using, an error message will be displayed.

Notes

• If the appliance receives frames over 1500 bytes, but the mtu size has not been set to enable jumbo frames, packets may be dropped.
• Configure the interfaces on a software bridge with identical MTU settings. Using different MTU interface settings on a bridge can cause unpredictable behavior.

`#(config interface interface_number) native-vlan number`
Sets the native VLAN value for this interface.

`#(config interface interface_number) no {ip-address | label}`
Removes the IP address or label from the interface.

`#(config interface interface_number) reject-inbound {enable | disable}`
Rejects inbound connections on the interface.

`#(config interface interface_number) speed {10 | 100 | 1gb | 10gb}`
Specifies the interface speed.

`#(config interface interface_number) vlan-trunk {enable | disable}`
Enables VLAN trunking on this interface.

`#(config interface interface_number) view`
Displays the interface settings.

*The allow-intercept and reject-inbound commands are interface-level configurations and are not bridge-specific. The reject-inbound command always has precedence.

The following table describes how traffic is handled for the three possible settings of these options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>reject-inbound</th>
<th>allow-intercept</th>
<th>Non-proxy ports (mgmt-console, ssh, etc)</th>
<th>Explicit proxy ports</th>
<th>Transparent proxy ports</th>
<th>Other ports</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Terminated</td>
<td>Terminated</td>
<td>Terminated</td>
<td>Forwarded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Disabled</td>
<td>Terminated</td>
<td>Terminated</td>
<td>Forwarded</td>
<td>Forwarded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>Enabled/Disabled</td>
<td>Silently dropped</td>
<td>Silently dropped</td>
<td>Silently dropped</td>
<td>Silently dropped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```
#(config) interface 0
#(config interface 0) ip-address 10.252.10.54 255.255.255.0
ok
#(config interface 0) exit
SGOS#(config) interface 0:1
#(config interface 0:1) 10.252.10.72
ok
#(config interface 0:1) exit
```
#(config) ip-default-gateway

**Synopsis**
A key feature of the ProxySG appliance is the ability to distribute traffic originating at the cache through multiple IP gateways. Further, you can fine tune how the traffic is distributed among gateways. This feature works with any routing protocol (for example, static routes or RIP).

**Note:** Load balancing through multiple IP gateways is independent from the per-interface load balancing that the ProxySG automatically does when more than one network interface is installed.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) ip-default-gateway ip_address [preference group (1-10)]
[weight (1-100)]
```
Specifies the IPv4 or IPv6 address of the default gateway to be used by the ProxySG appliance.

**For More Information**
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**
```
SGOS#(config) ip-default-gateway 10.25.36.47
ok
```
#(config) ipv6

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure IPv6 global settings.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) ipv6
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) ipv6 auto-linklocal {enable | disable}
Enable or disable automatic generation of link-local addresses on all interfaces. When this parameter is enabled (as it is by default), individual interface configuration values will override this setting. When this setting is disabled, it will be disabled for all interfaces (regardless of the per-interface setting). After link-local addresses are generated for the appliance interfaces, they will stay configured until they are manually removed using the no ip-address command or until the ProxySG is rebooted.

#(config) ipv6 force-bypass {enable | disable}
Enable or disable IPv6 force-bypass. When force-bypass is enabled, all IPv6 traffic will be bridged or routed. This option is disabled by default.

#(config) ipv6 forwarding {enable | disable}
Enable or disable IPv6 forwarding. This is a layer-3 configuration. When IPv6 forwarding is disabled (as it is by default), the appliance will discard bypassed traffic at the IPv6 layer; this setting is appropriate for most situations, since by default, the ProxySG is not configured to function as a router.
```

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide, Using the ProxySG in an IPv6 Environment*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config)ipv6 auto-linklocal disable
ok
```
#(config) isatap

**Synopsis**
Use this command to configure appliance behavior with Intra-Site Automatic Tunnel Addressing Protocol (ISATAP) traffic. When ISATAP is enabled with the `isatap` commands, the ProxySG looks inside the encapsulated 6-in-4 packet to determine the service and then chooses a proxy to use:

- If the service is intercepted, the ISATAP traffic is processed by the appropriate application proxy (HTTP, CIFS, FTP, etc.). Traffic is optimized with all applicable acceleration techniques and sent through an ADN tunnel if an ADN peer is found.
- If the service is not intercepted, the traffic is processed by the ISATAP proxy. Traffic is optimized with byte caching and compression inside an ADN tunnel (assuming an ADN peer is found).

**Syntax**
```
#(config) isatap
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config) isatap allow-intercept {enable | disable}
```
When this command is enabled, 6-in-4 packets of intercepted services are processed by the appropriate application proxy (for example, CIFS, HTTP, or Flash). When `allow-intercept` is disabled, this traffic is processed by the ISATAP proxy. For full ISATAP functionality, enable `allow-intercept` and `adn-tunnel` (see next command).

```
#(config) isatap adn-tunnel {enable | disable}
```
When this command is enabled, the ISATAP proxy processes 6-in-4 traffic for services (such as ICMPv6) that aren’t intercepted. When `adn-tunnel` is disabled, the ISATAP proxy is not used: any traffic that would have been processed by this proxy is bypassed. For full ISATAP functionality, enable `adn-tunnel` and `allow-intercept` (see previous command).

```
#(config) isatap adn-tunnel adn-byte-cache {disable | enable}
```
This command applies to traffic that the ISATAP proxy is processing. It controls whether to optimize this traffic using the byte caching optimization technique when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel. This option is enabled by default.

```
#(config) isatap adn-tunnel adn-compress {disable | enable}
```
This command applies to traffic that the ISATAP proxy is processing. It controls whether to optimize this traffic using GZIP compression when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel. This option is enabled by default.

```
#(config) isatap adn-tunnel byte-cache-priority {low | normal | high}
```
This command applies to traffic that the ISATAP proxy is processing. You can adjust retention priority of byte cache data. If you want to keep streams in the byte cache for as long as possible, set a high retention priority. Or for streams that aren’t likely to get much benefit from byte caching, you can set a low retention priority. ISATAP is set to normal priority by default. Note that unless `adn-byte-cache` is enabled for ISATAP, the priority setting will have no effect; if you try to set a retention priority when byte caching is disabled, a warning message displays to inform you that the `byte-cache-priority` attribute has no effect when `adn-byte-cache` is disabled.

**For More Information**
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide, Using the ProxySG in an IPv6 Environment*
Example
To enable ISATAP:

```
SGOS#(config) isatap allow-intercept enable
ok
SGOS#(config) isatap adn-tunnel enable
```
#(config) license-key

Synopsis

Use this command to configure license key settings.

Syntax

```sh
#(config) license-key auto-update {disable | enable}
Disables or enables auto-update of the Blue Coat license key.

#(config) license-key no path
Negates certain license key settings.

#(config) license-key path url
Specifies the network path to download the license key.
```

For More Information

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

Example

```sh
SGOS#(config) license-key no path
ok
```
#(config) line-vty

## Synopsis

When you have a CLI session, that session remains open as long as there is activity. If you leave the session idle, the connection eventually times out and you must reconnect. The default timeout is five minutes. You can set the timeout and other session-specific options using the `line-vty` command.

## Syntax

```
#(config) line-vty
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config line-vty)
```

## Subcommands

```
#(config line-vty) exit
```

Exits configure line-vty mode and returns to configure mode.

```
#(config line-vty) length num_lines_on_screen
```

Specifies the number of lines of code that should appear on the screen at one time. Specify 0 to scroll without pausing.

```
#(config line-vty) no length
```

Disables screen paging.

```
#(config line-vty) telnet {no transparent | transparent}
```

Indicates that this is a Telnet protocol-specific configuration. If you specify `no transparent`, carriage returns are sent to the console as a carriage return plus linefeed. If you specify `transparent`, carriage returns are sent to the console as a carriage return.

```
#(config line-vty) timeout minutes
```

Sets the line timeout to the number of minutes indicated by `minutes`.

```
#(config line-vty) view
```

Displays running system information.

```
#(config line-vty) width
```

Sets the width of the display terminal.

## Example

```
SGOS#(config) line-vty
SGOS#(config line-vty) timeout 60
ok
SGOS#(config line-vty) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config) load

See

- # load on page 64
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) management-services

Synopsis
The ProxySG provides the following console services:

- HTTP (Not enabled by default)
- HTTPS
- SSH
- Telnet (Not created by default; a Telnet proxy service is created by default on port 23.)

The ProxySG also provides SNMP management services.

Syntax

#(config) management-services
This changes the prompt to:

#(config management-services)

Subcommands

The options below allow you to manage the console service.

#(config management-services) create {http-console service_name | https-console service_name | ssh-console service_name | telnet-console service_name | snmp service_name}
Creates a console or SNMP service with the service name you choose.

#(config management-services) delete service_name
Deletes the specified console name or SNMP service name.

#(config management-services) edit service_name
Changes the prompt, depending on the console or SNMP service you choose:

- #(config http-console) on page 232
- #(config https-console) on page 233
- #(config ssh-console) on page 236
- #(config telnet-console) on page 237
- #(config snmp_service_name) on page 238

#(config management-services) exit
Leaves management-services submode; returns to the config prompt.

#(config management-services) view
Views all console services.

Note: If you create a console name with spaces, the name must be enclosed in quotes; for example, "My Console1".
#(config http-console)

**Synopsis**

This console service intercepts HTTP traffic, usually on port 80. This console service is created but not enabled due to security concerns.

**Syntax**

```bash
#(config management-services) edit http_console
```

This changes the prompt to:

```bash
#(config http_console)
```

**Subcommands**

- **add**
  ```bash
  #(config http_console) add {all | proxy_ip_address} port {enable | disable}
  ```
  Add a listener to the console service. *All* selects all IPv4 and IPv6 addresses on the proxy; alternatively, you can select a specific proxy’s IPv4/IPv6 address. When specifying IPv6 addresses, only global (not linklocal) addresses can be used. You must always choose a port. By default the listener is enabled.

- **disable**
  ```bash
  #(config http_console) disable {all | proxy_ip_address} port
  ```
  Disables the specified listener.

- **enable**
  ```bash
  #(config http_console) enable {all | proxy_ip_address} port
  ```
  Enables the specified listener.

- **exit**
  ```bash
  #(config http_console) exit
  ```
  Exits to the (config management-services) prompt.

- **remove**
  ```bash
  #(config http_console) remove {all | <proxy-ip> <port>}
  ```
  Removes the specified listener(s).

- **view**
  ```bash
  #(config http_console) view
  ```
  Views a summary of the console service’s configuration.

**For More Information**

- `#(config) management-services` on page 231
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```bash
SGOS#(config) management-services
SGOS#(config management-services) create http-console http_console
SGOS#(config management-services) edit http_console
SGOS#(config http_console) add 10.25.36.47 80
SGOS#(config http_console) enable 10.25.36.47 80
```
#(config https-console)

Synopsis
The HTTPS management console permits secure access to the management console, by default on port 8082. You can create additional HTTPS consoles if necessary.

Syntax
```
#(config management-services) edit https_console
```

This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config https_console)
```

Subcommands
```
#(config https_console) add { all | proxy_ip_address} port { enable | disable}
```

Add a listener to the console service. `all` selects all IPv4 and IPv6 addresses on the proxy; alternatively, you can select a specific IPv4/IPv6 address on the appliance. When specifying IPv6 addresses, only global (not link-local) addresses can be used. You must always choose a port. By default the listener is enabled.

```
#(config https_console) attribute cipher-suite [<cipher-suite>]+
```

Associates one or more ciphers with the console service. The default is to use all cipher suites. If you want to change the default, you have two choices:

- interactive mode
- non-interactive mode

Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create cipher suites.

The optional `cipher-suite` refers to the cipher-suites you want to use, space separated, such as `rc4-md5 exp-des-cbc-sha`. If you want to use the interactive mode, do not specify a cipher suite.

You may specify more than one cipher suite.

```
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA
ECDHE-RSA-RC4-SHA
AES128-SHA256
AES256-SHA256
AES128-SHA
AES256-SHA
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA
DES-CBC3-SHA
RC4-SHA
RC4-MD5
DES-CBC-SHA
EXP-DES-CBC-SHA
```
The last six entries in this list are disabled by default, as Blue Coat considers these ciphers as insufficiently secure. You can enable the ciphers if desired.

Table 3–1  Cipher Suites

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cipher Suite Name</th>
<th>Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-RC4-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES128-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES256-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES128-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES-CBC3-SHA</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC4-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC4-MD5</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES-CBC-SHA</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: This table reflects the cipher suites as available on a new SGOS 6.7.0.1 installation. The last four entries in this list are disabled by default, as Blue Coat considers these ciphers as insufficiently secure. You can enable the ciphers if desired. In other installations, such as an upgrade from an earlier SGOS version, you may see a slightly different collection of enabled suites.

#(config https_console) attribute keyring keyring_ID
   Specifies the keyring ID you want to use with this console.

#(config https_console) attribute ssl-versions {sslv2 | sslv3 | tlsv1.1 | tlsv1.2}
   Selects the SSL version or versions to use.

Note: Changing the protocol version/versions in use resets the list of available cipher suites.

#(config https_console) disable {all | proxy_ip_address} port
   Disables the specified listener.

#(config https_console) enable {all | proxy_ip_address} port
   Enables the specified listener.

#(config https_console) exit
   Exits to the (config management-services) prompt.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config https_console) remove {all | <proxy-ip> <port>}
Removes the specified listener(s).

#(config https_console) view
Views a summary of the console service’s configuration.

For More Information
- #(config) management-services on page 231
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

```
SGOS#(config) management-services
SGOS#(config management-services) create https-console https_console
SGOS#(config management-services) edit https_console
SGOS#(config https_console) add 10.25.36.47 443
SGOS#(config https_console) enable 10.25.36.47 443
SGOS#(config https_console) attribute cipher-suite rc4-md5
des-cbc-sha aes128-sha
```

Note: For a discussion of available ciphers, refer to SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide ProxySG Appliance chapter.
#(config ssh-console)

**Synopsis**

The SSH console service allows you to securely connect to the Command Line Interface. By default, SSHv2 is enabled and assigned to port 22. You do not need to create a new host key unless you want to change the existing configuration.

To manage new host keypairs or global settings for all SSH console services, use the #(config) ssh-console command. For more information, see #(config) ssh-console on page 413.

**Syntax**

```
#(config management-services) create ssh-console ssh_console_name
#(config management-services) edit ssh_console_name
```

This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config ssh_console_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config ssh_console_name) add {all | proxy_ip_address} port
   {enable | disable}
```

Add a listener to the console service. *All* selects all IPv4 and IPv6 addresses on the proxy; alternatively, you can select a specific proxy’s IPv4/IPv6 address. When specifying IPv6 addresses, only global (not linklocal) addresses can be used. You must always choose a port. By default the listener is enabled.

```
#(config ssh_console_name) disable {all | proxy_ip_address} port
```

Disables the specified listener.

```
#(config ssh_console_name) enable {all | proxy_ip_address} port
```

Enables the specified listener.

```
#(config ssh_console_name) exit
```

Exits to the (config management-services) prompt.

```
#(config ssh_console) remove {all | <proxy-ip> <port>}
```

Removes the specified listener(s).

```
#(config ssh_console_name) view
```

Views a summary of the console service’s configuration.

**For More Information**

- #(config) management-services on page 231
- #(config) ssh-console on page 413

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) ssh-console
SGOS#(config ssh-console) create host-keypair
SGOS#(config ssh-console) edit ssh_console
SGOS#(config ssh-console) add 10.25.36.47 80
SGOS#(config ssh-console) enable 10.25.36.47 80
```
#(config telnet-console)

**Synopsis**

This console service provides access to the administrative CLI through Telnet. Due to security concerns, use of this console is not recommended.

A shell Telnet proxy service is created on port 23. If you do decide to create a Telnet console, you must first remove the Telnet proxy service and apply the changes. You can later re-add the Telnet proxy service on a different port.

**Syntax**

#(config management-services) edit telnet_console

This changes the prompt to:

#(config telnet_console)

**Subcommands**

#(config telnet_console) add {all | proxy_ip_address} port {enable | disable}

Add a listener to the console service. All selects all IPv4 and IPv6 addresses on the proxy; alternatively, you can select a specific IPv4/IPv6 address on the appliance. When specifying IPv6 addresses, only global (not linklocal) addresses can be used. You must always choose a port. By default the listener is enabled.

#(config telnet_console) disable {all | proxy_ip_address} port

Disables the specified listener.

#(config telnet_console) enable {all | proxy_ip_address} port

Enables the specified listener.

#(config telnet_console) exit

Exits to the (config management-services) prompt.

#(config telnet_console) remove {all | proxy-ip <port>}

Removes the specified listener(s).

#(config telnet_console) view

Views a summary of the console service’s configuration.

**For More Information**

- #(config) management-services on page 231
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

SGOS#(config) management-services
SGOS#(config management-services) create telnet-console telnet_console
SGOS#(config management-services) edit telnet_console
SGOS#(config telnet_console) add 10.25.36.47 80
SGOS#(config telnet_console) add 10.25.36.47 80
#(config snmp_service_name)

## Synopsis
The SNMP management service provides an explicit connection for communicating with the . You can create an SNMP listener for any available port and for all available ProxySG appliance IP addresses or for a specific IPv4 or IPv6 address.

## Syntax
```
#(config management-services) edit snmp_service_name
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config snmp_service_name)
```

### Subcommands
```
#(config snmp_service_name) add [all|<proxy-ip> <port>]
    {enable|disable}
Add an SNMP listener to the management service. All selects all IPv4 and IPv6 addresses on the proxy; alternatively, you can select a specific proxy’s IPv4/IPv6 address. You must always choose a port. By default, the listener is enabled.
```
```
#(config snmp_service_name) disable [all|<proxy-ip> <port>]
Disable a specific SNMP listener.
```
```
#(config snmp_service_name) enable [all|<proxy-ip> <port>]
Enable a specific SNMP listener.
```
```
#(config snmp_service_name) exit
Return to the (config management-services) prompt.
```
```
#(config snmp_service_name) remove [all | <proxy-ip> <port>]
Remove an SNMP listener.
```
```
#(config snmp_service_name) view
Show the SNMP listener configuration.
```

## For More Information
- #(config) management-services on page 231
- #(config) snmp on page 398
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

## Example
```
SGOS#(config) management-services
SGOS#(config management-services) create snmp mysnmp
    ok
SGOS#(config management-services) edit mysnmp
SGOS#(config mysnmp) view
    Service name: my-snmp
    Service: SNMP
    Destination IP Port Range
    <All> 161 Enabled
```
#(config) mapi

**Synopsis**

Configures MAPI.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
SGOS#(config) mapi
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) batching {enable | disable}
```

Enables or disables batching. The default is enabled.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) cas-virtual-ip ip_address
```

Configures the virtual IPv4 address of a Client Access Server (CAS) array so that the ProxySG appliance can create a new listener for this VIP. After this is configured, the MAPI connections to the CAS array virtual host can be intercepted and optimized. This setting must be configured on each Branch peer that will handle MAPI traffic to an Exchange server with a third party load balancer, and must be set before Outlook connects to the Exchange Server. Only one VIP can be configured per ProxySG appliance.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) encrypted-acceleration {enable | disable}
```

Enables or disables acceleration of encrypted MAPI. The default is enabled.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) exchange-domain domain_name_alias
```

Selects the MAPI exchange domain name alias to use. This command is required for accelerating encrypted MAPI.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) exit
```

Exits the MAPI mode and returns to SGOS#(config) mode.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) handoff {enable | disable}
```

Enable or disable MAPI handoff.

(In SGOS 6.5.7.3 ) Also enable or disable MAPI-HTTP handoff.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) keep-alive duration 1-168
```

Sets the length of time, in hours, that the session is active. The default is 72 hours.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) keep-alive {enable | disable}
```

Enables the keep-alive configuration. The default is disabled.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) keep-alive interval 15-60
```

Sets the length of time, in minutes, before the service checks for new e-mail. The default is 30 minutes.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) keep-alive max-sessions 1-200
```

Sets the maximum number of active sessions at any given point. The default is 100 sessions. If the limit is reached, the oldest session is dropped.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) no exchange-domain | cas-virtual-ip
```

Clears the settings for Exchange domain alias or CAS virtual IP address.

```plaintext
SGOS#(config mapi) view
```

Views the MAPI configuration.

**For More Information**

- `(config endpoint_mapper_service)` on page 277
Example

SGOS#(config mapi) view
Batching: enabled
Keep-Alive: disabled
Keep-Alive Duration (hours): 72
Keep-Alive Interval (minutes): 30
Keep-Alive Maximum Sessions: 100
Endpoint Mapper Handoff: enabled
#(config) netbios

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure NetBIOS.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) netbios
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config netbios)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config netbios) exit
```

Exits configure netbios mode and returns to configure mode.

```
#(config netbios) nbstat {requester | retries | timeout} | responder
{enable | disable}
```

Requester is enabled by default and cannot be disabled, with three retries and a five second timeout. Responder is disabled by default. Note that the requestor is used only if you write policy that uses it. If no features that trigger a request are used, no traffic is sent.

```
#(config netbios) view
```

Shows the NetBIOS settings.

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) netbios
SGOS#(config netbios) nbstat responder enable
ok
SGOS#(config netbios) exit
SGOS#(config)
ok
```
#(config) netflow

## Synopsis

NetFlow is a network protocol developed by Cisco Systems to monitor and export IP traffic information. Use the `#(config) netflow` command to configure NetFlow. After you configure NetFlow on the appliance, direct the flow data to the collectors that you have already set up.

If you enable NetFlow on the ProxySG appliance (it is disabled by default), it observes network flows on all interfaces and keeps track of flow statistics, such as source and destination IP addresses, the size of the flow (in terms of packets and bytes), and when the flow was sent. After the appliance gathers the flow statistics, it exports them in NetFlow records to a remote system called a collector, such as Blue Coat IntelligenceCenter.

**Important:** Because NetFlow runs on UDP, the ProxySG appliance cannot verify collector configuration. You should make sure that collector IP address and port are correct before setting up NetFlow in the CLI.

Currently, SGOS supports NetFlow v5, which is restricted to collecting flow statistics for IPv4 packets only.

## Terminology

Blue Coat documentation uses the following terms to describe the NetFlow feature in SGOS.

- **Network flow**—A sequence of packets from a source application to a destination application. A network flow has attributes such as IP address, port, protocol, and inbound/outbound interfaces.

  A flow is exported to the collectors when:

  - it is reported as being finished (for example, traffic for an existing flow stops)
  - it has been inactive for a period of time exceeding the inactive-timeout value (for example, the connection is stale)
  - it has been active for a period of time exceeding the active-timeout value (for example, it is a long-running flow)
  - it exceeds the record byte count limit of 2^32 bytes

- **Flow records**—Contain information about a flow, such as source and destination IP addresses, the amount of data transferred (in terms of packets and bytes), and the flow start and end times.

- **Inbound/outbound interfaces**—Flow records sent to the ProxySG appliance are exported on inbound interfaces. Flow records originating from the ProxySG appliance are exported on outbound interfaces.

- **NetFlow packets**—NetFlow-formatted packets, which contain copies of expired flows. These packets are sent to a collector once they reach the maximum of 30 records, or two minutes after the first flow record is collected.

## Syntax

```
#(config) netflow
```

This enters NetFlow mode and changes the prompt to:

```
#(config netflow)
```
Subcommands

```#(config netflow) active-timeout timeout-seconds```
Specifies the age of an active flow, after which it is reported. When an active flow exceeds the maximum time, the flow is reported containing the flow statistics up to that point. The default is 1800 seconds.

**Note:** The `active-timeout` value must be greater than the `inactive-timeout` value.

```#(config netflow) collectors```
Configures NetFlow collector(s). See `#(config netflow) collectors` on page 244.

```#(config netflow) disable```
Sends the remaining flow data to the collectors and disables the capture of any more Netflow information. This is the default setting.

```#(config netflow) enable```
Enables the appliance to begin monitoring if one or more collectors have been configured. See `#(config netflow) collectors` on page 244. If no collectors are defined when you enter this command, the CLI warns you to configure at least one collector.

```#(config netflow) exit```
Exits NetFlow mode.

```#(config netflow) inactive-timeout timeout-seconds```
Specifies the maximum amount of time a flow is considered active without seeing network traffic. When the maximum is exceeded, the appliance determines that the flow is inactive and exports a flow record. The default is 15 seconds.

**Note:** The `inactive-timeout` value must be less than the `active-timeout` value.

```#(config netflow) interfaces```
Configures NetFlow interfaces. See `#(config netflow) interfaces` on page 246.

```#(config netflow) view```
Displays NetFlow configuration settings and statistics:
- NetFlow state
- Number of active flows
- Collector information
- Active timeout value
- Inactive timeout value

The `#show netflow` command also displays these settings and statistics.

**Example**

Enable the NetFlow feature and exit the netflow subnode.

```#(config) netflow```
```#(config netflow) enable```
```
ok```
```#(config netflow) exit```
```
ok```
(#(config netflow) collectors)

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure NetFlow collectors. A NetFlow collector is a software application, such as ManageEngine® NetFlow Analyzer, that accumulates the data from the ProxySG appliance, which acts as the flow record exporter.

You define a collector uniquely by both address and port. This allows you to configure multiple collectors on different ports for the same machine.

You can configure up to four collectors to collect the flow records from the ProxySG appliance. Note that collectors on the same machine are counted separately.

**Important:** The appliance exports NetFlow records over UDP, which does not guarantee that the data will be sent to a destination; thus, the appliance cannot verify if collector configuration is correct. Blue Coat recommends that you ensure collectors are configured correctly before setting up NetFlow. Then, when you add a collector in the CLI, be sure to enter the correct IP address and port.

In addition, because UDP does not attempt to re-send lost data, configuring more than one collector can help establish some redundancy in your NetFlow setup. For example, consider a NetFlow setup with two collectors. The NetFlow data streams sent to both collectors may lose different packets and different amounts of data, but you can inspect both sets of partial data to gain a more complete picture of those specific flows.

**Syntax**

```
#(config)
 netflow

#(config netflow)
 collectors
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config netflow collectors)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config netflow collectors) add IP-address port
```

Adds a collector on either an IPv4 or IPv6 address. Specify the collector's IP address and the port on which it is listening. You can add multiple collectors on different ports on the same machine. If NetFlow is disabled, adding collectors does not enable NetFlow. To enable NetFlow, use the `#(config netflow) enable` command.

---

**Note:** If you specify IPv4 addresses to configure collectors, you must use unique IP addresses and ports. If you use different strings to specify the same logical IP address (for example, canonical and abbreviated forms for the same address), the ProxySG appliance detects the duplicate IP address.

```
#(config netflow collectors) clear
```

Clears the list of all configured collectors.

```
#(config netflow collectors) exit
```

Exits collector mode.

```
#(config netflow collectors) remove IP-address port
```

Removes a collector from the list. Specify the collector’s IPv4 or IPv6 IP address and the port on which it is listening. If NetFlow is enabled and you remove all collectors, a warning message appears and NetFlow collection will be suspended, although the feature remains enabled.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config netflow collectors) **view**
Displays the list of configured collectors.

**Example**

Enter NetFlow collector mode, add a collector, and exit NetFlow collector mode.

```
#(config) netflow
#(config netflow) collectors
#(config netflow collectors)
#(config netflow collectors) add 192.0.2.0 9800
  ok
#(config netflow collectors) exit
```
## #(config netflow) interfaces

### Synopsis
Use this command to configure NetFlow interfaces.

### Syntax
Enter NetFlow interfaces mode.

```
#(config) netflow
#(config netflow) interfaces
#(config netflow interfaces)
```

### Subcommands
- **#(config netflow interfaces) add all**
  Adds all interfaces for NetFlow processing.
- **#(config netflow interfaces) add <adaptor>:<interface> [in|out|inout]**
  Adds an interface used for processing NetFlow input (in), output (out), or both (inout). If no parameter is specified, the default is used (inout).

  **Note:** By default, all interfaces are included for NetFlow processing. You need only add interfaces that you removed previously.

- **#(config netflow interfaces) remove all**
  Removes all interfaces for NetFlow processing.
- **#(config netflow interfaces) remove <adaptor>:<interface> [in|out|inout]**
  Removes the interface used for processing NetFlow input (in), output (out), or both (inout). If no parameter is specified, the default is used (inout).

  If you remove all interfaces from NetFlow processing, and NetFlow is enabled, the CLI warns you that no interfaces are available for processing and that collection will be disabled.

### Example
Add an interface, which was removed previously, for processing NetFlow input and output.

```
#(config netflow interfaces) add 1:0 inout
ok
```

---

246
#(config) no

**Synopsis**

Use this command to negate the current settings for the archive configuration, content priority, IP default gateway, SOCKS machine, or system upgrade path.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) no archive-configuration
Cleans the archive configuration upload site.

#(config) no bridge bridge_name
Cleans the bridge configuration.

#(config) no content {priority {regex regex | url url} |
outstanding-requests {delete regex | priority regex | revalidate regex})
priority {regex regex | url url}: Removes a deletion regular expression policy or a deletion URL policy.
outstanding-requests {delete | priority | revalidate} regex:
Deletes a specific, regular expression command in-progress (revalidation, priority, or deletion).

#(config) no ip-default-gateway ip_address
Sets the default gateway IP address to zero.

#(config) no socks-machine-id
Removes the SOCKS machine ID from the configuration.

#(config) no ui-update-path
Cleans the UI update path.

#(config) no upgrade-path
Cleans the upgrade image download path.
```

**For More information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) no archive-configuration
ok
SGOS#(config) no content priority regex http://.*cnn.com
ok
SGOS#(config) no content priority url http://www.bluecoat.com
ok
SGOS#(config) no ip-default-gateway 10.252.10.50
ok
SGOS#(config) no socks-machine-id
ok
SGOS#(config) no upgrade-path
ok
```
#(config) ntp

**Synopsis**
Use this command to set NTP parameters. Network Time Protocol (NTP) is a protocol that is used to synchronize computer clock times in a network of computers. The ProxySG sets the UTC time by connecting to an NTP server. The ProxySG appliance includes a list of NTP servers available on the Internet. If an NTP server is not available, you can set the time manually using the Management Console.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) ntp clear
Removes all entries from the NTP server list.

#(config) ntp {enable | disable}
Enables or disables NTP.

#(config) ntp interval minutes
Specifies how often to perform NTP server queries.

#(config) ntp no server domain_name
Removes the NTP server named domain_name from the NTP server list.

#(config) ntp server domain_name
Adds a server to the NTP server list. Enter either a domain name of an NTP server that resolves to an IPv4 or IPv6 address, or an IPv4 or IPv6 address of an NTP server.
```

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```plaintext
SGOS#(config) ntp server clock.tricity.wsu.edu
ok
```
#(config)policy

**Synopsis**

Use this command to specify central and local policy file location, status, and other options.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) policy central-path url
   Specifies the network path (indicated by url) from which to download the central policy file.

#(config) policy forward-path url
   Specifies the network path (indicated by url) from which to download the forward policy file.

#(config) policy hmac encrypted-key encrypted-key
   Sets the encrypted key used by the :hmac policy substitution function to perform digital signatures.
   **Note:** If you administer multiple ProxySG appliances using Director, use this command to synchronize the HMAC secret key across all appliances and to restore the key when an appliance is remanufactured.

#(config) policy hmac generate-key
   Generates a new random key to use for :hmac policy substitution function to perform digital signatures.

#(config) policy landlord-path url
   Specifies the network path (indicated by url) from which to download the landlord policy file.

#(config) policy local-path url
   Specifies the network path (indicated by url) from which to download the local policy file.

#(config) policy no central-path
   Specifies that the current central policy file URL setting should be cleared.

#(config) policy no forward-path
   Specifies that the current forward policy file URL setting should be cleared.

#(config) policy no landlord-path url
   Clears the current landlord policy file URL.

#(config) policy no local-path
   Specifies that the current local policy file URL setting should be cleared.

#(config) policy no notify
   Specifies that no e-mail notification should be sent if the central policy file should change.

#(config) policy no subscribe
   Specifies that the current policy should not be automatically updated in the event of a central policy change.

#(config) policy no tenant-path url
   Clears the current default tenant policy file URL.

#(config) policy no vpm-cpl-path
   Clears the network path to download VPM CPL policy.

#(config) policy no vpm-xml-path
   Clears the network path to download VPM XML policy.

#(config) policy notify
   Specifies that an e-mail notification should be sent if the central policy file should change.

#(config) policy order order of v)pm, l)ocal, c)entral, f)orward
   Specifies the policy evaluation order.
```
#(config) **policy poll-interval** minutes
Specifies the number of minutes that should pass between tests for central policy file changes.

#(config) **policy poll-now**
Tests for central policy file changes immediately.

#(config) **policy proxy-default** {allow | deny}
allow: The default proxy policy is allow.
deny: The default proxy policy is deny.

#(config) **policy reset**
Clears all policies.

#(config) **policy restrict-dns** {all | none}
(Introduced in version 6.5.9.10) where:
- all restricts DNS lookups.
- none (default) allows DNS lookups.

**Note:** To protect against misuse of DNS lookups from malicious third parties, Symantec recommends that you restrict all DNS lookups.

- 6.5.9.10

**Note:** By default, all RDNS lookups are restricted. The restriction protects against the misuse of RDNS lookups from malicious third parties.

#(config) **policy subscribe**
Indicates that the current policy should be automatically updated in the event of a central policy change.

#(config) **policy tenant-path** url
Specifies the network path (indicated by url) from which to download the default tenant policy file.

#(config) **policy vpm-cpl-path** url
Specifies the network path (indicated by url) from which to download the vpm-cpl policy file.

#(config) **policy vpm-xml-path** url
Specifies the network path (indicated by url) from which to download the vpm-xml policy file.

**For More Information**

- Visual Policy Manager Reference

**Example**

SGOS#(config) **policy local-path** http://www.server1.com/local.txt
ox
SGOS#(config) **policy central-path** http://www.server2.com/central.txt
ox
SGOS#(config) **policy poll-interval** 10
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) private-network

Synopsis
Allows you to configure information on the private network(s) in your environment.

SGOS#(config) private-network
This changes the prompt to:
SGOS#(config private-network) [subcommands]

Subcommands

SGOS#(config private-network) add [subnet <subnet_prefix> [/<prefix_length>] | domain domain_name]
Allows you to add specific private network subnets or domains.

SGOS#(config private-network) clear-all {subnets|domains}
Clears or removes all private network subnets and domains.

SGOS#(config private-network) exit
Exits the private network configuration and brings you back to the configuration prompt.

SGOS#(config private-network) remove [subnet <subnet_prefix> [/<prefix_length>] | domain domain_name]
Allows you remove specific private network subnets or domains.

SGOS#(config private-network) restore-non-routable-subnets
Restores the default non-routable subnets to the private network configuration.

SGOS#(config private-network) view
View configured private networks and domains.

For More Information
❐ SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config private-network) add 1.2.3.4
SGOS#(config private-network) add 1.2.0.0/16
SGOS#(config private-network) remove domain bluecoat.com
#(config) profile

**Synopsis**
Sets your system profile to normal (the default setting) or portal (to accelerate the server).

**Syntax**
```plaintext
#(config) profile bwgain
Sets your system profile to bandwidth gain.
#(config) profile normal
Sets your system profile to normal.
#(config) profile portal
Sets your system profile to portal.
```

**For More Information**
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**
```plaintext
SGOS#(config) profile normal
ok
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) proxy-client

Synopsis
Use this command to configure the Client Manager and client configuration options for the ProxyClient. Replaces the earlier #(config) sg-client command.

Syntax

#(config) sg-client

or

#(config) proxy-client

This changes the prompt to:

#(config proxy-client)

Subcommands

#(config proxy-client) acceleration
Changes the prompt to #(config proxy-client acceleration) on page 256

#(config proxy-client) clear {inactive | all}
Clears (that is, sets to zero) the count of inactive ProxyClients or all ProxyClients.

Clients are automatically cleared after 30 days of inactivity.

After a software upgrade, clients appear twice for 30 days—one entry for the earlier version of client software and one entry and one entry for the newer version of client software. You can optionally clear the inactive clients to avoid seeing duplicate information.

For a client to be reported as inactive, 10 minutes or more must elapse between heartbeat packets it sends to the Client Manager.

#(config proxy-client) enable
Enable this appliance as the Client Manager. You can have only one Client Manager in your ADN network.

#(config proxy-client) disable
Do not use this appliance as the Client Manager.

#(config proxy-client) client-manager host {from-client-address | <ip-address | host>}
Identify this appliance as the Client Manager in one of the following ways:

- from-client-address: *(Recommended)* Use this command if you want clients to download the ProxyClient software, configuration, and updates from the host from which the clients originally obtained the software.

- ip-address or host: Use this command only if you want to change the host from which clients download the ProxyClient software, configuration, and updates. Enter a fully-qualified host name or IP address only; do not preface the with http:// or https:// or downloads will fail.

In other words, this option enables you to change the host from which currently-installed clients obtain future software and configuration updates. Use caution when selecting this option because if clients are unable to connect to the host you enter in the adjacent field, new installations from the Client Manager and updates to existing installations will fail.
Note: Blue Coat recommends you enter the fully-qualified host name. If you enter either an unqualified host name or IP address and change it later, connections to all currently-connected clients are dropped.

#(config proxy-client) client-manager install-port port
Port on which the host you entered in the preceding option listens for requests from clients. The default is 8084.

#(config proxy-client) client-manager keyring keyring
Name of the keyring the Client Manager will use when clients connect to it.

#(config proxy-client) exit
Exits the proxy client configuration prompt and brings you back to the configuration prompt.

#(config proxy-client) locations
Changes the prompt to #(config proxy-client locations) on page 261

#(config proxy-client) software-upgrade-path url
Sets the URL used to upload updated ProxyClient software to the Client Manager so it can make the latest ProxyClient software available to update or to install on client machines.

Important: After you update the Client Manager, whenever users connect using the ProxyClient, they will be required to update the ProxyClient software.

Upload the ProxyClient software from a URL in the following format:
https://host:port/path/ProxyClient.car

For example,
https://myapache.example.com:8088/images/ProxyClient.car

After you set the path from which to load the updates, see # load on page 64.

#(config proxy-client) [no] uninstall-password [password]
Enter a plain text password that is required if users want to uninstall the ProxyClient software.

Do any of the following to remove any previous uninstall password:
• Enter uninstall-password without an argument.
• Enter no uninstall-password.

#(config proxy-client) hashed-uninstall-password [hashed-password]
Enter the uninstall password hashed by the Blowfish algorithm. You can use the hashed password in scripts when you do not want to expose the password in plain text. The only way to know the Blowfish-hashed password is to view it using the show-config command.

The hashed password displays as follows:

proxy-client ;mode
hashed-uninstall-password
"$2a$05$XyjVSFGvrPkTmUi6zKdmyauSArzwka62evn7c13k6qUenR.KOEz4IC"

#(config proxy-client) update-interval minutes
Frequency clients check with the Client Manager for updated ProxyClient software. Valid values are 10-432000 (that is, 300 days). Default is 120.

#(config proxy-client) view
View current Client Manager settings.

#(config proxy-client) web-filtering
Changes the prompt to #(config proxy-client web-filtering) on page 264
For More Information

- ProxyClient Administration and Deployment Guide

Example

SGOS#(config) **client-manager host** enable
SGOS#(config) **client-manager host** from-client-address
SGOS#(config) **software-upgrade-path**
        https://myapache.example.com:8088/images/ProxyClient.car
%(config proxy-client acceleration)

Synopsis
Configure acceleration settings for ProxyClients.

Syntax
%(config) sg-client
or
%(config) proxy-client
This changes the prompt to:
%(config proxy-client)
Enter
%(config proxy-client) acceleration
This changes the prompt to:
%(config proxy-client acceleration)

Subcommands
%(config proxy-client acceleration) adn
Change to acceleration adn mode. For more information, see %(config proxy-client acceleration adn) on page 257.

%(config proxy-client acceleration) cifs
Change to acceleration cifs mode. For more information, see %(config proxy-client acceleration cifs) on page 259.

%(config proxy-client acceleration) disable
Disables all acceleration for ProxyClients; that is, gzip compression, CIFS protocol optimization, and byte caching.

%(config proxy-client acceleration) enable
Enables acceleration for ProxyClients; that is, gzip compression, CIFS protocol optimization, and byte caching.

%(config proxy-client acceleration) exit
Exits acceleration submode and returns to proxy-client mode.

%(config proxy-client acceleration) max-cache-disk-percent percentage
Maximum percentage of client disk space to use for caching objects, such as CIFS objects. Valid values are 10—90; default is 10.

%(config proxy-client acceleration) view
Displays current ProxyClient acceleration settings.

For More Information
* ProxyClient Administration and Deployment Guide

Example
SGOS%(config proxy-client acceleration) max-cache-disk-percent 15
SGOS%(config proxy-client acceleration) enable
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn)

Synopsis
Configure ADN manager and ADN rules settings for ProxyClients.

Syntax

#(config) sg-client
or
#(config) proxy-client

This changes the prompt to:
#(config proxy-client)
#(config proxy-client) adn

This changes the prompt to:
#(config proxy-client acceleration adn)

Subcommands

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) primary-manager ip-address
The IP address of the primary ADN manager. The ADN manager keeps track of and advertises
the routes of the appliances it knows about. You must specify a primary manager.

The ProxyClient obtains the routing table from the ADN manager.

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) backup-manager ip-address
The IP address of the backup ADN manager. Configuring a backup ADN manager is optional
but recommended.

If the ADN manager becomes unavailable for any reason, the backup ADN manager
takes over the task of advertising routes to all ADN nodes, such as the ProxyClient.

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) manager-port port
ADN manager and backup manager plain listen port. (To use the ProxyClient in your ADN
network, the ADN manager’s listening mode must be configured for plain-only,
secure-only, or both. For more information, see #(config) adn on page 111.

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) port-list {exclude-ports | include-ports}
Determines whether you will use the include ports list or exclude ports list.

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) {exclude-ports port list, port-range | include-ports port list, port-range}
Determines which TCP ports to exclude or include in ADN tunnels. Assuming clients using the
ProxyClient software can connect to an ADN peer that can optimize traffic to the destination IP
address, this setting determines ports the clients can use (or not use).

For example, you can exclude ports or port ranges because traffic coming from those
ports has already been encrypted.

For example, the following command excludes traffic from ports 22 and 443 from
being routed through ADN:

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) exclude-ports 22,443

Valid values: Comma-separated list of ports and port ranges (no spaces, separated by
a dash character: <port>,<port>,<port>-<port>).
#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) exclude-subnets
Configure the subnets excluded from ADN acceleration.

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn exclude-subnets) {add | remove} subnet_prefix[/prefix length]
Adds or removes subnets from the excluded subnets list, which is the list of subnets not included in ADN tunnels. Use a comma-separated list of IP addresses and subnets in CIDR notation.

For example, the following command excludes traffic from IP address 192.168.0.1—192.168.0.254 from being routed through an ADN tunnel:

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn exclude-subnets) add 192.168.0.1/24

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn exclude-subnets) clear
Removes all subnets from the current excluded subnet list. In other words, traffic from all IP addresses and subnets will be routed through the ADN tunnel.

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn exclude-subnets) exit
Exits the exclude-subnets submode.

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn exclude-subnets) view
View the list of excluded subnets.

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) no {primary-manager | backup-manager}
Clears the backup or primary ADN manager IP address

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) exit
Exit the adn submode.

For More Information
❐ ProxyClient Administration and Deployment Guide

Example

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) exclude-ports
22,88,443,993,995,1352,1494,1677,3389,5900

#(config proxy-client acceleration adn) primary-manager
192.162.0.10
#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs)

**Synopsis**
Configure CIFS settings for ProxyClients.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) sg-client
or
#(config) proxy-client
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config proxy-client)
```

```
#(config proxy-client)
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs) directory-cache-time seconds
```
Number of seconds for directory listings to remain in the cache. Default is 30.

```
#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs) {disable | enable}
```
Disable or enable CIFS acceleration. CIFS acceleration is enabled by default.

```
#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs) exit
```
Exit the `proxy-client cifs` command.

```
#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs)
```
```
remote-storage-optimization {disable | enable}
```

Enter `enable` to cause Windows Explorer to minimize data transfer when users browse to remote accelerated file shares. The amount of performance improvement from enabling ProxyClient remote storage optimization depends on how many files are in the remote folder and how many subfolders are nested under the folder.

**Note:**

- This feature is not related to Windows offline folders.
- It takes time for a configuration change to take effect. For example, if a client has two tunnels open to an accelerated file share at the time the client receives a configuration update from the Client Manager, it might take several minutes before a change from `enable` to `disable` takes effect for these open connections.

On the other hand, the first connection opened to an accelerated file share after a configuration change is received by the client will use the current configuration setting.

```
#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs)
```
```
suppress-folder-customization {disable | enable}
```

Enter `enable` to prevent Windows Explorer from displaying folder customizations when users browse to a remote accelerated file share. (An example of folder customization is changing the folder’s icon.)
Note:

It takes time for a configuration change to take effect. For example, if a client has two tunnels open to an accelerated file share at the time the client receives a configuration update from the Client Manager, it might take several minutes before a change from `enable` to `disable` takes effect for these open connections.

On the other hand, the first connection opened to an accelerated file share after a configuration change is received by the client will use the current configuration setting.

```bash
#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs) write-back {full | none}
```

Determine whether or not users can continue sending data to the appliance while the appliance is writing data on the back end.

- **full** enables write-back, which in turn makes the appliance appear to the user as a file server; in other words, the appliance constantly sends approval to the client and allows the client to send data while the back end takes advantage of the compressed TCP connection.

- **none** disables write-back. Disabling write-back can introduce substantial latency as clients send data to the appliance and wait for acknowledgement before sending more data.

One reason to set this option to none is the risk of data loss if the link from the branch to the core server fails. There is no way to recover queued data if such a link failure occurs.

```bash
#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs) view
```

View client CIFS settings.

**For More Information**

- *ProxyClient Administration and Deployment Guide*

**Example**

```bash
SGOS#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs) enable
SGOS#(config proxy-client acceleration cifs) write-back full
```
#(config proxy-client locations)

**Synopsis**
Configure ProxyClient location settings.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) sg-client
```

or

```
#(config) proxy-client
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config proxy-client)
```

```
#(config proxy-client locations)
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config proxy-client locations)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config proxy-client locations) acceleration {enable | disable}
```

Enable or disable acceleration as a default action; that is, if a client does not match any defined locations.

```
#(config proxy-client locations) webfilter {enable | disable}
```

Enable or disable Web filtering as a default action; that is, if a client does not match any defined locations.

```
#(config proxy-client locations) clear
```

Remove all defined locations.

```
#(config proxy-client locations) exit
```

Exit locations submode and return to proxy-client mode.

```
#(config proxy-client locations) create name
```

Create location name.

```
#(config proxy-client locations) delete name
```

Delete location name.

```
#(config proxy-client locations) view
```

View proxy client location settings.

```
#(config proxy-client locations) edit name
```

Edit location name. Changes to the #(config proxy-client name) mode.

```
#(config proxy-client name) exit
```

Exit edit submode and return to proxy-client mode.

```
#(config proxy-client name) dns
```

Define DNS server IP addresses as a condition for this location.

```
#(config proxy-client name dns) add ip-address
```

Add a DNS server IP address as a location condition. DNS servers are logically ANDed together so a user must match all DNS servers defined to match this condition.

```
#(config proxy-client name dns) clear
```

Clear all DNS server IP addresses.
#(config proxy-client name dns)exit
Exit the dns submode and return to the proxy-client name mode.

#(config proxy-client name dns)remove ip-address
Remove a DNS server IP address from the location condition.

#(config proxy-client name dns)view
View the list of DNS servers in this location.

#(config proxy-client name)source
Define source IP addresses as a condition for this location.

#(config proxy-client name source)add ip-address-range
Add a source IP address range as a location condition. Source IP address ranges servers are logically ORd together so a user must log in from any source IP address in any range defined to match this condition.
Source IP address range example: 10.0.0.0-10.255.255.255

#(config proxy-client name source)clear
Clear all IP source address ranges.

#(config proxy-client name source)exit
Exit the source submode and return to the proxy-client name mode.

#(config proxy-client name source)remove ip-address-range
Remove a source IP address range from the location condition.
Source IP address range example: 10.0.0.0-10.255.255.255

#(config proxy-client name source)view
View the list of IP source address ranges in this location.

#(config proxy-client name)vnic
Define virtual NIC IP addresses as a condition for this location. Virtual NIC IP address ranges should be used for clients that log in using VPN software that creates a virtual network adapter (also referred to as a virtual NIC) that is assigned its own IP address.

#(config proxy-client name vnic)add vnic-address-range
Add a VNIC IP address range as a location condition. VNIC IP address ranges servers are logically ORd together so a user must log in from any VNIC IP address in any range defined to match this condition.
VNIC IP address range example: 10.0.0.0-10.255.255.255

#(config proxy-client name vnic)clear
Clear all VNIC IP address ranges.

#(config proxy-client name vnic)exit
Exit the vnic submode and return to the proxy-client name mode.

#(config proxy-client name vnic)remove vnic-address-range
Remove a VNIC IP address range from the location condition.
VNIC IP address range example: 10.0.0.0-10.255.255.255

#(config proxy-client name vnic)view
View the list of VNIC IP address ranges in this location.

#(config proxy-client name)match-dns {enable | disable}
Enable or disable the use of DNS server IP address as a location condition.

```
#(config proxy-client name) match-source {enable | disable}
```

Enable or disable the use of source IP address ranges as a location condition.

```
#(config proxy-client name) match-vnic {enable | disable}
```

Enable or disable the use of VNIC IP address ranges as a location condition.

```
#(config proxy-client name) acceleration {enable | disable}
```

Enable or disable acceleration for this location. This setting enables or disables all forms of acceleration (that is, gzip, CIFS protocol optimization, and byte caching).

```
#(config proxy-client name) webfilter {enable | disable}
```

Enable or disable Web filtering for this location.

```
#(config proxy-client locations) {promote location-name | demote location-name}
```

Moves the specified location-name up or down in the location rulebase. When a ProxyClient connects to the Client Manager, the first match is applied. You should order locations in the rulebase from most specific to least specific. For example, put a location with a source address range from 10.3.0.0 to 10.3.255.255 before a location with the 10.3.0.0 to 10.3.255.255 source address range first.

Use the `#(config proxy-client locations) view` command to view the current location rulebase.

### For More Information

- *ProxyClient Administration and Deployment Guide*

### Example

The following example creates a location named Mobile, adds two location conditions to it (DNS server IP address and source IP address range), and enables acceleration and Web filtering for the location.

```
#(config proxy-client locations) create Mobile
#(config proxy-client locations) edit Mobile
#(config proxy-client Mobile) dns
#(config proxy-client Mobile dns) add 198.162.1.10
#(config proxy-client Mobile dns) exit
#(config proxy-client Mobile) match-dns enable

#(config proxy-client Mobile) source
#(config proxy-client Mobile source) add 198.162.0.0-198.162.0.255
#(config proxy-client Mobile source) exit
#(config proxy-client Mobile) match-source enable

#(config proxy-client Mobile) acceleration enable
#(config proxy-client Mobile) webfilter enable
```
#(config proxy-client web-filtering)

**Synopsis**
Configure ProxyClient Web filtering settings.

**Syntax**
```plaintext
#(config) sg-client
```

or

```plaintext
#(config) proxy-client
```
This changes the prompt to:
```plaintext
#(config proxy-client)
```
```plaintext
#(config proxy-client) web-filtering
```
This changes the prompt to:
```plaintext
#(config proxy-client web-filtering)
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) {enable | disable}
```
Enable or disable ProxyClient Web filtering.

```plaintext
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) {allow | block | warn} category_name
```
Sets the default action to allow, block, or warn users and groups if they try to access content in this category. Before you can allow, block, or warn users or groups individually using the `user-group-rules category_name` command, you must use this command to set the default action for the category.

Content can be from any of the following sources:

- BCWF database categories
- Local database categories
- Policy categories; for more information, see *Volume 10: Content Policy Language Guide*.
- System category or Default Action

```plaintext
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) user-group-rules category_name
```
Sets up rules for users and user groups for a category.

```plaintext
#(config proxy-client web-filtering category) {allow | block | warn} user_group_name
```
Allows, blocks, or warns users and groups accessing content in this category. Before you can use this command, you must set the default action for the category. If the `user_group_name` you enter does not already exist, it is created. User and group names can be in any of the following formats:

- Fully qualified account names (for example, `domain_name\user_name`). You should avoid using isolated names (for example, `user_name`).

Note: Before you can enable ProxyClient Web filtering, you must obtain a valid Blue Coat WebFilter license. If the Client Manager also performs Web filtering for in-office users, you must enable the Blue Coat Web Filter database on the Client Manager. For more information, see `#(config) content-filter` on page 157.
• Fully qualified DNS names (for example, `example.example.com\user_name`)
• User principal names (UPN) (for example, `someone@example.com`).

```bash
#(config proxy-client web-filtering category) {promote | demote} user_group_name
Moves `user_group_name` up or down one position in `category` the Web filtering rulebase. Policy actions (allow, block, warn) are applied to the first rule that matches the URL request. An error displays if you attempt to promote a user-group rule that is already first in the category or if you attempt to demote a user-group rule that is already last in the category.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering category) view
For the selected category, displays the default action and all user-group rules.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering category) {promote-to-top | demote-to-bottom} user_group_name
Moves `user_group_name` to the top or bottom in `category` in the Web filtering rulebase. An error displays if you attempt to promote a category that is already first in the rulebase or if you attempt to demote a category that is already last in the rulebase.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering category) clear user_group_name
Removes `user_group_name` from this category.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) clear {all | category_name}
Clears all or the specified category from the rulebase.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) default-action {allow | block}
Set the default action to take in the event the user requests content that is not classified in any category you selected.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) {promote | demote} category_name
Moves `category_name` (including all users and groups defined for this category) up or down one position in the Web filtering rulebase. Policy actions (allow, block, warn) are applied to the first rule that matches the URL request. Because URLs are typically classified in more than one category, the rulebase order is important. An error displays if you attempt to promote a category that is already first in the rulebase or if you attempt to demote a category that is already last in the rulebase.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) {promote-to-top | demote-to-bottom} category_name
Moves `category_name` (including all users and groups defined for this category) to the top or bottom of the Web filtering rulebase. An error displays if you attempt to promote a category that is already first in the rulebase or if you attempt to demote a category that is already last in the rulebase.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) exit
Exit web-filtering submode and return to proxy-client mode.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) failure-mode {closed | open}
Specify the action to take if the BCWF license expires (usually because the database has not been updated in a 30-day period). `closed` means users are not allowed to browse to any Web page. A Service Unavailable exception displays in the user’s Web browser. `open` means users are allowed to browse anywhere; in other words, content is not filtered. Select this option if user Web access is more critical than filtering or security.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) https-filtering {disable | enable}
Set to `enable` to use Web filtering when the content request is sent over an SSL connection using the default port 443. For exceptions to this behavior, see the `ProxyClient Release Notes`. Set to `disable` to not filter HTTPS traffic from unsupported browsers.
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) safe-search {disable | enable}
Set to enable to force a search engine that supports Safe Search to enable its strictest search filter; however, the quality of the filtering is based on the given engine’s built-in capabilities. The same search string entered on one search engine might yield different results when entered on another search engine (including varying levels of inappropriate content). Safe Search is supported on the following search engines: Google, A9, Altavista, Microsoft Live, Yahoo, Ask, and Orange.co.uk. With safe search enabled, the search engine Web page displays Safe Search ON, Family Filter On, Safe Search Strict, or another engine-specific string. Set to disable if you do not wish to enforce Safe Search.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) inline exception {block | warn | unavailable} data end-of-file-marker
Sets up exception pages to display to users when they attempt to access certain content. Set the exception page for block to display a page when users attempt to access blocked content. Set the exception page for warn to display a page when users attempt to access content that might violate company policies. Set the exception page for unavailable to display a page when users attempt to access content that cannot be categorized because the service point is not available.

data is the HTML code to display to users.

data end-of-file-marker is discussed in the section on Tips in #(config) inline on page 217.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) log
#(config proxy-client log) {disable | enable}
Enable or disable uploading of ProxyClient Web filtering user logs to an anonymous FTP server.

#(config proxy-client log) exit
Exit log submode and return to proxy-client mode.

#(config proxy-client log) ftp-client {{primary | alternate} {host host-or-ip-address [port port]} {path path}}
Specify the anonymous FTP server to which users upload ProxyClient Web filtering logs and the path to which to upload the files. You can optionally precede the relative path with the / character; uploads will succeed whether or not the first character is /.

Examples:
/path/to/log/directory
path/to/log/directory
To upload logs to the FTP server’s home directory, leave the field blank.

Note: Entering / in the field (with no path following the / character) causes uploads to fail.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

Note: Because log files are uploaded using anonymous FTP, Blue Coat strongly recommends you put your FTP server behind the corporate firewall. In addition, you should configure the FTP server as follows:

- To prevent the possibility of data loss, do not allow file overwrites.
- For security reasons, do not allow files on the FTP server’s upload directory to be browsed.
- The FTP server must support passive FTP clients.
- If the FTP server is deployed behind a firewall, the firewall must be configured to allow FTP data connections over TCP ports greater than 1024.
- Placing an FTP server outside the firewall has the advantage that even mobile users can upload log files to it; however, it exposes the server and your company to potentially serious malicious activity.

```bash
#(config proxy-client log)mode {all-requests | exceptions-only}
Enter all-requests to upload the entire client log. Enter exceptions-only to upload only exceptions.
```

```bash
#(config proxy-client log)periodic-upload upload-interval {hours [minutes]}
Enter the number of hours for clients to attempt to upload their logs to the anonymous FTP server. Optionally enter the number of minutes, in addition to hours.
Note: If you enter a non-zero value for both hours and minutes, the total amount of time is used. For example, if you enter periodic-upload 24 10, the client waits 24 hours and 10 minutes to upload log files.
A change to the upload period does not take effect immediately. In other words, if the upload period is 24 hours and you change it to 20 hours, clients with the 24 hour configuration wait 24 hours to upload their current logs before the 20 hour upload period takes effect.
```

```bash
#(config proxy-client log)early-upload megabytes
Enter the maximum log file size, in megabytes, to trigger a log file upload. This value takes precedence over the periodic-upload parameter. In other words, if you specify periodic-upload 24 and early-upload 10, if the client log file size reaches 10 megabytes after only 10 hours, the ProxyClient attempts to upload its log files to the FTP server.
```

```bash
#(config proxy-client log)view
View current ProxyClient Web filtering log settings.
```

```bash
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) view
View current ProxyClient Web filtering settings.
```

For More Information

- ProxyClient Administration and Deployment Guide

Example

The following example enables Web filtering, sets up two categories—Sports/Recreation (set to deny) and News/Media (set to allow)—and sets other options.

```bash
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) enable
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) allow News/Media
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) block Sports/Recreation
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) default-action allow
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) https-filtering enable
```
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) failure-mode closed

The following example enables Web filtering, sets up two categories—Sports/Recreation (blocked for everyone in the BLUECOAT\Engineering group) and News/Media (allowed for the user raymond.marcom@example.com)—and sets other options.

#(config proxy-client web-filtering) enable
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) block News/Media
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) user-group-rules News/Media raymond.marcom@example.com
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) allow Sports/Recreation
#(config proxy-client web-filtering) user-group-rules Sports/Recreation
#(config proxy-client web-filtering Sports/Recreation) block BLUECOAT\Engineering
#(config) proxy-services

**Synopsis**
Manages the proxy services on the ProxySG appliance.

**Syntax**
```plaintext
#(config) proxy-services
```
This changes the prompt to:
```plaintext
#(config proxy-services)
```

**Subcommands**

**Note:** Additional information is found under options that are hyperlinked (blue).

```plaintext
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name [service_group]
Creates a proxy service of the type and name that you specify. Optionally, specify a service group. If no service group is specified the service is placed in the service group “Other.” For more information on creating specific proxy services, see "Available Service Types" on page 270.

#(config proxy-services) delete service_name
Deletes the specified proxy service.

#(config proxy-services) dynamic-bypass
Changes the prompt to #(config dynamic-bypass) on page 275 to allow you to manage dynamic-bypass settings.

#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
Allows you to edit a proxy service of the specified name. For more information on editing specific proxy services, see "Available Service Types" on page 270.

#(config proxy-services) exit
Returns to the #(config) prompt.

#(config proxy-services) force-bypass {disable | enable}
Allows you to temporarily bypass all proxy services when enabled. Disabling force bypass returns proxy services to normal operation.

#(config proxy-services) import {predefined-service | overwrite}
Imports a predefined service from the library. Optionally, an existing service may be replaced by a service from the library by entering the keyword overwrite.

#(config proxy-services) restricted-intercept
Changes the prompt to #(config restricted-intercept) on page 289 to allow you to restrict interception to a limited number of clients and servers.

#(config proxy-services) static-bypass
Changes the prompt to #(config static-bypass) on page 298 to allow you to manage static-bypass settings.

#(config proxy-services) view {dynamic-bypass | services | static-bypass}
Allows you to view proxy service parameters.
Available Service Types

**Note:** The service types listed below are not necessarily the service names you use. The syntax for creating a service type is 

```
#(config proxy-services) create service_type service_name
```

where `service_type` is one of those listed below and `service_name` is of your choosing.

- `#(config cifs_service)` on page 271
- `#(config dns_service)` on page 273
- `#(config endpoint_mapper_service)` on page 277
- `#(config ftp_service)` on page 279
- `#(config http_service)` on page 281
- `#(config https-reverse-proxy_service)` on page 283
- `#(config mms_service)` on page 287
- `#(config rtmp_service)` on page 290
- `#(config rtsp_service)` on page 292
- `#(config socks_service)` on page 294
- `#(config ssl_service)` on page 296
- `#(config tcp-tunnel_service)` on page 299
- `#(config telnet_service)` on page 301

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```
#(config proxy-services) create tcp-tunnel tcp_tunnel_2
ok
#(config proxy-services) edit tcp_tunnel_2
#(config tcp_tunnel_2)?
add                        Add a listener
attribute                  Configure service attributes
bypass                     Change a particular listener's action
to bypass                  Return to (config proxy-services) prompt
exit                       Return to (config proxy-services) prompt
intercept                  Change a particular listener's action
to intercept               Remove a listener
remove                     Show proxy service configuration
view                       Show proxy service configuration
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config cifs_service)

Synopsis
Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the CIFS proxy.

Syntax

#(config proxy-services) create cifs service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name

This changes the prompt to:

#(config service_name)

Subcommands

#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept|bypass]
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

#(config service_name) attribute adn-byte-cache {disable | enable}
Controls whether to optimize traffic using the byte caching optimization technique when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

#(config service_name) attribute adn-compress {disable | enable}
Controls whether to optimize traffic using GZIP compression when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

#(config service_name) attribute byte-cache-priority {low | normal | high}
Adjust retention priority of byte cache data. If you want to keep certain types of streams in the byte cache for as long as possible, set a high retention priority for the service. Or for streams that aren’t likely to get much benefit from byte caching, you can set a low retention priority for the related service. Most services are set to normal priority by default. Note that unless the underlying service has adn-byte-cache enabled, the priority setting will have no effect; if you try to set a retention priority when byte caching is disabled, a warning message displays to inform you that the byte-cache-priority attribute has no effect when adn-byte-cache is disabled.

#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

#(config service_name) exit
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config service_name) group service-group
Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

```bash
#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
```
Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

```bash
#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```
Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify.

```bash
#(config service_name) view
```
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

```bash
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create cifs cifsl
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit cifsl
SGOS #(config cifsl) attribute adn-byte-cache disable
ok
```
#(config dns_service)

**Synopsis**

Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the DNS proxy.

**Syntax**

```
#(config proxy-services) create dns service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask}
{port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as **transparent**, **explicit**, or **all**, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```
#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask}
{port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as **transparent**, **explicit**, or **all**, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```
#(config service_name) exit
```

Exits to the `# (config proxy-services)` prompt.

```
#(config service_name) group service-group
```

Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

```
#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask}
{port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as **transparent**, **explicit**, or **all**, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```
#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
```

Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

```
#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask}
{port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
```

Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6).

```
#(config service_name) view
```

Views the specified proxy service.
For More Information

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

Example

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create dns dns1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit dns1
```
#(config dynamic-bypass)

**Synopsis**
Dynamic bypass provides a maintenance-free method for improving performance of the ProxySG appliance by automatically compiling a list of requested URLs that return various kinds of errors.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) dynamic-bypass
```

The prompt changes to:
```
#(config dynamic-bypass)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config dynamic-bypass) clear
   Clears all dynamic bypass entries.

#(config dynamic-bypass) disable
   Disables dynamic bypass.

#(config dynamic-bypass) enable
   Enables dynamic bypass.

#(config dynamic-bypass) exit
   Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config dynamic-bypass) max-entries number_of_entries
   Specifies the maximum number of dynamic-bypass entries. Connections that match entries in the dynamic bypass list are not intercepted by the application proxies. Entries in the dynamic bypass list eventually time out based on the configuration. If the list grows beyond its configured size, the oldest entry is removed.

#(config dynamic-bypass) no trigger {all | connect-error | non-http | receive-error | 400 | 401 | 403 | 405 | 406 | 500 | 502 | 503 | 504}
   Disables dynamic bypass for the specified HTTP response code, all HTTP response codes, or all non-HTTP responses. Values are specified below.
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>Enables all dynamic bypass triggers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-http</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for non-HTTP responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connect-error</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for any connection failure to the origin content server, including timeouts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive-error</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for when a TCP connection to an origin content server succeeds, but the cache does not receive an HTTP response.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 400 responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 401 responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>403</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 403 responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>405</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 405 responses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
#(config dynamic-bypass) server-threshold number_of_entries
Specifies the number of client entries for all clients to bypass a server. Each dynamic entry can be identified by a server address or client/server address pair. A dynamic entry without a client address means the client address is a wildcard address. For example, if the server threshold is set to 10 and there are already nine dynamic entries with different client addresses for the same server address, the next time a new dynamic entry is added to the same server address but contains a different client address, the ProxySG appliance compresses the nine dynamic entries into one dynamic entry with server address only; all clients going to that server address are bypassed.

#(config dynamic-bypass) timeout minutes
Sets the dynamic-bypass timeout interval in minutes.

#(config dynamic-bypass) trigger { all | connect-error | non-http | receive-error | 400 | 401 | 403 | 405 | 406 | 500 | 502 | 503 | 504 }
Enables dynamic bypass for the specified HTTP response code, all HTTP response codes, or all non-HTTP responses.

#(config dynamic-bypass) view { configuration | filter {* | all | client_ip_address | client_ip_address/subnet-mask} {* | all | server_ip_address | server_ip_address/subnet-mask} } {* | <Enter>}
Allows you to view the dynamic-bypass configuration or to filter the dynamic-bypass list on the parameters above.

For More Information
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example
```bash
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) dynamic-bypass
#(config dynamic-bypass) clear
ok
#(config dynamic-bypass) enable
WARNING: Requests to sites that are put into the dynamic bypass list will bypass future policy evaluation. This could result in subversion of on-box policy. The use of dynamic bypass is cautioned.
ok
#(config dynamic-bypass) trigger all
ok
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>406</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 406 responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 500 responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>502</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 502 responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>503</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 503 responses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>504</td>
<td>Enables dynamic bypass for HTTP 504 responses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config endpoint_mapper_service)

Synopsis
Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the Endpoint Mapper proxy.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services)
create endpoint-mapper service_name

#(config proxy-services)
edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

```
#(config proxy-services service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

```
#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

```
#(config service_name) attribute adn-byte-cache {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using the byte caching optimization technique when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```
#(config service_name) attribute adn-compress {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using GZIP compression when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```
#(config service_name) attribute byte-cache-priority {low | normal | high}
```

Adjust retention priority of byte cache data. If you want to keep certain types of streams in the byte cache for as long as possible, set a high retention priority for the service. Or for streams that aren’t likely to get much benefit from byte caching, you can set a low retention priority for the related service. Most services are set to normal priority by default. Note that unless the underlying service has adn-byte-cache enabled, the priority setting will have no effect; if you try to set a retention priority when byte caching is disabled, a warning message displays to inform you that the byte-cache-priority attribute has no effect when adn-byte-cache is disabled.

```
#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

```
#(config service_name) exit
```

Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

```
#(config service_name) group service-group
```

Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

```
#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.
#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
   Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
   Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify.

#(config service_name) view
   Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information
   ↗  SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example
   SGOS#(config proxy-services) create endpoint-mapper epmapper1
   SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit epmapper1
   SGOS#(config epmapper1) add all 10003
   ok
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config ftp_service)

Synopsis
Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the FTP proxy.

Syntax

```plaintext
#(config proxy-services) create ftp service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

```plaintext
#(config service_name) add { all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask } { transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask } { port | first_port-last_port } [ intercept | bypass ]
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute use-adn { disable | enable }
```

Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute adn-byte-cache { disable | enable }
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using the byte caching optimization technique when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute adn-compress { disable | enable }
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using GZIP compression when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute adn-optimize { disable | enable }
```

Starting in SGOS 6.2, the adn-optimize command was replaced by the adn-byte-cache and adn-compress commands (see above).

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute byte-cache-priority { low | normal | high }
```

Adjust retention priority of byte cache data. If you want to keep certain types of streams in the byte cache for as long as possible, set a high retention priority for the service. Or for streams that aren’t likely to get much benefit from byte caching, you can set a low retention priority for the related service. Most services are set to normal priority by default. Note that unless the underlying service has adn-byte-cache enabled, the priority setting will have no effect; if you try to set a retention priority when byte caching is disabled, a warning message displays to inform you that the byte-cache-priority attribute has no effect when adn-byte-cache is disabled.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) bypass { all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask } { transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask } { port | first_port-last_port }
```

Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.
#(config service_name) exit
   Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config service_name) group service-group
   Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
   Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
   Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
   Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6).

#(config service_name) view
   Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config proxy-services) create ftp ftp1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit ftp1
SGOS #(config ftp1) intercept all 10004
ok
#(config http_service)

Synopsis

Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the HTTP proxy.

Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create http service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

Subcommands

```
#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```
#(config service_name) attribute adn-byte-cache {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using the byte caching optimization technique when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```
#(config service_name) attribute adn-compress {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using GZIP compression when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```
#(config service_name) attribute authenticate-401 {disable | enable}
```

All transparent and explicit requests received on the port always use transparent authentication (cookie or IP, depending on the configuration). This is especially useful to force transparent proxy authentication in some proxy-chaining scenarios.

```
#(config service_name) attribute byte-cache-priority {low | normal | high}
```

Adjust retention priority of byte cache data. If you want to keep certain types of streams in the byte cache for as long as possible, set a high retention priority for the service. Or for streams that aren’t likely to get much benefit from byte caching, you can set a low retention priority for the related service. Most services are set to normal priority by default. Note that unless the underlying service has adn-byte-cache enabled, the priority setting will have no effect; if you try to set a retention priority when byte caching is disabled, a warning message displays to inform you that the byte-cache-priority attribute has no effect when adn-byte-cache is disabled.

```
#(config service_name) attribute connect {disable | enable}
```

This command is deprecated. Policy should be used instead. For example:

```
; To block CONNECT destined to ports other then 443
<Proxy>
  url.port=!443 http.method=CONNECT deny
</Proxy>
```

```
#(config service_name) attribute detect-protocol {disable | enable}
```

Protocols that can be detected include: HTTP, P2P (eDonkey, BitTorrent, FastTrack, Gnutella), SSL, and Endpoint Mapper.
#(config service_name) attribute head {disable | enable}
This command is deprecated. Policy should be used instead. For example:

; To block HEAD methods
<Proxy>
 http.method=HEAD deny

#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the
connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual decision is determined by ADN routing (for
explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all |
destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be
IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination
address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

#(config service_name) exit
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config service_name) group service-group
Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all |
destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be
IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination
address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all |
destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or
IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6).

#(config service_name) view
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

» SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config proxy-services) create http http2
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit http2
SGOS#(config http2) attribute authenticate-401 enable
ok
#(config https-reverse-proxy_service)

**Synopsis**
Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the HTTPS reverse proxy.

**Syntax**

```
#(config proxy-services) create https-reverse-proxy service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config service_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} {intercept | bypass}
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters specified. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```
#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

```
#(config service_name) attribute adn-byte-cache {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using the byte caching optimization technique when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```
#(config service_name) attribute adn-compress {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using GZIP compression when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```
#(config service_name) attribute byte-cache-priority {low | normal | high}
```

Adjust retention priority of byte cache data. If you want to keep certain types of streams in the byte cache for as long as possible, set a high retention priority for the service. Or for streams that aren’t likely to get much benefit from byte caching, you can set a low retention priority for the related service. Most services are set to normal priority by default. Note that unless the underlying service has adn-byte-cache enabled, the priority setting will have no effect; if you try to set a retention priority when byte caching is disabled, a warning message displays to inform you that the byte-cache-priority attribute has no effect when adn-byte-cache is disabled.

```
#(config service_name) attribute ccl list_name
```

CA Certificate List used for verifying client certificates.

```
#(config service_name) attribute cipher-suite cipher-suite+
```

Allows you to specify the cipher suites you want to use with the https-reverse-proxy service. The default is to use all cipher suites. If you want to change the default, you have two choices:

- interactive mode
- non-interactive mode

Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create cipher suites.
The optional `cipher-suite` refers to the cipher-suites you want to use, space separated, such as `rc4-md5 exp-des-cbc-sha`. If you want to use the interactive mode, do not specify a cipher suite.

You may specify more than one cipher suite.

```
AES128-SHA256
AES256-SHA256
AES128-SHA
AES256-SHA
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA
DES-CBC3-SHA
RC4-SHA
RC4-MD5
DES-CBC-SHA
EXP-DES-CBC-SHA
EXP-RC4-MD5
EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5
```

Table 3–2  Cipher Suites

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cipher Suite Name</th>
<th>Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-RC4-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES128-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES256-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES128-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES-CBC3-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC4-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC4-MD5</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES-CBC-SHA</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP-DES-CBC-SHA</td>
<td>Export</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP-RC4-MD5</td>
<td>Export</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5</td>
<td>Export</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

**Note:** This table reflects the cipher suites as available on a new SGOS 6.6.3 installation. The last six entries in this list are disabled by default, as Blue Coat considers these ciphers as insufficiently secure. You can enable the ciphers if desired. In other installations, such as an upgrade from an earlier SGOS version, you may see a slightly different collection of enabled suites.

```bash
#(config service_name) attribute forward-client-cert {disable | enable}
   When used with the verify-client attribute, puts the extracted client certificate information into a header that is included in the request when it is forwarded to the OCS. The name of the header is Client-Cert. The header contains the certificate serial number, subject, validity dates and issuer (all as name=value pairs). The actual certificate is not forwarded.

#(config service_name) attribute keyring keyring-ID
   Allows you to specify the keyring you want to use with this service.

#(config service_name) attribute ssl-versions {sslv2 | sslv3 | tlsv1 | tlsv1.1 | tlsv1.2}
   Allows you to select which versions of SSL you want to support. TLSv1, TLSv1.1, and TLSv1.2 are enabled by default.

#(config service_name) attribute verify-client {disable | enable}
   Requests and validates the SSL client certificate.

#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask}
   {port | first_port-last_port}
   Changes the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener specified. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

#(config service_name) exit
   Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config service_name) group service-group
   Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask}
   {port | first_port-last_port}
   Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
   Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask}
   {port | first_port-last_port}
   Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6).
#(config service_name) view
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create https-reverse-proxy HTTPS_RP1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit HTTPS_RP1
SGOS#(config HTTPS_RP1) attribute use-adn enable
ok
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config mms_service)

**Synopsis**
Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the MMS proxy.

**Syntax**

```
#(config proxy-services) create mms service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config service_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
```
Allow you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

```
#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

```
#(config service_name) exit
```
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

```
#(config service_name) group service-group
```
Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

```
#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

```
#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
```
Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

```
#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```
Allow you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify.

```
#(config service_name) view
```
Views the specified proxy service.

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config proxy-services) create mms mms1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit mms1
```
#(config restricted-intercept)

**Synopsis**

By default, all clients and servers evaluate the entries in Proxy Services (Configuration > Services > Proxy Services) where the decision is made to intercept or bypass a connection. To restrict or reduce the clients and servers that can be intercepted by proxy services, use the restricted intercept list. The restricted intercept list is useful in a rollout, prior to full production, where you only want to intercept a subset of the clients. After you are in full production mode, the restricted intercept list can be disabled.

Enabling restricted intercept only intercepts traffic specified in the client/server list. Disabling restricted intercept results in normal interception.

**Syntax**

```bash
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) restricted-intercept
```

The prompt changes to:

```
#(config restricted-intercept)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config restricted-intercept) {enable | disable}
Enables or disabled the restricted-intercept list.
```

```
#(config restricted-intercept) add {all | client_ip | client_ip/subnet-mask} | {all | server_ip | server_ip/subnet-mask}
```

Adds an entry to the restricted list, either a client or a server. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6).

```
#(config restricted-intercept) remove {all | client_ip | client_ip/subnet-mask} | all | server_ip | server_ip/subnet-mask)
```

Clears the specified client or server from the restricted list. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6).

```
#(config restricted-intercept) view {<Enter> | filter {all | client_ip | client_ip/subnet-mask} | {all | server_ip | server_ip/subnet-mask} }
```

Allows you view the entire list or to filter on specific clients or servers. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6).

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) restricted-intercept
#(config restricted-intercept) add all 192.168.100.1
```
## #(config rtmp_service)

### Synopsis

Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the RTMP proxy.

### Syntax

```bash
#(config proxy-services) create rtmp service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```bash
#(config service_name)
```

### Subcommands

- **add**
  ```bash
  #(config service_name) add [all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask] {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} [port | first_port-last_port] [intercept | bypass]
  ```
  Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

- **bypass**
  ```bash
  #(config service_name) bypass [all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask] {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} [port | first_port-last_port]
  ```
  Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

- **exit**
  ```bash
  #(config service_name) exit
  ```
  Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

- **group**
  ```bash
  #(config service_name) group service-group
  ```
  Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

- **intercept**
  ```bash
  #(config service_name) intercept [all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask] {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} [port | first_port-last_port]
  ```
  Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

- **proxy-type**
  ```bash
  #(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
  ```
  Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

- **remove**
  ```bash
  #(config service_name) remove [all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask] {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} [port | first_port-last_port]
  ```
  Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify.

- **view**
  ```bash
  #(config service_name) view
  ```
  Views the specified proxy service.

### For More Information

- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)
Example

SGOS#(config proxy-services) create rtmp rtsml
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit rtmp1
SGOS#(config rtmp1) proxy-type http
ok
#(config rtsp_service)

**Synopsis**

Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the RTSP proxy.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config proxy-services) create rtsp service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config service_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) exit
```

Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) group service-group
```

Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
```

Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) view
```

Views the specified proxy service.

**For More Information**

- **SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide**
Example

SGOS#(config proxy-services) create rtsp rtsp1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit rtsp1
SGOS#(config rtsp1) attribute use-adn enable
ok
#(config socks_service)

**Synopsis**

Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the SOCKS proxy.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config proxy-services) create socks service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config service_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {explicit | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} {intercept | bypass}
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute detect-protocol {disable | enable}
```

Detects the protocol being used. Protocols that can be detected include: HTTP, P2P (eDonkey, BitTorrent, FastTrack, Gnutella), SSL, and Endpoint Mapper.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {explicit | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) exit
```

Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) group service-group
```

Allows you to move a particular service to another service group.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {explicit | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
```

Allows you to change the proxy type of a particular service.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {explicit | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) view
```

Views the specified proxy service.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

SGOS#(config proxy-services) create socks socks1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit socks1
SGOS#(config socks1) attribute detect-protocol enable
ok
#(config ssl_service)

## Synopsis

Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the SSL proxy.

## Syntax

```
#(config proxy-services) create ssl service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config service_name)
```

## Subcommands

```
#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as `transparent`, `explicit`, or `all`, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```
#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

```
#(config service_name) attribute adn-byte-cache {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using the byte caching optimization technique when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```
#(config service_name) attribute adn-compress {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using GZIP compression when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```
#(config service_name) attribute adn-optimize {disable | enable}
```

Starting in SGOS 6.2, the `adn-optimize` command was replaced by the `adn-byte-cache` and `adn-compress` commands (see above).

```
#(config service_name) attribute byte-cache-priority {low | normal | high}
```

Adjust retention priority of byte cache data. If you want to keep certain types of streams in the byte cache for as long as possible, set a high retention priority for the service. Or for streams that aren’t likely to get much benefit from byte caching, you can set a low retention priority for the related service. Most services are set to normal priority by default. Note that unless the underlying service has `adn-byte-cache` enabled, the priority setting will have no effect; if you try to set a retention priority when byte caching is disabled, a warning message displays to inform you that the `byte-cache-priority` attribute has no effect when `adn-byte-cache` is disabled.

```
#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as `transparent`, `explicit`, or `all`, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config service_name) attribute detect_protocol {disable | enable}
Controls whether to detect HTTPS protocol after intercepting the SSL traffic, and hand it off to the HTTPS proxy. Non-HTTPS traffic will be tunneled using STunnel.

#(config service_name) exit
Exits to the #(config proxy-services) prompt.

#(config service_name) group service-group
Moves the service to a different service group.

#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
Changes the proxy type.

#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
Removes a listener. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6).

#(config service_name) view
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information

SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config proxy-services) create ssl ssl1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit ssl1
SGOS#(config ssl1) add transparent 443
#(config static-bypass)

## Synopsis

Static bypass prevents the ProxySG appliance from transparently accelerating requests to servers that perform IP authentication with clients. When a request matches an IP address and subnet mask specification, the request is sent to the designated gateway without going through the ProxySG appliance.

## Syntax

```
#(config) proxy-services
#(config proxy-services) static-bypass
#(config static-bypass)
```

### Subcommands

```
#(config static-bypass) add {all | client_ip_address | client_ip_address/subnet-mask} {all | server_ip_address | server_ip_address/subnet-mask} [<"comment">]
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be in IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). `All` includes IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. You can optionally enter a comment of up to 80 characters enclosed in quotation marks (""") that specifies why you want the specific source/destination combination to be bypassed. Adding a comment is also useful if another administrator needs to make changes to the configuration later.

```
#(config static-bypass) exit
```

Exits from the `(config static-bypass)` mode and returns to the `(config proxy-services)` mode.

```
#(config static-bypass) remove {all | client_ip_address | client_ip_address/subnet-mask} {all | server_ip_address | server_ip_address/subnet-mask}
```

Allows you to remove a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be in IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). Includes IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```
#(config static-bypass) view {filter {* | all | client_ip_address | client_ip_address/subnet-mask} {* | all | server_ip_address | server_ip_address/subnet-mask}}<Enter>
```

Allows you to view static bypass entries based on the filters you specify. IP addresses can be in IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6).

## For More Information

- `SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide`

## Example

```
SGOS# (config proxy-services) static-bypass
SGOS# (config static-bypass) add 10.9.17.135 all
ok
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config tcp-tunnel_service)

Synopsis
Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the TCP Tunnel proxy.

Syntax

#(config proxy-services) create tcp-tunnel service_name
[service_group]

#(config proxy-services) edit service_name

This changes the prompt to:

#(config service_name)

Subcommands

#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}
Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

#(config service_name) attribute adn-byte-cache {disable | enable}
Controls whether to optimize traffic using the byte caching optimization technique when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

#(config service_name) attribute adn-compress {disable | enable}
Controls whether to optimize traffic using GZIP compression when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

#(config service_name) attribute byte-cache-priority {low | normal | high}
Adjust retention priority of byte cache data. If you want to keep certain types of streams in the byte cache for as long as possible, set a high retention priority for the service. Or for streams that aren’t likely to get much benefit from byte caching, you can set a low retention priority for the related service. Most services are set to normal priority by default. Note that unless the underlying service has adn-byte-cache enabled, the priority setting will have no effect; if you try to set a retention priority when byte caching is disabled, a warning message displays to inform you that the byte-cache-priority attribute has no effect when adn-byte-cache is disabled.

#(config service_name) attribute detect-protocol {disable | enable}
Detects the protocol being used. Protocols that can be detected include: HTTP, P2P (eDonkey, BitTorrent, FastTrack, Gnutella), SSL, and Endpoint Mapper.

#(config service_name) attribute early-intercept {disable | enable}
Controls whether the proxy responds to client TCP connection requests before connecting to the upstream server. When early intercept is disabled, the proxy delays responding to the client until after it has attempted to contact the server.

#(config service_name) attribute adn-thin-client {disable | enable}
Applies special treatment to streams from thin client applications (such as RDP, VNC, and...
Citrix). This processing improves responsiveness of thin client actions. For example, end users will notice that the desktop displays significantly faster. This option is available only for services using the TCP Tunnel proxy, and can be enabled only when ADN is enabled and byte caching and/or compression is enabled. The byte-cache-priority and adn-thin-client settings are mutually exclusive; you cannot enable both options for a service.

```bash
#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as **transparent**, **explicit**, or **all**, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```bash
#(config service_name) exit
```

Exits to the `#(config proxy-services)` prompt.

```bash
#(config service_name) group service-group
```

Moves the service to a different service group.

```bash
#(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as **transparent**, **explicit**, or **all**, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```bash
#(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type
```

Changes the proxy type.

```bash
#(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
```

```bash
#(config service_name) view
```

Views the specified proxy service.

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

SGOS#(config proxy-services) create tcp-tunnel TCP1
SGOS#(config proxy-services) edit TCP1
SGOS#(config TCP1) attribute early-intercept enable
ok
#(config telnet_service)

**Synopsis**

Allows you to manage services that are controlled by the Telnet proxy.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config proxy-services) create telnet service_name
#(config proxy-services) edit service_name
```

This changes the prompt to
```
#(config service_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config service_name) add {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port} [intercept | bypass]
```

Allows you to add a listener with the parameters you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute use-adn {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether ADN is enabled for a specific service. Enabling ADN does not guarantee the connections are accelerated by ADN. The actual decision is determined by ADN routing (for explicit deployment) and network setup (for transparent deployment).

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute adn-byte-cache {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using the byte caching optimization technique when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute adn-compress {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether to optimize traffic using GZIP compression when connecting upstream in an ADN tunnel.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute byte-cache-priority {low | normal | high}
```

Adjust retention priority of byte cache data. If you want to keep certain types of streams in the byte cache for as long as possible, set a high retention priority for the service. Or for streams that aren’t likely to get much benefit from byte caching, you can set a low retention priority for the related service. Most services are set to normal priority by default. Note that unless the underlying service has adn-byte-cache enabled, the priority setting will have no effect; if you try to set a retention priority when byte caching is disabled, a warning message displays to inform you that the byte-cache-priority attribute has no effect when adn-byte-cache is disabled.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute detect-protocol {disable | enable}
```

Detects the protocol being used. Protocols that can be detected include: HTTP, P2P (eDonkey, BitTorrent, FastTrack, Gnutella), SSL, and Endpoint Mapper.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) attribute early-intercept {disable | enable}
```

Controls whether the proxy responds to client TCP connection requests before connecting to the upstream server. When early intercept is disabled, the proxy delays responding to the client until after it has attempted to contact the server.

```plaintext
#(config service_name) bypass {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask}
```
{port | first_port-last_port}
Change the behavior from intercept to bypass for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

#{(config service_name) exit}
Exits to the #{(config proxy-services) prompt.

#{(config service_name) group service-group}
Moves the service to a different service group.

#{(config service_name) intercept {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}
Change the behavior from bypass to intercept for the listener you specify. IP addresses can be IPv4 or IPv6; enter a subnet mask (for IPv4) or prefix length (for IPv6). When the destination address on a listener is defined as transparent, explicit, or all, it applies to IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

#{(config service_name) proxy-type proxy-type}
Changes the proxy type.

#{(config service_name) remove {all | source_ip | source_ip/subnet-mask} {transparent | explicit | all | destination_ip | destination_ip/subnet-mask} {port | first_port-last_port}

#{(config service_name) view}
Views the specified proxy service.

For More Information
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#{(config proxy-services) create telnet telnet1
SGOS#{(config proxy-services) edit telnet1
SGOS #(config telnet1) view
Service Name:   telnet1
Proxy:          Telnet
Attributes:     early-intercept
Destination IP    Port Range        Action
#(config) restart

**Synopsis**

Use this command to set restart options for the ProxySG appliance.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) restart core-image {context | full | keep number | none}
```

- **context**: Indicates only core image context should be written on restart.
- **full**: Indicates full core image should be written on restart.
- **keep numbers**: Specifies a number of core images to keep on restart.
- **none**: Indicates no core image should be written on restart.

```
#(config) restart mode {hardware | software}
```

- **hardware**: Specifies a hardware restart.
- **software**: Specifies a software restart.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) restart mode software
ok
```
### #(config) return-to-sender

#### Synopsis

The Return-to-Sender (RTS) option eliminates the need to create static routes by configuring the ProxySG appliance to send response packets back to the same interface that received the request packet, entirely bypassing any routing lookup on the ProxySG appliance. Essentially, the ProxySG appliance stores the source Ethernet MAC address that the client’s packet came from and sends all responses to that address. Under these conditions, if the return-to-sender feature is enabled, the ProxySG appliance remembers the MAC address of the last hop for a packet from the client or server and sends any responses or requests to the MAC address instead of the default gateway.

**Inbound RTS** affects connections initiated to the ProxySG appliance by clients and is enabled by default. Inbound RTS configures the ProxySG appliance to send SYN-ACK packets to the same interface that the SYN packet arrived on. All subsequent TCP/IP response packets are also sent to the same interface that received the request packet.

RTS inbound applies only to clients who are on a different subnet than the ProxySG appliance. If clients are on the same subnet, interface routes are used.

**Outbound RTS** affects connections initiated by the ProxySG appliance to origin servers. Outbound RTS causes the ProxySG appliance to send ACK and subsequent packets to the same interface that the SYN-ACK packet arrived on.

---

**Note:** Return-to-sender functionality should only be used if static routes cannot be defined for the clients and servers or if routing information for the clients and servers is not available through RIP packets.

---

**Load balancing:** You can use inbound RTS for load balancing. Normally, the ProxySG appliance would not know which load balancer to return the packet to. When inbound RTS is enabled, the ProxySG appliance simply returns packets to the load balancer the packets came from.

#### Syntax

```bash
#(config) return-to-sender inbound {disable | enable}
Enables or disables return-to-sender for inbound sessions.
```

```bash
#(config) return-to-sender outbound {disable | enable}
Enables or disables return-to-sender for outbound sessions.
```

```bash
#(config) return-to-sender overwrite-static-route {disable | enable}
When enabled, return-to-sender will overwrite any static route entries. The default is disabled.
```

#### Example

```
SGOS#(config) return-to-sender inbound enable
ok
```

#(config) reveal-advanced

- # reveal-advanced on page 78.
#(config) rip

**Synopsis**
Use this command to set RIP (Routing Information Protocol) configuration options. Using RIP, a host and router can send a routing table list of all other known hosts to its closest neighbor host every 30 seconds. The neighbor host passes this information on to its next closest neighbor and so on until all hosts have perfect knowledge of each other. (RIP uses the hop count measurement to derive network distance.) Each host in the network can then use the routing table information to determine the most efficient route for a packet.

The RIP configuration is defined in a configuration file. To configure RIP, first create a text file of RIP commands and then load the file by using the `load` command.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) rip disable
Disables the current RIP configuration.

#(config) rip enable
Enables the current RIP configuration.

#(config) rip default-route {enable | disable}
Accepts or denies the incoming default route advertisement.

#(config) rip default-route {group number | weight number}
Allows you to set the preference group and weight of the default routes.

#(config) rip no path
Clears the current RIP configuration path as determined using the `rip path url` command.

#(config) rip path url
Sets the path to the RIP configuration file to the URL indicated by `url`.
```

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

a. SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide Configure a routing domain for the Marketing subnet.
b. Configure a VLAN for the Marketing subnet.
c. Associate the new VLAN interface to the new routing domain.
d. Configure a default gateway for the new routing domain.
e. Configure a static route for the new routing domain.
f. Verify that the new routing domain contains the configuration.

```
ip-address 144.144.144.1 255.255.255.0
ok
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

```
#(config Marketing_144)interface 1:0.144
ok
default-gateway 144.144.144.100
#(config Marketing_144) inline static-route-table EOF
44.44.44/24 144.144.144.111
EOF
ok
#(config Marketing_144) view
Routing domain Marketing_144 configuration:
  Associated interfaces:  1:0.144

; TCP/IP Routing Table
Routing tables
Routing domain 2 : Marketing_144
Internet:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Gateway</th>
<th>Flags</th>
<th>Refs</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Netif</th>
<th>Expire</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>144.144.144.100</td>
<td>UGS</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1:0.144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.44.44.0/24</td>
<td>144.144.144.111</td>
<td>UGS</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1:0.144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144.144.144.0/24</td>
<td>link#9</td>
<td>UC</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1:0.144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144.144.144.100</td>
<td>link#9</td>
<td>UHLW</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1:0.144</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144.144.144.111</td>
<td>link#9</td>
<td>UHLW</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1:0.144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
#(config) security

The #(config) security command is used for security, authentication, and authorization. The security command, by itself, cannot be used. You must use security commands with the options discussed in Subcommands below.

Synopsis

The ProxySG appliance provides the ability to authenticate and authorize explicit and transparent proxy users using industry-standard authentication services.

Syntax

```
#(config) security [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

Modes in the security command are divided into three categories:

- Console Access and Authorization
- Realms
- Transparent Proxy

**Note:** While the commands are listed in functional order below, they are discussed in alphabetical order in the pages that follow. Each of the options in blue are hyperlinked so you can go directly to the command.

---

### Console Access and Authorization

The options in this category do not enter a new submode. These options allow you to manage passwords and usernames for the ProxySG appliance itself.

```
#(config) security allowed-access on page 312
```

Adds or removes the specified IP address to the access control list.

```
#(config) security default-authenticate-mode on page 323
```

Sets the default authenticate.mode to auto or to sg2.

```
#(config) security destroy-old-passwords on page 324
```

Destroys recoverable passwords in configuration used by previous versions.

```
#(config) security enable-password and hashed-enable-password on page 325
```

Sets the console enable password to the password specified.

```
#(config) security encrypted-enable-password on page 326
```

Specify an encrypted console enable password.

```
#(config) security encrypted-password on page 327
```

Specify an encrypted console account password.

```
#(config) security enforce-acl on page 328
```

Enables or disables the console access control list.

```
#(config) security front-panel-pin and hashed-front-panel-pin on page 331
```

Sets a four-digit PIN to restrict access to the front panel of the ProxySG appliance.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) security legacy-relative-usernames on page 332
   Enables and disables the use of legacy relative usernames.

#(config) security management on page 348
   Manages display settings.

#(config) security password and hashed_password on page 352
   Specifies the console enable password in hashed format.

#(config) security password-display on page 353
   Specifies format to display passwords in show config output.

#(config) security users on page 376
   Manages user log ins, log outs and refresh data

#(config) security username on page 377
   Specifies the console username.

Realms

Multiple authentication realms can be used on a single ProxySG appliance. Multiple realms are essential if the enterprise is a managed provider or the company has merged with or acquired another company. Even for companies using only one protocol, multiple realms might be necessary, such as the case of a company using an LDAP server with multiple authentication boundaries. You can use realm sequencing to search the multiple realms all at one time.

Note: Up to 40 realms per type (such as certificate, authentication forms, and RADIUS) are allowed.

#(config) security authentication-forms on page 314
   Creates forms for authentication and manage them.

#(config) security certificate on page 316
   Creates and manages certificate realms.

#(config) security coreid on page 319
   Creates and manages COREid realms.

#(config) security iwa-bcaaa on page 333
   Creates and manages IWA realms that connect to Active Directory using BCAAA.

#(config) security iwa-direct on page 336
   Creates and manages IWA realms that connect to Active Directory directly.

#(config) security ldap on page 339
   Creates and manages LDAP realms.

#(config) security local on page 343
   Creates and manages local realms.

#(config) security local-user-list on page 345
   Creates and manages local user lists.

#(config) security novell-sso on page 349
   Creates and manages Novell SSO realms.

#(config) security policy-substitution on page 354
   Creates and manage policy-substitution realms.

#(config) security radius on page 357
   Creates and manages RADIUS realms.

#(config) security request-storage on page 361
   Creates and manages request-storage realms.
Command Line Interface Reference

#(config security sequence) on page 367
Creates and manages sequence realms.

#(config) security siteminder on page 369
Creates and manages SiteMinder realms.

#(config security windows-domains) on page 378
Configures a Windows domain for the encrypted MAPI feature.

#(config) security windows-sso on page 383
Creates and manages Windows SSO realms.

#(config) security xml on page 385
Creates and manages XML realms.

Transparent Proxy
You can configure the authentication method for transparent proxies.

#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth on page 374
Specifies certain transparent proxy authentication settings.

For More Information
.Matchers: SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example
#(config) show security
Account:
  Username: "admin"
  Hashed Password: $1$a2zT1EE$1b88R3SXUTXS.z071h8db0
  Hashed Enable Password: $1$xQnqGerX$LU65b20trsIAF6yJox26L.
  Hashed Front Panel PIN: "$1$ThSEiB1v$seyBhsxTxEtUGD25NOB1/
  Management console display realm name: "Aurora"
  Management console auto-logout timeout: Never
  Access control is disabled
  Access control list (source, mask):
  Flush credentials on policy update is enabled
  Default authenticate.mode: auto
  Transparent proxy authentication:
    Method: cookie
    Cookie type: session
    Cookie virtual-url: "www.cfauth.com/
    IP time-to-live: 15
  Local realm:
    No local realm is defined.
  RADIUS realm:
    No RADIUS realm is defined.
  LDAP realm(s):
    No LDAP realm is defined.
  IWA realm(s):
    No IWA realm is defined.
  Certificate realm(s):
    No certificate realms are defined.
  SiteMinder realm(s):
    No realms defined.
  COREid realm(s):
No realms defined.
Policy-substitution realm(s):
  No realms defined.
Realm sequence(s):
  No realm sequences defined.
#(config) security allowed-access

**Synopsis**

Adds or removes IP addresses to the console access control list.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) security allowed-access [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) security allowed-access add source_ip [ip_mask]

Adds the specified IP address to the access control list.

#(config) security allowed-access remove source_ip [ip_mask]

Removes the specified IP from the access control list.
```

**For More Information**

- #(config) security enforce-acl on page 328
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```
#(config) security allowed-access add 10.25.36.47
```
#(config) security authentication-exception-stats

**Synopsis**

This command is for Blue Coat internal use only.
#(config) security authentication-forms

You can use forms-based authentication exceptions to control what your users see during authentication. link.

To create and put into use forms-based authentication, you must complete the following steps:

- Create a new form or edit one of the existing authentication form exceptions
- Set storage options
- Set policies

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage authentication forms.

Syntax

```shell
#(config) security authentication-forms
```

This changes the prompt to:

```shell
#(config authentication-forms)
```

Subcommands

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) copy [source_form_name target_form_name]
```

Changes the name of a form. Note that you cannot change the form type.

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) create {authentication-form | new-pin-form | query-form} form_name
```

Creates a new authentication form using the form type you specify.

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) delete form_name
```

Deletes an authentication form

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) exit
```

Returns to the #(config) prompt.

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) inline form_name eof_marker
```

Installs an authentication form from console input.

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) load form_name
```

Downloads a new authentication form.

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) no path [form_name]
```

Negates authentication-form configuration.

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) path [form_name] path
```

Specifies the path (URL or IP address) from which to load authentication forms.

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) revert [form_name]
```

Reverts an authentication form to default.

```shell
#(config authentication-forms) view
```

Views the form specified or all forms.

For More Information

- #(config) security request-storage on page 361
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

# (config) security authentication-forms
# (config authentication-forms) create form_type form_name
ok

where form_type indicates the default authentication-form, new-pin-form, or query-form and form_name is the name you give the form.
#(config) security certificate

After an SSL session has been established, the user is asked to select the certificate to send to the ProxySG appliance. If the certificate was signed by a Certificate Signing Authority that the ProxySG appliance trusts, including itself, then the user is considered authenticated. The username for the user is the one extracted from the certificate during authentication.

You do not need to specify an authorization realm if:

- The policy does not make any decisions based on groups
- The policy works as desired when all certificate realm-authenticated users are not in any group

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage certificate realms.

Syntax

#(config) security certificate [subcommands]

Subcommands

#(config) security certificate create-realm realm_name
Creates the specified certificate realm.

#(config) security certificate delete-realm realm_name
Deletes the specified certificate realm.

#(config) security certificate edit-realm realm_name
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

#(config) security certificate view [realm_name]
Displays the configuration of all certificate realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.

Submodes

#(config) security certificate edit-realm realm_name
This changes the prompt to:

#(config certificate_realm)

Commands in this submode:

#(config certificate certificate_realm) authorization ignore-user-list {add | clear | remove}
Manages the ignore-user-list, which is the list of those to ignore if they are returned as search results.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) authorization realm {none | realm-name realm_name}
Specifies the authorization realm to use. Only LDAP, XML, and local realms are valid authorization realms.

#(config certificate certificate_realm)authorization search-filter search_filter
Specifies the search filter that should be used during a search of the LDAP server. The filter can contain policy substitutions including $(cs-username).
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config certificate certificate_realm) authorization user-attribute \{fqdn | LDAP_attribute_name\}
Specifies the user-attribute (fully qualified domain name or an LDAP attribute name) to be used during a search of the LDAP server.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) authorization username \{determine-by-search | use-full-username | username_for_authorization\}
Specifies the way a username should be determined. The default is the attribute cn, which specifies the user’s relative name.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) cookie \{persistent \{enable | disable\} \| verify-ip \{enable | disable\}\}
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) display-name display_name
Specifies the display name for this realm.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) extended-key-usage \{add | clear | remove\}
Allows you to add and remove extended key usage OIDs and clear the OID list.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) exit
Exits #(config certificate realm) mode and returns to (config) mode.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) identification full-username full username
Configures the syntax to extract the full username.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) identification username username
Configures the syntax to extract the username.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) inactivity-timeout seconds
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) refresh-time \{authorization-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds\}
Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) rename new_realm_name
 Renames this realm to new_realm_name.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) view
Displays this realm’s configuration.

#(config certificate certificate_realm) virtual-url url
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information
- #(config) security ldap on page 339
- #(config) security local on page 343
- #(config) security xml on page 385
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

# (config) security certificate edit-realm testcert
# (config certificate testcert) refresh-time surrogate-refresh 800
  ok
# (config certificate testcert) exit
# (config)
#(config) security coreid

Within the COREid Access System, BCAA acts as a custom AccessGate. It communicates with the COREid Access Servers to authenticate the user and to obtain a COREid session token, authorization actions, and group membership information.

**Synopsis**

Allows you to create and manage COREid realms.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) security coreid [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config) security coreid create-realm realm_name
   Creates the specified COREid realm

#(config) security coreid delete-realm realm_name
   Deletes the specified COREid realm.

#(config) security coreid edit-realm realm_name
   Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

#(config) security coreid view [realm_name]
   Displays the configuration of all COREid realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.
```

**Submodes**

```plaintext
#(config) security coreid edit-realm realm_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config coreid realm_name)
```

Commands in this submode:

```plaintext
#(config coreid realm_name) access-server-hostname hostname
   The hostname of the primary Access Server.

#(config coreid realm_name) access-server-id id
   The ID of the primary Access Server.

#(config coreid realm_name) access-server-port port
   The port of the primary Access Server

#(config coreid realm_name) add-header-responses disable | enable
   When enabled, authorization actions from the policy domain obtained during authentication are added to each request forwarded by the ProxySG appliance. Note that header responses replaces any existing header of the same name; if no such header exists, the header is added.
   Cookie responses replace a cookie header with the same cookie name; if no such cookie header exists, one is added.

#(config coreid realm_name) alternate-agent accessgate-id name
   The ID of the alternate AccessGate agent.

#(config coreid realm_name) alternate-agent encrypted-secret encrypted_shared_secret
   The encrypted password associated with the alternate AccessGate. (Passwords can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.) The primary use of the encrypted-secret command is to allow the ProxySG appliance to reload a password that it encrypted. If you
choose to use a third-party encryption application, be sure it supports RSA encryption, OAEP padding, and is Base64 encoded with no newlines.

```bash
#(config coreid realm_name) alternate-agent host hostname
   The hostname or the IP address of the alternate system that contains the agent.

#(config coreid realm_name) alternate-agent port port
   The port where the alternate agent listens.

#(config coreid realm_name) alternate-agent secret shared_secret
   The password associated with the alternate AccessGate. (Passwords can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.)

#(config coreid realm_name) always-redirect-offbox {disable | enable}
   Forces authentication challenges to always be redirected to an off-box URL.

#(config coreid realm_name) case-sensitive {disable | enable}
   Specifies whether the username and group comparisons on the ProxySG appliance should be case-sensitive.

#(config coreid realm_name) certificate-path certificate_path
   If Cert mode is used, the location on the BCAAA host machine where the key, server and CA chain certificates reside. The certificate files must be named aaa_key.pem, aaa_cert.pem and aaa_chain.pem respectively.

#(config coreid realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}
   Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

#(config coreid realm_name) display-name display_name
   Equivalent to the display-name option in the CPL authenticate action. The default value for the display name is the realm name. The display name cannot be longer than 128 characters and it cannot be null.

#(config coreid realm_name) encrypted-transport-pass-phrase encrypted_pass_phrase
   If Simple or Cert mode is used, the Transport encrypted passphrase configured in the Access System.

#(config coreid realm_name) exit
   Exits the #(config coreid) edit mode and returns to #(config) mode.

#(config coreid realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
   Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

#(config coreid realm_name) log-out {challenge {enable | disable} | display-time seconds}
   Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

#(config coreid realm_name) no alternate-agent | certificate-path
   Removes the alternate agent configuration or the certificate path.

#(config coreid realm_name) primary-agent accessgate-id name
   The ID of the primary AccessGate agent.

#(config coreid realm_name) primary-agent encrypted-secret encrypted_shared_secret
   The encrypted password associated with the primary AccessGate. (Passwords can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.) The primary use of the encrypted-secret command is to allow the ProxySG appliance to reload a password that it encrypted. If you choose to use a third-party encryption application, be sure it supports RSA encryption, OAEP padding, and is Base64 encoded with no new line.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config coreid realm_name) primary-agent host hostname
The hostname or the IP address of the primary system that contains the agent.

#(config coreid realm_name) primary-agent port port
The port where the primary agent listens.

#(config coreid realm_name) primary-agent secret shared_secret
The password associated with the primary AccessGate. (Passwords can be up to 64 characters long and are always case sensitive.)

#(config coreid realm_name) protected-resource-name resource_name
The resource name defined in the Access System policy domain

#(config coreid realm_name) refresh-time {credential-refresh seconds | rejected-credentials-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}
Sets the refresh time for credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

#(config coreid realm_name) rename new_realm_name
Renames the realm to your request.

#(config coreid realm_name) security-mode {cert | open | simple}
The Security Transport Mode for the AccessGate to use when communicating with the Access System

#(config coreid realm_name) ssl {disable | enable}
Enable or disable SSL.

#(config coreid realm_name) ssl-device-profile
ssl_device_profile_name
Specifies the device profile to use.

#(config coreid realm_name) timeout seconds
The length of time to elapse before timeout if a response from BCAA is not received.

#(config coreid realm_name) transport-pass-phrase pass_phrase
If Simple or Cert mode is used, the Transport passphrase configured in the Access System.

#(config coreid realm_name) validate-client-IP {disable | enable}
Enables validation of the client IP address in SSO cookies. If the client IP address in the SSO cookie can be valid yet different from the current request client IP address due to downstream proxies or other devices, then disable client IP address validation. The WebGates participating in SSO with the ProxySG appliance should also be modified. The WebGateStatic.lst file should be modified to either set the ipvalidation parameter to false or to add the downstream proxy/device to the IPValidationExceptions lists.

#(config coreid realm_name) view
Views the realm configuration.

#(config coreid realm_name) virtual-url url
The URL to redirect to when the user needs to be challenged for credentials. If the ProxySG appliance is participating in SSO, the virtual hostname must be in the same cookie domain as the other servers participating in the SSO. It cannot be an IP address or the default.

For More Information

- #(config) security siteminder on page 369
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

```
SGOS#(config) security coreid edit-realm coreid_1
SGOS#(config coreid coreid_1) access-server-hostname AccessServer_1
SGOS#(config coreid coreid_1) refresh-time surrogate-refresh 800
SGOS#(config coreid coreid_1) exit
```
#(config) security default-authenticate-mode

**Synopsis**
Sets the default `authenticate.mode` to `auto` or to `sg2`.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) security default-authenticate-mode [auto | sg2]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) security default-authenticate-mode auto
   Enables the access control list.
```

```
#(config) security default-authenticate-mode sg2
   Disables the access control list.
```

**For More Information**

- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) security default-authenticate-mode auto
```
#(config) security destroy-old-passwords

**Synopsis**
Destroys recoverable passwords in configuration used by previous versions.

**Syntax**

```bash
#(config) security destroy-old-passwords [force]
```

**Subcommands**

- `#(config) security destroy-old-passwords`
  - Destroys passwords after prompting.
- `#(config) security destroy-old-passwords force`
  - Destroys passwords without prompting.

**Note:** Do not use this command if you intend to downgrade, as the old passwords are destroyed.

**For More Information**

- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

**Example**

```bash
#(config) destroy-old-passwords force
```
#(config) security enable-password and
hashed-enable-password

**Synopsis**
Sets the console enable password to the password specified.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) security enable-password password
#(config) security hashed-enable-password hashed_password
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config) security enable-password password | <enter>
This is the password required to enter enable mode from the CLI when using console credentials, the serial console, or RSA SSH.

#(config) security hashed-enable-password hashed_password
The enable password in hashed format. You can either hash the password prior to entering it, or you can allow the ProxySG appliance to hash the password.
```

**For More Information**
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**
```
#(config) security enable-password test
```
#(config) security encrypted-enable-password

**Synopsis**
Sets the console enable password to the encrypted password specified.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) security encrypted-enable-password [subcommand]
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config) security encrypted-enable-password encrypted password
Sets the console enable password to the password specified.
```

**For More Information**
- `SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide`
#(config) security encrypted-password

**Synopsis**
Sets the console account password to the encrypted password specified.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) security encrypted-password [subcommand]
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config) security encrypted-password encrypted password
Sets the console account password to the password specified.
```

**For More Information**
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
#(config) security enforce-acl

**Synopsis**

Enables or disables the console access control list (ACL).

**Syntax**

```
#(config) security enforce-acl [enable | disable]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) security enforce-acl enable
   Enables the access control list.

#(config) security enforce-acl disable
   Disables the access control list.
```

**For More Information**

- #(config) alert on page 119

**Example**

```
#(config) security enforce-acl disable
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) security force-credential-forwarding

**Synopsis**

When enabled, the ProxySG appliance forwards `Authorization` and `Proxy-Authorization` headers upstream to the OCS. This command can be used in explicit and transparent proxy deployments. The default setting for this command is `disable`.

Use this feature with caution. It causes the ProxySG appliance to send all `Authorization` and `Proxy-Authorization` headers upstream. For Internet-bound requests, the proxy sends user-credential information to the Internet.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) security force-credential-forwarding [enable | disable]
```

Where:

- `enable` forwards the headers.
- `disable` (default) disables the appliance from forwarding the headers.

**For More Information**

- Refer to the following article for information:
  
  http://www.symantec.com/docs/TECH244708

**Example**

```
#(config) security force-credential-forwarding enable
ok
```
#(config) security force-credential-forwarding-logging

**Synopsis**

When you enable #(config) security force-credential-forwarding and #(config) security force-credential-forwarding-logging, the ProxySG appliance logs instances of when it forwards Authorization and Proxy-Authorization headers in the event log.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) security force-credential-forwarding-logging [enable | disable]
```

Where:

- **enable** logs instances of when the ProxySG appliance forwards Authorization and Proxy-Authorization headers in the event log.
- **disable** (default) disables the appliance from logging instances of when it forwards the headers.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide#(config) security force-credential-forwarding on page 329

**Example**

```plaintext
#(config) security force-credential-forwarding-logging enable
ok
```
#(config) security front-panel-pin and hashed-front-panel-pin

**Synopsis**
Sets a four-digit PIN to restrict access to the front panel of the ProxySG appliance.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) security front-panel-pin PIN
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config) security front-panel-pin PIN
Use of this command is recommended for security reasons.
```

**Note:** To clear the PIN, specify 0000.

**For More Information**
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**
```
#(config) security front-panel-pin 1234
```
#(config) security legacy-relative-usernames

**Synopsis**
Enables and disables the use of legacy relative usernames.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) security legacy-relative-usernames [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config) security legacy-relative-usernames {disable | enable}
```
Enables and disables use of legacy relative usernames.

**For More Information**
- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

**Example**
```
#(config) security legacy-relative-usernames disable
ok
```
#(config) security iwa-bcaaa

Integrated Windows Authentication (IWA) is an authentication mechanism available on Windows networks.

IWA is a Microsoft-proprietary authentication suite that allows Windows clients (running on Windows 2000 and higher) to automatically choose between using Kerberos and NTLM authentication challenge/response, as appropriate. When an IWA realm is used and a resource is requested by the client from the ProxySG appliance, the appliance contacts the client's domain account to verify the client's identity and request an access token. The access token is generated by the domain controller (in case of NTLM authentication) or a Kerberos server (in the case of Kerberos authentication) and passed to (and if valid, accepted by) the ProxySG appliance.

Refer to the Microsoft Web site for detailed information about the IWA protocol.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage IWA realms that connect to Active Directory using BCAAA.

Syntax

```
#(config) security iwa-bcaaa [subcommands]
```

Subcommands

```
#(config) security iwa-bcaaa create-realm realm_name
  Creates the specified IWA realm.
```

```
#(config) security iwa-bcaaa delete-realm realm_name
  Deletes the specified IWA realm.
```

```
#(config) security iwa-bcaaa edit-realm realm_name
  Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.
```

```
#(config) security iwa-bcaaa view [realm_name]
  Displays the configuration of all IWA realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.
```

Submodes

```
#(config) security iwa-bcaaa edit-realm realm_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm_name)
```

Commands in this submode:

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm_name) alternate-server host [port]
  Specifies the alternate server host and port.
```

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}
  Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.
```

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm_name) credentials-basic {disable | enable}
  Disables/enables support for Basic credentials in this realm. At least one of Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credentials must be supported.
```

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm_name) credentials-kerberos {disable | enable}
```
Disables/enables support for Kerberos credentials in this realm. If Kerberos is enabled, NTLM must also be enabled. At least one of Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credentials must be supported.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) credentials-ntlm {disable | enable}
```
Disables/enables support for NTLM credentials in this realm. If NTLM is enabled, Kerberos must also be enabled. At least one of Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credentials must be enabled.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) display-name display_name
```
Specifies the display name for this realm.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) exit
```
Exits the iwa edit mode and returns to (config) mode.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) inactivity-timeout seconds
```
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) log-out {challenge {enable | disable} | display-time seconds}
```
Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) no alternate-server
```
Clears the alternate-server.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) primary-server host [port]
```
Specifies the primary server host and port.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) refresh-time {credential-refresh seconds | rejected-credentials-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}
```
Sets the refresh time for credential, rejected credentials cache time, and surrogates.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) rename new_realm_name
```
Renames this realm to new_realm_name.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) server-authentication {none | origin | proxy}
```
Enables/disables the forwarding of BASIC credentials of the authenticated user to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. Flush the entries for a realm if the server-authentication value is changed to ensure that the server-authentication value is immediately applied.

You can only choose one server-authentication method:

- If set to origin, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream server.
- If set to proxy, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream proxy.
- If set to none, forwarding BASIC credentials is disabled.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) ssl {disable | enable}
```
Disables/enables SSL communication between the ProxySG appliance and BCAA.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) ssl-device-profile
ssl_device_profile_name
```
Specifies the device profile to use.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) test-authentication
windows_domain_name\username password
```
Tests the IWA configuration to ensure that you can successfully authenticate a user in your Active Directory.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) timeout seconds
```
Specifies the IWA request timeout.

```
#(config iwa-bcaaa realm name) view
```
Displays this realm’s configuration.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

`(config iwa-bcaaa realm_name) virtual-url url
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

`(config) security iwa-bcaaa edit-realm testIWA
`(config iwa-bcaaa testIWA) no alternate server
ok
`(config iwa-bcaaa testIWA) exit
`(config)
#(config) security iwa-direct

Integrated Windows Authentication (IWA) is an authentication mechanism available on Windows networks.

IWA is a Microsoft-proprietary authentication suite that allows Windows clients (running on Windows 2000 and higher) to automatically choose between using Kerberos and NTLM authentication challenge/response, as appropriate. When an IWA realm is used and a resource is requested by the client from the ProxySG appliance, the appliance contacts the client's domain account to verify the client's identity and request an access token. The access token is generated by the domain controller (in case of NTLM authentication) or a Kerberos server (in the case of Kerberos authentication) and passed to (and if valid, accepted by) the ProxySG appliance.

Refer to the Microsoft Web site for detailed information about the IWA protocol.

**Synopsis**

Allows you to create and manage IWA realms that allow the ProxySG appliance to connect directly to Active Directory.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) security iwa-direct [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config) security iwa-direct create-realm realm_name
  windows_domain_name
  Creates the specified IWA realm.

#(config) security iwa-direct delete-realm realm_name
  Deletes the specified IWA realm.

#(config) security iwa-direct edit-realm realm_name
  Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

#(config) security iwa-direct view [realm_name]
  Displays the configuration of all IWA realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.
```

**Submodes**

```plaintext
#(config) security iwa-direct edit-realm realm_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config iwa-direct realm_name)
```

Commands in this submode:

```plaintext
#(config iwa-direct realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}
  Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

#(config iwa-direct realm_name) credentials-basic {disable | enable}
  Disables/enables support for Basic credentials in this realm. At least one of Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credentials must be supported.

#(config iwa-direct realm_name) credentials-kerberos {disable | enable}
```

336
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

Disables/enables support for Kerberos credentials in this realm. If Kerberos is enabled, NTLM must also be enabled. At least one of Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credentials must be supported.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) credentials-ntlm {disable | enable}
```

Disables/enables support for NTLM credentials in this realm. If NTLM is enabled, Kerberos must also be enabled. At least one of Basic or NTLM/Kerberos credentials must be enabled.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) display-name display_name
```

Specifies the display name for this realm.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) exit
```

Exits the iwa edit mode and returns to (config) mode.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) inactivity-timeout seconds
```

Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) kerberos-user username password
```

Set the Kerberos User information needed for a load-balancing configuration.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) log-out {challenge {enable | disable} | display-time seconds}
```

Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) no kerberos-user
```

Clears the kerberos-user configuration.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) refresh-time {credential-refresh seconds | rejected-credentials-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}
```

Sets the refresh time for credential, rejected credentials cache time, and surrogates.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) rename new_realm_name
```

Renames this realm to new_realm_name.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) server-authentication {none | origin | proxy}
```

Enables/disables the forwarding of BASIC credentials of the authenticated user to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. Flush the entries for a realm if the server-authentication value is changed to ensure that the server-authentication value is immediately applied.

You can only choose one server-authentication method:

- If set to origin, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream server.
- If set to proxy, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream proxy.
- If set to none, forwarding BASIC credentials is disabled.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) timeout seconds
```

Specifies the IWA request timeout.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) view
```

Displays this realm’s configuration.

```
#(config iwa-direct realm name) virtual-url url
```

Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

#(config) security iwa-direct edit-realm MyRealm
#(config iwa-direct MyRealm) virtual-url http://myproxy
  ok
#(config iwa-direct MyRealm) exit
#(config)
#(config) security ldap

Blue Coat supports both LDAP v2 and LDAP v3, but recommends LDAP v3 because it uses Transport Layer Security (TLS) and SSL to provide a secure connection between the appliance and the LDAP server.

An LDAP directory, either version 2 or version 3, consists of a simple tree hierarchy. An LDAP directory might span multiple LDAP servers. In LDAP v3, servers can return referrals to others servers back to the client, allowing the client to follow those referrals if desired.

Directory services simplify administration; any additions or changes made once to the information in the directory are immediately available to all users and directory-enabled applications, devices, and ProxySG appliances.

The ProxySG appliance supports the use of external LDAP database servers to authenticate and authorize users on a per-group or per-attribute basis.

LDAP group-based authentication for the appliance can be configured to support any LDAP-compliant directory including:

- Microsoft Active Directory Server
- Novell NDS/eDirectory Server
- Netscape/Sun iPlanet Directory Server
- Other

**Synopsis**

Allows you to configure and manage LDAP realms.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) security ldap [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) security ldap create-realm realm_name
Creates the specified LDAP realm

#(config) security ldap delete-realm realm_name
Deletes the specified LDAP realm.

#(config) security ldap edit-realm realm_name
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

#(config) security ldap view [realm_name]
Displays the configuration of all LDAP realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.
```

**Submodes**

```
#(config) security ldap edit-realm realm_name
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ldap realm_name)
```

Commands in the ldap realm_name mode:

```
#(config ldap realm_name) alternate-server host [port]
Specifies the alternate server host and port.
```
#(config ldap realm_name)
case-sensitive {disable | enable}
  Specifies whether or not the LDAP server is case-sensitive.

#(config ldap realm_name)
cookie {persistent {enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}
  Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address
  of the cookie.

#(config ldap realm_name)
default-group-name default_group_name
  If the validate-authorized-user command is disabled and a default-group-name is
  configured, the default-group-name is used as the group name for non-existent users.

#(config ldap realm_name)
display-name display_name
  Specifies the display name for this realm.

#(config ldap realm_name)
distinguished-name user-attribute-type
  Specifies the attribute type that defines the relative user name.

#(config ldap realm_name)
distinguished-name base-dn {add | demote | promote | remove | base_dn | clear}
  Adds/demotes/promotes/removes a base DN from the base DN list, or clears the base DN list.

#(config ldap realm_name)
exit
  Exits the ldap edit mode and returns to #(config) mode.

#(config ldap realm_name) group-compare {local | server}
  Specifies the method of LDAP group comparisons.

#(config ldap realm_name)
group-search-constraint ldap filter expression
  Adds an LDAP filter constraint to group searches.

#(config ldap realm_name)
inactivity-timeout seconds
  Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

#(config ldap realm_name)
log-out {challenge {enable | disable} | display-time seconds}
  Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

#(config ldap realm_name)
lookup-group simple_group_name
  Allows you to look up the common name of a group in your LDAP tree. For example, looking
  up the group finance might return a value such as cn=finance,ou=headquarters,o=acme.

#(config ldap realm_name)
lookup-user simple_user_name
  Allows you to look up the common name of a user in your LDAP tree. Note that this command
  will return all matching entries. For example, looking up the user jdoe might return a value
  such as cn=jdoe,ou=headquarters,o=acme and CN=jdoe,o=acme.

#(config ldap realm_name)
membership-attribute attribute_name
  Specifies the attribute that defines group membership.

#(config ldap realm_name)
membership-type {group | user}
  Specifies the membership type. Specify group if user memberships are specified in groups.
  Specify user if memberships are specified in users.

#(config ldap realm_name)
membership-username {full | relative}
  Specifies the username type to use during membership lookups. The full option specifies that
  the user's FQDN is used during membership lookups, and relative option specifies that the
  user's relative username is used during membership lookups. Only one can be selected at a
  time.

#(config ldap realm_name)
nested-group-attribute attribute_name
  Specifies the attribute that defines nested group membership. For other, ad, and nds, the
default attribute name is **member**. For **iPlanet**, the default attribute name is **uniqueMember**.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) no {alternate-server | default-group-name
| no membership-attribute | no nested-group-attribute |
group-search-constraint}
```

Clears the attribute values.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) objectclass container {add | remove} |
{container_objectclass | clear}
```

Adds/removes container objectclass values from the list (these values are used during VPM searches of the LDAP realm), or clears all values from the container objectclass list.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) objectclass group {add | remove} |
{group_objectclass | clear}
```

Adds/removes group objectclass values from the list (these values are used during VPM searches of the LDAP realm), or clears all values from the group objectclass list.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) objectclass user {add | remove} |
{user_objectclass | clear}
```

Adds/removes user objectclass values from the list (these values are used during VPM searches of the LDAP realm), or clears all values from the user objectclass list.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) primary-server host [port]
```

Specifies the primary server host and port.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) protocol-version {2 | 3}
```

Specifies the LDAP version to use. SSL and referral processing are not available in LDAP v2.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) referrals-follow {disable | enable}
```

Disables/enables referral processing. This is available in LDAP v3 only.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) refresh-time {authorization-refresh
seconds | credential-refresh seconds |
rejected-credentials-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh |
seconds}
```

Sets the refresh time for authorization, credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) rename new_realm_name
```

Renames this realm to **new_realm_name**.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) search anonymous {disable | enable}
```

Disables/enables anonymous searches.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) search dereference {always | finding |
never | searching}
```

Specifies the dereference level. Specify always to always dereference aliases. Specify finding to dereference aliases only while locating the base of the search. Specify searching to dereference aliases only after locating the base of the search. Specify never to never dereference aliases.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) search encrypted-password
encrypted_password
```

Specifies the password to bind with during searches in encrypted format.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) search password password
```

Specifies the password to bind with during searches.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) search user dn user dn
```

Specifies the user DN to bind with during searches.

```text
#(config ldap realm_name) server-authentication {none | origin |
proxy}
```

Enables/disables the forwarding of BASIC credentials of the authenticated user to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. Flush the entries for a realm if the
server-authentication value is changed to ensure that the server-authentication value is immediately applied.

You can only choose one server-authentication method:

- If set to **origin**, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream server.
- If set to **proxy**, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream proxy.
- If set to **none**, forwarding BASIC credentials is disabled.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) server-type {ad | iplanet | nds | other}
```
Specifies the LDAP server type for this realm.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) ssl {disable | enable}
```
Disables/enables SSL communication between the ProxySG appliance and the LDAP server. This is only available in LDAP v3.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) ssl-device-profile
  ssl_device_profile_name
```
Specifies the device profile to use.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) support-nested-groups {disable | enable}
```
Enables or disables the nested group feature.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) test-authentication username password
```
Tests the LDAP configuration to ensure that the ProxySG appliance can successfully authenticate a user in your LDAP realm using the username and password you provide.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) timeout seconds
```
Specifies the LDAP server’s timeout.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) validate-authorized-user {enable | disable}
```
When **validate-authorized-user** is enabled, an **authorization** (not authentication) request verifies that the user exists in the LDAP server. If the user does not exist, the authorization request fails (authentication requests always require the user to exist).

When **validate-authorized-user** is disabled, no user existence check is made for an authorization request. If the user does not exist, the authorization request succeeds.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) view
```
Displays this realm’s configuration.

```
#(config ldap realm_name) virtual-url url
```
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

### For More Information

- **SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide**

### Example

```
#(config) security ldap edit-realm testldap
#(config ldap testldap) server-type iplanet
   ok
#(config ldap testldap) server-authentication origin
   ok
#(config ldap testldap) exit
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) security local

Using a Local realm is appropriate when the network topography does not include external authentication or when you want to add users and administrators to be used by the ProxySG appliance only.

The Local realm (you can create up to 40) uses a Local User List, a collection of users and groups stored locally on the ProxySG appliance. You can create up to 50 different Local User Lists. Multiple Local realms can reference the same list at the same time, although each realm can only reference one list at a time. The default list used by the realm can be changed at any time.

Synopsis

Allows you to configure and manage local realms.

Syntax

#(config) security local [subcommands]

Subcommands

#(config) security local create-realm realm_name

Creates the specified local realm.

#(config) security local delete-realm realm_name

Deletes the specified local realm.

#(config) security local edit-realm realm_name

Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

#(config) security local view [realm_name]

Displays the configuration of all local realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.

Submodes

#(config) security local edit-realm realm_name

This changes the prompt to:

#(config local realm_name)

Commands found in this submode include:

#(config local realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}}

Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

#(config local realm_name) default-group-name default_group_name

If the validate-authorized-user command is disabled and a default-group-name is configured, the default-group-name is used as the group name for non-existent users.

#(config local realm_name) display-name display_name

Specifies the display name for this realm.

#(config local realm_name) exit

Exits configure security local mode and returns to #(config) mode.

#(config local realm_name) refresh-time {authorization-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}

Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.
### (config local realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

### (config local realm_name) log-out {challenge {disable | enable} | display-time seconds}
Configures the log-out behavior.

### (config local realm_name) local-user-list local_user_list_name
Specifies the local user list to for this realm.

### (config local realm_name) no default-group-name
Clears the default group name.

### (config local realm_name) rename new_realm_name
Renames this realm to new_realm_name

### (config local realm_name) server-authentication {none | origin | proxy}
Enables/disables the forwarding of BASIC credentials of the authenticated user to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. Flush the entries for a realm if the server-authentication value is changed to ensure that the server-authentication value is immediately applied.

You can only choose one server-authentication method:
- If set to origin, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream server.
- If set to proxy, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream proxy.
- If set to none, forwarding BASIC credentials is disabled.

### (config local realm_name) validate-authorized-user {disable | enable}
When validate-authorized-user is enabled, an authorization (not authentication) request verifies that the user exists in the local user list. If the user does not exist in the list, the authorization request fails (authentication requests always require the user to exist).

When validate-authorized-user is disabled, no user existence check is made for an authorization request. If the user does not exist, the authorization request succeeds.

### (config local realm_name) view
Displays this realm’s configuration

### (config local realm_name) virtual-url url
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

### For More Information
- #(config) security local-user-list on page 345
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

### Example
```
#(config) security local edit-realm testlocal
#(config local testlocal) server-authentication proxy
  ok
#(config local testlocal) exit
#(config)
```
#(config) security local-user-list

The local-user-list is only used in conjunction with local realms.

**Synopsis**

Manages the local-user-list used in local realms.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) security local-user-list [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config) security local-user-list clear [force]
Clears all local user lists. Lists referenced by local realms and the default local user list are recreated but empty. Specify force to clear realms without a prompt for confirmation.

#(config) security local-user-list create local-user-list
Creates the local user list with the name specified

#(config) security local-user-list default append-to-default
   {disable | enable}
Disables/enables appending uploaded users to the default local user list.

#(config) security local-user-list default list local_user_list
Specifies the default local user list. The default list is populated during password file uploads. The default list is also the default list used by local realms when they are created.

#(config) security local-user-list delete local-user-list [force]
Deletes the specified local user list. The default list and any lists used by local realms cannot be deleted. Specify force to delete the list without a prompt for confirmation.

#(config) security local-user-list edit local-user-list
Changes the prompt. See Submodes.

**Submodes**

```plaintext
#(config) security local-user-list edit local_user_list
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config local-user-list local_user_list)
```

**Commands found in this submode include:**

```plaintext
#(config local-user-list local_user_list) disable-all
Disables all user accounts in the specified list.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) enable-all
Enables all user accounts in the specified list.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) exit
Exits configure local-user-list mode and returns to configure mode.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) group clear
Clears all groups from the list. The users remain but do not belong to any groups.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) group create group_name
Creates the specified group in the local user list.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) group delete group_name [force]
Deletes the specified group in the local user list.
```
#(config local-user-list local_user_list) **lockout-duration** seconds
The length of time a user account is locked out after too many failed password attempts. The default is 3600.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) **max-failed-attempts** attempts
The number of failed attempts to login to an ProxySG appliance before the user account is locked. The default is 60 attempts.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) no [lockout-duration | max-failed-attempts | reset-interval]
Disables the settings for this user list.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) **reset-interval** seconds
The length of seconds to wait after the last failed attempt before resetting the failed counter to zero.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) user clear
Clears all users from the list. The groups remain but do not have any users.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) user create **user_name**
Creates the specified user in the local user list.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) user delete **user_name** [force]
Deletes the specified user in the local user list.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) user edit **user_name**
changes the prompt to #(config local-user-list local_user_list **user_name**) Edits the specified user in the local user list.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list **user_name**) {disable | enable}
Disables/enables the user account.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list **user_name**) exit
Exits configure local-user-list user_list mode and returns to configure local-user-list mode.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list **user_name**) group {add | remove} **group_name**
Adds/removes the specified group from the user.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list **user_name**) hashed-password **hashed_password**
Specifies the user’s password in hashed format.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list **user_name**) password **password**
Specifies the user’s password.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list **user_name**) view
Displays the user account.

#(config local-user-list local_user_list) view
Displays all users and groups in the local user list.

For More Information

- #(config) security local on page 343
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

# (config) security local-user-list edit testlul
# (config local-user-list testlul) user create testuser
  ok
# (config local-user-list testlul) user edit testuser
# (config local-user-list testlul testuser) enable
  ok
# (config local-user-list testlul testuser) exit
# (config local-user-list testlul) exit
# (config)
#(config) security management

**Synopsis**
Manages the automatic logging out of a user and sets the name of realm in the Management Console challenge.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) security management [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config) security management cli-timeout minutes
  Specifies the length of an administrative CLI session before the administrator is required to
  re-enter credentials. The default is 15 minutes (900 seconds). Acceptable values are
  between 1 and 1440 minutes (60 seconds to 86400 seconds).

#(config) security management display-realm realm_name
  Specifies the realm to display in the Management Console challenge. The default value is the
  IP address of the ProxySG appliance.

#(config) security management no cli-timeout
  Disables the automatic session logout for CLI sessions.

#(config) security management no display-realm
  Disables the specified web interface realm displayed in the Management Console challenge.

#(config) security management no web-timeout
  Disables the automatic session logout for Management Console sessions.

#(config) security management web-timeout minutes
  Specifies the length of an administrative Management Console session before the administrator is
  required to re-enter credentials. The default is 15 minutes (900 seconds). Acceptable values are
  between 1 and 1440 minutes (60 seconds to 86400 seconds).
```

**For More Information**
- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

**Example**
```
#(config) security management web-timeout 20
  ok
```
#(config) security novell-sso

**Synopsis**
Allows you to configure and manage Novell SSO realms.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) security novell-sso [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) security novell-sso create-realm realm_name
Creates the specified Novell SSO realm.
```

```
#(config) security novell-sso delete-realm realm_name
Deletes the specified Novell SSO realm.
```

```
#(config) security novell-sso edit-realm realm_name
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.
```

```
#(config) security novell-sso view [realm_name]
Displays the configuration of all Novell SSO realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.
```

**Submodes**

```
#(config) security novell-sso edit-realm realm_name
This changes the prompt to:
```
```
#(config novell-sso realm_name)
```

Commands found in this submode include:

```
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) alternate-agent {host hostname | port port_number}
Specifies the alternate agent hostname and port number.
```

```
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) alternate-agent private-key-password {private key password | <enter>}
Sets the alternate private key password. Entering the submode without a password opens the password prompt followed by a confirmation prompt.
```

```
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) alternate-agent public-certificate-password {public certificate password | <enter>}
Sets the alternate public certificate password. Entering the submode without a password opens the password prompt followed by a confirmation prompt.
```

```
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) alternate-agent encrypted-private-key-password {private key password | <enter>}
Sets the alternate private key password.
```

```
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) alternate-agent encrypted-public-certificate-password {public certificate password | <enter>}
Sets the alternate public certificate password.
```

```
SGOS#(config novell-sso realm_name) authorization {realm-name authorization-realm-name | username username | no {authorization-realm-name | username | self}}
```
Specifies the realm name, which can be **self**, and username for authorization. **No** clears the realm and username.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) cookie {persistent {disable | enable} | verify-ip {disable | enable}}

Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) exit

Leaves the novell-sso edit-realm mode.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) full-search {day-of-week | time-of-day}

Specifies the day of the week for full searches to occurs and the time of the day (UTC time) to search.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) inactivity-timeout seconds

Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) ldap monitor-server {add LDAP_host [LDAP_port] | clear | remove LDAP_host [LDAP_port]}

Add an LDAP host to list of servers to be monitored, clear the list, or remove a specific LDAP host from the list of servers to be monitored.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) ldap search-realm ldap_realm

Specifies the name of the realm to search and monitor.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) ldap-name {login-time LDAP_name | network-address LDAP_name}

Specifies the name of the LDAP server for Novell directory attributes.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) no alternate-agent

Removes the alternate agent.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) primary-agent {host hostname | port port_number}

Specifies the primary agent hostname and port number.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) refresh-time {authorization-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}

Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) rename new_realm_name

Renames the current realm to **new_realm_name**.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) ssl {enable | disable}

Enables or disables SSL between the ProxySG and the BCAA service.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) ssl-device-profile ssl_device_profile_name

Specifies the device profile to use.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) timeout seconds

The time allotted for each request attempt. The default is 60 seconds.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) test-authentication IP_address

Tests the Novell SSO and BCAA configuration to ensure that the ProxySG appliance can successfully map an IP address to a user in your Novell Directory.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) view

Displays this realm’s configuration.

SGOS#(config novell-sso realm name) virtual-url url

Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.
#(config) security password and hashed_password

Synopsis

Sets the console password to the password specified.

Syntax

```
#(config) security password password
#(config) security password hashed-password hashed_password
```

Subcommands

```
#(config) security password password
  This is the password required to enter enable mode from the CLI when using console
credentials, the serial console, or RSA SSH.

#(config) security hashed-password hashed_password
  The password in hashed format. You can either hash the password prior to entering it, or you
can allow the ProxySG appliance to hash the password.
```

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

```
#(config) security password good2test
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) security password-display

Synopsis
Sets various display settings.

Syntax

#(config) security password-display [subcommands]

Subcommands

#(config) security password-display {encrypted | none}
Specifies the format to display passwords in show config output. Specify encrypted to display encrypted passwords. Specify none to display no passwords.

#(config) security password-display keyring
Specifies the keyring to use for password encryption.

#(config) security password-display view
Displays the current password display settings.

For More Information

» SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

#(config) security password-display view
Password display mode: Encrypted
Password encryption keyring: configuration-passwords-key
#(config) security policy-substitution

A Policy Substitution realm provides a mechanism for identifying and authorizing users based on information in the request to the ProxySG appliance. The realm uses information in the request and about the client to identify the user. The realm is configured to construct user identity information by using policy substitutions.

The Policy Substitution realm is used typically for best-effort user discovery, mainly for logging and subsequent reporting purposes, without the need to authenticate the user. Be aware that if you use Policy Substitution realms to provide granular policy on a user, it might not be very secure because the information used to identify the user can be forged.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage policy-substitution realms.

Syntax

    #(config)  security policy-substitution  [subcommands]

Subcommands

    #(config)  security policy-substitution  create-realm  realm_name
    Creates the specified policy-substitution realm

    #(config)  security policy-substitution  delete-realm  realm_name
    Deletes the specified policy-substitution realm.

    #(config)  security policy-substitution  edit-realm  realm_name
    Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

    #(config)  security policy-substitution  view  [realm_name]
    Displays the configuration of all policy-substitution realms or just the configuration for
    realm_name if specified.

Submodes

    #(config)  security policy-substitution  edit-realm  realm_name
    This changes the prompt to:

        #(config  policy-substitution  realm_name)

    Commands found in this submode include:

        #(config  policy-substitution  realm_name)  authorization-realm-name
        realm_name
        This option is only required if you are associating an authorization realm with the Policy
        Substitution realm.

        #(config  policy-substitution  realm_name)  cookie  [persistent  [disable
        |  enable]  |  verify-ip  [disable  |  enable]]
        Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address
        of the cookie.

        #(config  policy-substitution  realm_name)  exit
        Leaves the windows-sso edit-realm mode.

        #(config  policy-substitution  realm_name)  group-definition
        substitution_string
        The authenticated group name for use in a policy substitution realm. This command identifies
        the string to be used in an HTTP header, for use in a child proxy in proxy chain configurations.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

The parent proxy would look for the HTTP header string and through policy actions, make policy decisions based on a user’s group.

**Note:** This command has no impact when used in a policy substitution realm that includes an authorization realm. For more information on Policy Substitution realms, refer to the *Blue Coat SGOS Policy Language Reference.*

```config
#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification
determine-usernames {by-definition cr | by-search cr}
```

Specifies how to determine usernames.

```config
#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification
full-username construction_rule
```

The full username as created through policy substitutions. The construction rule is made up any of the substitutions whose values are available at client logon, listed in Appendix D, “CPL Substitutions,” in the *Blue Coat Content Policy Language Reference.*

**Note:** The username and full username attributes are character strings that contain policy substitutions. When authentication is required for the transaction, these character strings are processed by the policy substitution mechanism, using the current transaction as input. The resulting string is stored in the user object in the transaction, and becomes the user’s identity.

To create full usernames for various uses in Policy Substitution realms, refer to the *Content Policy Language Reference.*

```config
#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification
ignore-user-list {add username | clear cr | remove username}
```

Specifies users to ignore when determining usernames by search.

```config
#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification realm-name
LDAP realm
```

Specifies the name of the LDAP search realm.

```config
#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification
search-filter search filter
```

Specifies the LDAP search filter.

```config
#(config policy-substitution realm_name) identification username
construction_rule
```

The username as created through policy substitutions. The username is only required if you are using an authorization realm. The construction rule is made up any of the policy substitutions whose values are available at client logon, listed in Appendix D, “CPL Substitutions,” in the *Blue Coat SGOS Content Policy Language Reference.*

**Note:** The username and full username attributes are character strings that contain policy substitutions. When authentication is required for the transaction, these character strings are processed by the policy substitution mechanism, using the current transaction as input. The resulting string is stored in the user object in the transaction, and becomes the user’s identity.

To create usernames for the various uses of Policy Substitution realms, refer to the *SGOS Content Policy Language Reference.*

```config
#(config policy-substitution realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
```

Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.
#(config policy-substitution realm_name) no
    authorization-realm-name
Clears the authorization realm name.

#(config policy-substitution realm_name) refresh-time
    [authorization-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds]
Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.

#(config policy-substitution realm_name) rename new_realm_name
Renames this realm to new_realm_name.

#(config policy-substitution realm_name) view
Displays this realm’s configuration.

#(config policy-substitution realm_name) virtual-url url
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information
❐ SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide, Access Logging chapter
❐ Visual Policy Manager Reference

Example
#(config) security policy-substitution edit-realm PS1
#(config policy-substitution PS1) authorization-realm-name LDAP1
#(config policy-substitution PS1) username
$(netbios.messenger-username)
#(config policy-substitution PS1) identification full-username
   cn=$(netbios.messenger-username),cn=users,dc=$(netbios.computer-domain),
de=company,dc=com
#(config) security radius

RADIUS is often the protocol of choice for ISPs or enterprises with very large numbers of users. RADIUS is designed to handle these large numbers through centralized user administration that eases the repetitive tasks of adding and deleting users and their authentication information. RADIUS also inherently provides some protection against sniffing.

Some RADIUS servers support one-time passwords. One-time passwords are passwords that become invalid as soon as they are used. The passwords are often generated by a token or program, although pre-printed lists are also used. Using one-time passwords ensures that the password cannot be used in a replay attack.

The ProxySG appliance’s one-time password support works with products such as Secure Computing SafeWord synchronous and asynchronous tokens and RSA SecurID tokens. The ProxySG supports RADIUS servers that use challenge/response as part of the authentication process. SafeWord asynchronous tokens use challenge/response to provide authentication. SecurID tokens use challenge/response to initialize or change PINs.

**Synopsis**

Allows you to create and manage RADIUS realms.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) security radius [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) security radius create-realm realm_name
Creates the specified RADIUS realm

#(config) security radius create-realm-encrypted <realm_name>
  <encrypted_secret> <primary-server_host> [<primary-server port>]
Creates a RADIUS realm with an encrypted server secret.

#(config) security radius create-realm-prompt-secret <realm_name>
  <primary-server_host> [<primary-server port>]
Creates the specified RADIUS realm; prompts for a server secret.

#(config) security radius delete-realm realm_name
Deletes the specified RADIUS realm.

#(config) security radius edit-realm realm_name
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

#(config) security radius view [realm_name]
Displays the configuration of all RADIUS realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.
```

**Submodes**

```
#(config) security radius attributes
This changes the prompt to:

#(config radius attributes)

Commands found in this submode include:

#(config radius attributes) add [radius-attribute <radius_type>
  (1-255) <attribute_name> [integer|ipv4|ipv6]|[[string |}
```
Configure user-defined RADIUS attributes.

**Note:** To change the configuration of an existing RADIUS attribute, you must remove it from the system and add it again with the new configuration:

1. Backup the ProxySG policy and install a new blank policy.
2. If the attribute is in use in the RADIUS session monitor, remove the attribute from the session monitor using the `#(config session-monitor attributes) remove` command.
3. Remove the attribute from RADIUS configuration using the `#(config radius attributes) remove` command.
4. Add the attribute with new configuration using the `#(config radius attributes) add` command.
5. (If the attribute was previously in the RADIUS session monitor configuration) Restart the appliance and then add the attribute to the session monitor using the `#(config session-monitor attributes) add` command.
6. Restore the policy you backed up in step 1.

To verify the configured RADIUS attributes, issue the `#(config radius attributes) view` command.

```plaintext
#(config radius attributes) add <vendor_id> <vendor_type (1-255)>
```

Configure vendor-specific attributes.

```plaintext
#(config radius attributes) exit
Return to the `#(config)` prompt.

#(config radius attributes) remove attribute_name
Removes the specified RADIUS attribute.

#(config radius attributes) view
View the configured RADIUS attributes.

#(config) security radius edit-realm realm_name
This changes the prompt to:

#(config radius realm_name)

Commands found in this submode include:

```plaintext
#(config radius realm_name) alternate-server encrypted-secret encrypted_secret
Specifies the alternate server secret in encrypted format. Note that you must create the encrypted secret before executing the `host [port]` command.

#(config radius realm_name) alternate-server host [port]
Specifies the alternate server host and port.

#(config radius realm_name) alternate-server secret secret
Specifies the alternate server secret. Note that you must create the secret before executing the `host [port]` command
```

Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config radius realm_name) case-sensitive {disable | enable}
Specifies whether or not the RADIUS server is case-sensitive.

#(config radius realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

#(config radius realm_name) display-name display_name
Specifies the display name for this realm.

#(config radius realm_name) exit
Exits configure radius-realm mode and returns to configure mode.

#(config radius realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

#(config radius realm_name) log-out {challenge {enable | disable} | display-time seconds}
Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

#(config radius realm_name) no alternate-server
Clears the alternate-server.

#(config radius realm_name) one-time-passwords {enable | disable}
Allows you to use one-time passwords for authentication. The default is disabled.

#(config radius realm_name) primary-server encrypted-secret encrypted_secret
Specifies the primary server secret in encrypted format.

#(config radius realm_name) primary-server host [port]
Specifies the primary server host and port.

#(config radius realm_name) primary-server secret secret
Specifies the primary server secret.

#(config radius realm_name) refresh-time {credential-refresh seconds | rejected-credentials-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}
Sets the refresh time for credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

#(config radius realm_name) rename new_realm_name
Renames this realm to new_realm_name.

#(config radius realm_name) server-retry count
Specifies the number of authentication retry attempts. This is the number of attempts permitted before marking a server offline. The client maintains an average response time from the server; the retry interval is initially twice the average. If that retry packet fails, then the next packet waits twice as long again. This increases until it reaches the timeout value. The default number of retries is 10.

#(config radius realm_name) server-authentication {none | origin | proxy}
Enables/disables the forwarding of BASIC credentials of the authenticated user to the origin content server or for proxy authentication. Flush the entries for a realm if the server-authentication value is changed to ensure that the server-authentication value is immediately applied.

You can only choose one server-authentication method:
• If set to origin, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream server.
• If set to proxy, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream proxy.
• If set to none, forwarding BASIC credentials is disabled.
#(config radius realm_name) **test-authentication username password**
Tests the RADIUS configuration to ensure that the ProxySG can successfully authenticate a user in your RADIUS realm. If the test succeeds, the CLI displays a list of groups to which the user belongs.

#(config radius realm_name) **timeout seconds**
Specifies the RADIUS request timeout. This is the number of seconds the ProxySG appliance allows for each request attempt before giving up on a server and trying another server. Within a timeout multiple packets can be sent to the server, in case the network is busy and packets are lost. The default request timeout is 10 seconds.

#(config radius realm_name) **server-charset charset**
Allows you to select the character set you need. A character set is a MIME charset name. Any of the standard charset names for encodings commonly supported by Web browsers can be used. The default is Unicode:UTF8.

One list of standard charset names is found at [http://www.iana.org/assignments/character-sets](http://www.iana.org/assignments/character-sets).

#(config radius realm_name) **view**
Displays this realm's configuration.

#(config radius realm_name) **virtual-url url**
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

### For More Information

- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

### Example

```
#(config) security radius edit-realm testradius
#(config radius testradius) server-retry 8
  ok
#(config radius testradius) server-authentication proxy
  ok
#(config radius testradius) exit
```
#(config) security request-storage

When a request requiring the user to be challenged with a form contains a body, the request is stored on the ProxySG appliance while the user is being authenticated. Storage options include:

- the maximum request size.
- the expiration of the request.
- whether to verify the IP address of the client requesting against the original request.
- whether to allow redirects from the origin server.

The storage options are global, applying to all form exceptions you use. The global allow redirects configuration option can be overridden on a finer granularity in policy using the `authenticate.redirect_stored_requests(yes|no)` action.

**Synopsis**

Used with authentication forms to store requests.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) security request-management [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) security request-management allow-redirects {disable | enable}
```

Specifies whether to allow redirects. The default is `disable`.

```
#(config) security request-management expiry-time seconds
```

Sets the amount of time before the stored request expires. The default is 300 seconds (five minutes).

```
#(config) security request-management max-size megabytes
```

Sets the maximum POST request size during authentication. The default is 50 megabytes.

```
#(config) security request-management verify-ip {disable | enable}
```

Enables or disables the verify-ip option. The default is to enable the ProxySG appliance to verify the IP address against the original request.

**For More Information**

- #(config) security authentication-forms on page 314
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```
#(config) security request-storage max-size megabytes
#(config) security request-storage expiry-time seconds
#(config) security request-storage verify-ip enable | disable
#(config) security request-storage allow-redirects enable | disable
```
SAML 2.0 was developed by the OASIS Security Services Technical Committee. It is an industry standard for retrieving authorization and identity information in XML documents to facilitate single sign-on (SSO) applications or services on the internet. In SAML authentication, the exchange of information is performed by the following entities:

Identity providers (IDPs), which are identity stores. For example, an IDP may have a back-end directory of users. The IDP authenticates the users. Supported IDPs are:

- Microsoft® Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) 2.0
  Note: ADFS 1.0 ships with Windows Server 2008. If you want to use the SAML realm with AD FS, you must download AD FS 2.0 from the Microsoft website and install it.
- CA SiteMinder® R12
- Oracle® Access Management 11g

Service providers (SPs), which provide access to applications or services to users. It is the entity against which users authenticate. SGOS supports SAML authentication in which the ProxySG appliance acts as the SP.

**Synopsis**

Allows you to create and configure SAML realms.

**Syntax**

```bash
#(config) security saml [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) security saml create-realm <realm-name>
```

Creates a realm.

```
#(config) security saml view <realm-name>
```

Shows running system information for all SAML realms or the specified SAML realm.

```
#(config) security saml delete-realm <realm-name>
```

Deletes the specified SAML realm.

```
#(config) security saml edit-realm <realm-name>
```

Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

**Submodes**

```
#(config) security saml attributes
```

Configures SAML attributes. This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config saml attributes)
```

Commands in this submode include:

```
#(config saml attributes) add <attribute-name>
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

Adds a new SAML attribute.

```plaintext
#(config saml attributes) edit <attribute-name>
```

Edits the specified SAML attribute.

```plaintext
#(config saml attributes) remove <attribute-name>
```

Removes the specified SAML attribute.

```plaintext
#(config saml attributes) view
```

Displays the configured SAML attributes.

```plaintext
#(config) security saml edit-realm <realm-name>
```

Edits the realm. This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>)
```

Commands in this submode include:

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>) authorization ignore-user-list
  {add | clear | remove}
```

Add a username to a list of users to ignore when determining authorization, clear the list, or remove a username from the list.

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>) authorization realm {none | <realm-name> | self}
```

Specify whether to not authorize with the current realm, use a different realm for authorization, or authorize with the current realm.

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>) authorization search-filter
  <search-filter>
```

Specify the LDAP search filter.

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>) authorization search-realm
  <LDAP-realm>
```

Specify the name of the LDAP search realm.

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>) authorization user-attribute { fqdn | <LDAP-attribute-name>}
```

Specify the username attribute on the search result object—either the FQDN or the LDAP attribute name.

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>) authorization username
  {determine-by-search | use-full-username | <username>}
```

Set the username for authorization: Determine the username by LDAP search, use the user’s full username or FQDN, or specify the username.

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>) client-redirects {disable | enable}
```

Specify if SAML redirects should be forwarded to the client.

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>) cookie persistent {disable | enable}
```

Specify whether to use persistent or session cookies.

```plaintext
#(config saml <realm-name>) cookie verify-ip {disable | enable}
```

Specify whether to verify cookies’ IP addresses.
Command Line Interface Reference

#(config saml <realm-name>) display-name <display-name>
Set the display name of the current realm.

#(config saml <realm-name>) encryption keyring <keyring-name>
Specify the keyring used for decrypting assertions.

#(config saml <realm-name>) federated-idp {ccl <ccl-name> | entity-id <entity-id>| import-metadata <url> | sso-post-endpoint <url> | sso-redirect-endpoint <url>}
Configure the following settings for the IDP with which the realm is federated:

• the trusted CCL for validation of the IDP certificate
• the SAML entity ID
• the URL from which the IDP metadata is downloaded/imported; the URL is not stored, but it is used to import metadata when the command is issued
• the SSO POST endpoint
• the SSO redirect endpoint

#(config saml <realm-name>) group-attribute <attribute-name>
Specify the name of the group membership attribute.

#(config saml <realm-name>) inactivity-timeout <number-of-seconds>
Specify the number of seconds a session can be inactive before it is logged out.

#(config saml <realm-name>) inline idp-metadata <XML> <EOF>
Install IDP metadata by entering it in XML format, followed by an end-of-file character.

#(config saml <realm-name>) log-out challenge {disable | enable}
Disable or enable challenging after logout. For example, if this setting is enabled and a user logs out of a web site, the user must enter credentials again the next time they access the web site.

#(config saml <realm-name>) log-out display-time <number-of-seconds>
Specify the number of seconds to display the logout page after logging out.

#(config saml <realm-name>) no {encryption keyring | federated-idp sso-post-endpoint | federated-idp sso-redirect-endpoint | group-attribute | user-attribute | user-fullname-attribute}
Clear the specified parameter.

#(config saml <realm-name>) not-after <number-of-seconds>
Specify a number of seconds after the current time, after which assertions are invalid. The default value is 20.

#(config saml <realm-name>) not-before <number-of-seconds>
Specify a number of seconds before the current time, before which assertions are invalid. The default value is 10.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

%(config saml <realm-name>)prefix-idp-cookies {disable | enable}

Specify if IDP cookies should be prefixed when client redirect is disabled.

%(config saml <realm-name>)refresh-time { credential-refresh <number-of-seconds> | rejected-credential-refresh <number-of-seconds> | surrogate-refresh <number-of-seconds> }

Configure the refresh time for authorization credentials and surrogates.

%(config saml <realm-name>)rename <new-realm-name>

Rename the current realm.

%(config saml <realm-name>)require-encryption {disable | enable}

Disable or enable the requirement that all incoming assertions are encrypted.

%(config saml <realm-name>)ssl-device-profile <ssl-device-profile>

Specify the SSL device profile to use for the realm

%(config saml <realm-name>)user-attribute <attribute-name>

Specify the attribute that contains the username.

%(config saml <realm-name>)user-fullname-attribute <attribute-name>

Specify the attribute that contains the full username.

%(config saml <realm-name>)view

Show running system information for the current SAML realm.

%(config saml <realm-name>)virtual-host <hostname>

Specify the hostname for the SAML endpoints.

%(config)security saml attributes

This changes the prompt to:

%(config saml attributes)

%(config saml attributes)edit <attribute-name>

This changes the prompt to:

%(config saml attributes <attribute-name>)

%(config saml attributes <attribute-name>)data type {case-ignore-string | case-exact-string}

Change the specified attribute’s data type.

%(config saml attributes <attribute-name>)saml-name <saml-name>

Change the specified attribute’s SAML name.

Example

%(config)security saml view realm1

Realm name: realm1

Display name: realm1
Federated IDP entity ID:
Federated IDP POST URL:
Federated IDP Redirect URL:
Federated IDP CCL: appliance-ccl
SSL Device Profile Name: default
Not Before: 60
Not After: 60
SAML user attribute:
SAML fullname attribute:
SAML group attribute:
SAML encryption keyring:
Require encryption: no
Authorization realm: Self
Authorization username: Full Authorization Username
Search realm:
Search filter:
User attribute: Entry FQDN
Users to ignore:
Virtual URL: www.cfauth.com/
Credentials refresh: 900
Surrogates refresh: 900
Inactivity timeout: 900
Verify cookie ip address: yes
Use persistent cookies: no
Challenge after log out: yes
Log out page display time: 0
Rejected credentials time: 1
#(config security sequence)

After a realm is configured, you can associate it with other realms to allow Blue Coat to search for the proper authentication credentials for a specific user. That is, if the credentials are not acceptable to the first realm, they are sent to the second, and so on until a match is found or all the realms are exhausted. This is called sequencing.

**Synopsis**

Allows you to create and manage sequence realms.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) security sequence [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config) security sequence create-realm realm_name
Creates the specified sequence realm.

#(config) security sequence delete-realm realm_name
Deletes the specified sequence realm.

#(config) security sequence edit-realm realm_name
Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

#(config) security sequence view [realm_name]
Displays the configuration of all sequence realms or just the configuration for `realm_name` if specified.

#(config) security sequence edit-realm realm_sequence_name
This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name)
```

**Submodes**

Commands available in this submode include:

```plaintext
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) display-name display_name
Specifies the display name for this realm.

#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) exit
Execs configure sequence-realm mode and returns to configure mode.

#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) IWA-only-once {disable | enable}
Specifies whether or not to challenge for credentials for the IWA realm one or multiple times.

#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) realm {add | demote | promote | remove} {realm_name | clear}
Adds/demotes/promotes/removes a realm from the realm sequence, or clears all realms from the realm sequence.

#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) rename new_realm_name
Renames this realm to `new_realm_sequence_name`.

#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) try-next-realm-on-error {disable | enable}
Use this command to specify that the next realm on the list should be attempted if authentication in the previous realm has failed with a permitted error. The default value is to not attempt the next realm and fall out of the sequence.
```
#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) view
Displays this realm’s configuration.

#(config sequence realm_sequence_name) virtual-url url
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm sequence. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example
#(config) security sequence edit-realm testsequence
#(config sequence testsequence) IWA-only-once disable
ok
#(config sequence testsequence) realm clear
ok
#(config sequence testsequence) exit
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) security siteminder

Within the SiteMinder system, BCAAA acts as a custom Web agent. It communicates with the SiteMinder policy server to authenticate the user and to obtain a SiteMinder session token, response attribute information, and group membership information.

Custom header and cookie response attributes associated with OnAuthAccept and OnAccessAccept attributes are obtained from the policy server and forwarded to the ProxySG appliance. They can (as an option) be included in requests forwarded by the appliance.

Within the ProxySG appliance, BCAAA acts as its agent to communicate with the SiteMinder server. The ProxySG appliance provides the user information to be validated to BCAAA, and receives the session token and other information from BCAAA.

Each SiteMinder realm used causes the creation of a BCAAA process on the Windows host computer running BCAAA. A single host computer can support multiple realms (from the same or different ProxySG appliances); the number depends on the capacity of the BCAAA host computer and the amount of activity in the realms.

Note: Each (active) SiteMinder realm on the ProxySG appliance should reference a different agent on the Policy Server.

Configuration of the ProxySG appliance’s realm must be coordinated with configuration of the SiteMinder policy server. Each must be configured to be aware of the other. In addition, certain SiteMinder responses must be configured so that BCAAA gets the information the ProxySG appliance needs.

Synopsis

Allows you to create and manage SiteMinder realms.

Syntax

#(config) security siteminder [subcommands]

Subcommands

#(config) security siteminder create-realm realm_name

Creates the specified SiteMinder realm

#(config) security siteminder delete-realm realm_name

Deletes the specified SiteMinder realm.

#(config) security siteminder edit-realm realm_name

Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

#(config) security siteminder view [realm_name]

Displays the configuration of all SiteMinder realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.
Submodes

%(config) security siteminder edit-realm realm_name

This changes the prompt to:

%(config siteminder realm_name)

Commands in this submode include:

%(config siteminder realm_name) add-header-responses {enable | disable}

Enable if your Web applications need information from the SiteMinder policy server responses.

%(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent agent-name

Specifies the alternate agent.

%(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent encrypted-shared-secret encrypted-shared-secret

Specifies the alternate agent secret in encrypted format.

%(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent host host

The host ID or the IP address of the system that contains the alternate agent.

%(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent port port

The port where the agent listens.

%(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent shared-secret secret

Specifies the alternate agent secret.

%(config siteminder realm_name) alternate-agent always-redirect-offbox

Enables or disables SSO.

%(config certificate realm_name) authorization [ignore-user-list {add | clear | remove}]

Manages the ignore-user-list, which is the list of those to ignore if they are returned as search results.

%(config siteminder realm_name) authorization realm {none | realm-name realm_name}

Specifies the authorization realm to use. Only LDAP, XML, and local realms are valid authorization realms.

%(config siteminder realm_name) authorization search-filter search_filter

Specifies the search filter that should be used during a search of the LDAP server. The filter can contain policy substitutions including $(cs-username).

%(config siteminder realm_name) authorization search-realm LDAP_realm

Specifies the name of the LDAP search realm.

%(config siteminder realm_name) authorization user-attribute {fqdn | LDAP_attribute_name}

Specifies the user-attribute (fully qualified domain name or an LDAP attribute name) to be used during a search of the LDAP server.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config siteminder realm_name) authorization username
   {determine-by-search | use-full-username |
    username_for_authorization}
   Specifies the way a username should be determined. The default is the attribute cn, which
   specifies the user’s relative name.

#(config siteminder realm_name) always-redirect-offbox { enable |
   disable}
   The ProxySG appliance realm can be configured to redirect to an off-box
   authentication service always. The URL of the service is configured in the scheme
   definition on the SiteMinder policy server. The ProxySG appliance realm is then
   configured with always-redirect-offbox enabled.

#(config siteminder realm_name) case-sensitive { enable | disable}
   Specifies whether the SiteMinder server is case-sensitive.

#(config siteminder realm_name) cookie { persistent { enable | disable} |
   verify-ip { enable | disable}
   Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address
   of the cookie.

#(config siteminder realm_name) display-name display_name
   Specifies the display name for this realm.

#(config siteminder realm_name) exit
   Exits configure siteminder-realm mode and returns to configure mode.

#(config siteminder realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
   Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

#(config siteminder realm_name) log-out { challenge { enable | disable} |
   display-time seconds}
   Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

#(config siteminder realm_name) no alternate-agent
   Clears the alternate agent configuration.

#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent agent name agent_name
   Specifies the primary agent.

#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent
   encrypted-shared-secret encrypted-shared-secret
   Specifies the primary agent secret in encrypted format.

#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent host host
   The host ID or the IP address of the system that contains the primary agent.

#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent port port
   The port where the agent listens.

#(config siteminder realm_name) primary-agent shared-secret secret
   Specifies the primary agent secret.

#(config siteminder realm_name) protected-resource-name
   resource-name
   The protected resource name is the same as the resource name on the SiteMinder server that has
   rules and policy defined for it.

#(config siteminder realm_name) refresh-time { credential-refresh
   seconds | rejected-credentials-refresh seconds |
   surrogate-refresh seconds}
   Sets the refresh time for credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

#(config siteminder realm_name) rename new_realm_name
   Renames this realm to new_realm_name.
#(config siteminder realm_name) server-mode {failover | round-robin}
Behavior of the server. Failover mode falls back to one of the other servers if the primary one is down. Round-robin modes specifies that all of the servers should be used together in a round-robin approach. Failover is the default

#(config siteminder realm_name) siteminder-server create server_name
Creates a SiteMinder server.

#(config siteminder realm_name) siteminder-server delete server_name
Deletes a SiteMinder server.

#(config siteminder realm_name) siteminder-server edit server_name
This changes the prompt to #(config siteminder realm_name server_name).

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) accounting-port port_number
The default is 44441. The ports should be the same as the ports configured on the SiteMinder policy server. The valid port range is 1-65535.

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) authentication-port port_number
The default is 44442. The ports should be the same as the ports configured on the SiteMinder server. The valid port range is 1-65535.

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) authorization-port port_number
The default is 44443. The ports should be the same as the ports configured on the SiteMinder server. The valid port range is 1-65535.

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) connection-increment number
The default is 1. The connection increment specifies how many connections to open at a time if more are needed and the maximum is not exceeded.

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) exit
Leaves the server_name prompt and returns to the SiteMinder realm_name prompt.

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) ip-address ip_address
The IP address of the SiteMinder server.

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) max-connections number
The default is 256. The maximum number of connections is 32768.

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) min-connections number
The default is 1.

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) timeout seconds
The default is 60.

#(config siteminder realm_name server_name) view
Displays the server's configuration.

#(config siteminder realm_name) ssl {enable | disable}
Disables/enables SSL communication between the ProxySG appliance and BCAA.

#(config siteminder realm_name) ssl-device-profile ssl_device_profile_name
Specifies the device profile to use.

#(config siteminder realm_name) timeout seconds
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

`#(config siteminder realm_name) validate-client-ip {disable | enable}`

Enables validation of the client IP address. If the client IP address in the SSO cookie might be valid yet different from the current request client IP address, due to downstream proxies or other devices, disable client IP validation. The SiteMinder agents participating in SSO with the ProxySG appliance should also be modified. The TransientIPCheck variable should be set to `yes` to enable IP validation and `no` to disable it.

Enable is the default.

`#(config siteminder realm_name) view`

Displays this realm’s configuration.

`#(config siteminder realm_name) virtual-url url`

Specifies the virtual URL to use for this SiteMinder realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

```
#(config) security siteminder edit-realm test2
#(config siteminder test2) server-mode round-robin
  ok
#(config siteminder test2) ssl enable
  ok
#(config siteminder test2) exit
```
## #(config) security transparent-proxy-auth

### Synopsis
Configures authentication method for transparent proxies.

### Syntax

```
#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth [subcommands]
```

### Subcommands

```
#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth method {ip | cookie}
```

Specifies whether to use IP or cookie surrogate credentials.

```
#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth meta-refresh {enable | disable}
```

Enables or disables meta-refresh style redirects with Internet Explorer. Some browsers, such as Internet Explorer, have a hard-coded limit on the number of server redirects that they follow for a given request. For example, if you are browsing a website that performs several redirects, the redirects added by the ProxySG appliance authentication subsystem can exceed the browser’s limit. The end result is that the browser will refuse to load the webpage, because it will not follow all of the redirects. You can use the `security transparent-proxy-auth meta-refresh enable` command to allow the ProxySG appliance to perform redirects for authentication without exceeding the browser’s limit. When this CLI setting is enabled, the ProxySG appliance redirects the browser by sending an HTTP 200 response with a meta-refresh header, rather than by sending an HTTP 302 or 307 response.

### Examples

```
#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth method cookie
```
```
#(config) security transparent-proxy-auth meta-refresh enable
```
#(config) security trust-package

**Synopsis**

Configures the settings for trust package updates. The trust package contains updates to the CA Certificate Lists (CCLs) and their associated CA certificates for the browser-trusted and image-validation CCLs.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) security trust-package [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config) security trust-package download-path url
```

Specifies the URL from which the ProxySG appliance should download trust package updates. By default, the URL is set to `http://appliance.bluecoat.com/sgos/trust_package.bctp`. If you want to host your own download site, you can change the `download-path` to an on-site URL. In this case you must manually post the `trust_package.bctp` from the Blue Coat website on your download server; the ProxySG appliance can only download and install trust packages created by Blue Coat Systems, Inc.

```plaintext
#(config) security trust-package auto-update {enable | disable | interval days}
```

Enables or disables automatic trust package updates and/or sets the update interval. By default, automatic updates are enabled and have an interval of seven days. The interval can range from 1-30 days.

**For More Information**

- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

**Example**

```plaintext
#(config) security trust-package download-path http://download.acme.com/bluecoat/trust_package.bctp
#(config) security trust-package auto-update interval 10
```
#(config) security users

**Synopsis**

Allows administrators to manage user log ins, logouts and refresh data.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) security users
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config users) [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config users) authorization-refresh [ip-addresses prefix [realm_name]]
| realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]]
```

Refreshes authorization data for the specified IP address, realm (or all realms), or user.

The IP address subnet notation is based on Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR):

- 1.2.3.4: the IP address 1.2.3.4
- 1.2.3.0/24: the subnet 1.2.3.0 with netmask 255.255.255.0

The username pattern is a glob-based pattern, supporting three operators:

- "": match zero or more characters
- "": match exactly one character
- [x-y]: match any character in the character range from 'x' to 'y'

```plaintext
#(config users) credentials-refresh [ip-addresses prefix [realm_name]]
| realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]]
```

Refreshes credential data for the specified IP address, realm (or all realms), or user.

```plaintext
#(config users) exit
```

Returns to the #(config) prompt.

```plaintext
#(config users) log-out [ip-addresses prefix [realm_name]]
| realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]]
```

Logs out the specified IP address, realm (or all realms), or user.

```plaintext
#(config users) surrogates-refresh [ip-addresses prefix [realm_name]]
| realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]]
```

Refreshes surrogate data for the specified IP address, realm (or all realms), or user.

```plaintext
#(config users) view-detailed [ip-addresses prefix [realm_name]]
| realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]]
```

See a detailed view of users, sorted by IP address, realm, or username.

```plaintext
#(config users) view [ip-addresses prefix [realm_name]]
| realms [realm_name] | users glob_user_name [realm_name]]
```

See all logged-in users sorted by IP address, realm, or username.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```plaintext
#(config) security users
```

```plaintext
#(config users) surrogates-refresh ip-addresses 10.25.36.0/24
```
#(config) security username

**Synopsis**

Sets the console username.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) security username name
```

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

**Example**

```plaintext
#(config) security username QATest
```
#(config security windows-domains)

Configures a Windows domain for features that require the appliance to join a domain, such as encrypted MAPI and IWA Direct.

First, you must create a hostname for the ProxySG appliance; the hostname you create must be unique within your Active Directory. You will not be able to join any domains until you have created a hostname. And, after you have joined a domain, you will not be able to modify this hostname. To do so, you would have to leave all domains you have joined and then rejoin them after you save a new hostname.

After you create the domain, you can join one or more Windows domains. To join a domain, you must first create a domain name alias and then you can join the domain using this alias.

Syntax

#(config) security windows-domains [subcommands]

Subcommands

#(config security windows-domains) create domain_name_alias

#(config security windows-domains) delete domain_name_alias

#(config security windows-domains) group-cache [disable | enable]

This subcommand was added in SGOS 6.5.7.7.

#(config security windows-domains) hostname ProxySGappliance_hostname

#(config security windows-domains) inline domain-details domain_name_alias

#(config security windows-domains) join domain_name_alias DNS_domain_name join_account_name [join_account_password]

#(config security windows-domains) join-container domain_name_alias DNS_domain_name container_DN join_account_name [join_account_password]

#(config security windows-domains) leave host domain_name [join_account_name [join_account_password]]

#(config security windows-domains) rejoin domain_name_alias join_account_name [join_account_password]

#(config security windows-domains) snmp domain_name_alias

This subcommand was added in SGOS 6.5.7.1. See #(config security windows-domains domain_name_alias)snmp on page 380.

#(config security windows-domains) view

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

#(config) security windows-domains

#(config security windows-domains) hostname HQ1

#(config security windows-domains) create cal
#(config security windows-domains) join cal corp.example.com
    administrator testpass
#(config security windows-domains domain_name_alias)snmp

(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Configure SNMP trap settings for the specified Windows domain.

Syntax

```text
#(config) security windows-domains
#(config windows-domains)edit alias
#(config windows-domains alias)snmp [subcommands]
```

where `alias` is the domain name alias.

Subcommands

```text
#(config windows-domains alias)snmp auth-traps [enable|disable]

Enable or disable SNMP traps for the Windows domain.

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp avg-latency-last-minute-threshold <ms>

Configure Average Schannel latency last minute threshold (in milliseconds).

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp avg-latency-last-3minutes-threshold <ms>

Configure Average schannel latency last minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp avg-latency-last-5minutes-threshold <ms>

Configure Average schannel latency last 5 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp avg-latency-last-15minutes-threshold <ms>

Configure Average schannel latency last 15 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp avg-latency-last-60minutes-threshold <ms>

Configure Average schannel latency last 60 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp failed-auths-last-minute-threshold <ms>

Configure failed authentications last minute threshold.

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp failed-auths-last-3minutes-threshold <ms>

Configure failed authentications last 3 minutes threshold.

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp failed-auths-last-5minutes-threshold

Configure failed authentications last 5 minutes threshold.

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp failed-auths-last-15minutes-threshold

Configure failed authentications last 15 minutes threshold.

#(config windows-domains alias)snmp failed-auths-last-60minutes-threshold
```


Configure failed authentications last 60 minutes threshold.

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp min-latency-last-minute-threshold <ms>
```

Configure minimum Schannel latency last minute threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp min-latency-last-3minutes-threshold <ms>
```

Configure minimum Schannel latency last 3 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp min-latency-last-5minutes-threshold <ms>
```

Configure minimum Schannel latency last 5 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp min-latency-last-15minutes-threshold <ms>
```

Configure minimum Schannel latency last 15 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp min-latency-last-60minutes-threshold <ms>
```

Configure minimum Schannel latency last 60 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp max-latency-last-minute-threshold <ms>
```

Configure maximum Schannel latency last minute threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp max-latency-last-3minutes-threshold <ms>
```

Configure maximum Schannel latency last 3 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp max-latency-last-5minutes-threshold <ms>
```

Configure maximum Schannel latency last 5 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp max-latency-last-15minutes-threshold <ms>
```

Configure maximum Schannel latency last 15 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp max-latency-last-60minutes-threshold <ms>
```

Configure maximum Schannel latency last 60 minutes threshold (in milliseconds).

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp schannel-resets
```

Configure number of Schannel resets threshold.

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp schannel-timeouts
```

Configure number of Schannel timeouts threshold.

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp schannel-waiters
```

Configure number of Schannel current waiters threshold.

```bash
#(config windows-domains alias) snmp view
```

View current SNMP settings for the domain.

**Example**

```bash
#(config windows-domains my_domain) snmp auth enable
#(config windows-domains my_domain)
```
#(config) security windows-sso

In a Windows SSO realm, the client is never challenged for authentication. Instead, the BCAAA agent collects information about the current logged on user from the domain controller and/or by querying the client machine. Then the IP address of an incoming client request is mapped to a user identity in the domain. If authorization information is also needed, then another realm (LDAP or local) must be created.

**Synopsis**

Allows you to create and manage Windows SSO realms.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) security windows-sso [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) security windows-sso create-realm realm_name
   Creates the specified Windows SSO realm.

#(config) security windows-sso edit-realm realm_name
   Changes the prompt to allow configuration for the specified realm_name.
```

```
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) alternate-agent {host hostname | port port_number}
   Specifies the alternate agent hostname and port number.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) authorization {realm-name authorization-realm-name | username username | no authorization-realm-name | username | self}
   Specifies the realm name, which can be self, and username for authorization. No clears the realm and username.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) cookie {persistent {disable | enable} | verify-ip {disable | enable}}
   Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address of the cookie.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) exit
   Leaves the windows-sso edit-realm mode.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
   Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) no alternate-agent
   Removes the alternate agent.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) primary-agent {host hostname | port port_number}
   Specifies the primary agent hostname and port number.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) refresh-time {authorization-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}
   Sets the refresh time for authorization and surrogates.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) rename new_realm_name
   Renames the current realm to new_realm_name.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) ssl {enable | disable}
   Enables or disables SSL between the ProxySG appliance and the BCAAAA service.
```
SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) ssl-device-profile
    ssl_device_profile_name
    Specifies the device profile to use

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) sso-type {query-client | query-dc | query-dc-client}
    Selects the method of querying: client, domain controller, or both. The default is domain controller.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) test-authentication
    IP_address
    Tests the Windows SSO and BCAA configuration to ensure that the ProxySG appliance can successfully map an IP address to a user in your Active Directory.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) timeout seconds
    The time allotted for each request attempt. The default is 60 seconds.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) view
    Displays this realm’s configuration.

SGOS#(config windows-sso realm_name) virtual-url url
    Specifies the virtual URL to use for this SiteMinder realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

#(config) security windows-sso delete-realm realm_name
    Deletes the specified Windows SSO realm.

#(config) security windows-sso view [realm_name]
    Displays the configuration of all Windows SSO realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.

For More Information

☞ SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config) security windows-sso edit-realm test2
SGOS#(config windows-sso test2) ssotype query-client-dc
    ok
SGOS#(config windows-sso test2) exit
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) security xml

An XML realm uses XML messages to request authentication and authorization information from an HTTP XML service (the XML responder that runs on an external server). The XML realm (the XML requestor) supports both HTTP GET and HTTP POST methods to request an XML response. The XML messages are based on SOAP 1.2.

The XML responder service accepts XML requests from the ProxySG appliance, communicates with an authentication or authorization server, and responds with the result. When the realm is used to authenticate users, it challenges for Basic credentials. The username and password are then sent to the XML responder to authenticate and authorize the user.

The XML realm can place the username and password in the HTTP headers of the request or in the body of the XML POST request. If the credentials are placed in the HTTP headers, the Web server must do the authentication and the XML service just handles authorization. If credentials are placed in the XML request body, the XML service handles both authentication and authorization.

Synopsis

Allows you to configure and manage XML realms.

Syntax

#(config) security xml [subcommands]

Subcommands

#(config) security xml create-realm realm_name

Creates the specified XML realm

#(config) security xml delete-realm realm_name

Deletes the specified XML realm.

#(config) security xml edit-realm realm_name

Changes the prompt. See Submodes for details.

#(config) security xml view [realm_name]

Displays the configuration of all XML realms or just the configuration for realm_name if specified.

Submodes

#(config) security xml edit-realm realm_name

This changes the prompt to:

#(config xml realm_name)

Commands in the xml realm_name mode:

#(config xml realm_name) alternate-responder {host | port}

Specifies the alternate responder host and port.

#(config xml realm_name) alternate-responder path {authenticate authenticate_path | authorize authorize_path}

Specifies the alternate responder path for authentication and authorization requests.

#(config xml realm_name) authorization {default-group-name group-name | username use-full-username | realm {none | username | self}}

Specifies the default group name, username, and realm for authorization.
#(config xml realm_name) connections count
Specifies the number of connections to the responder.

#(config xml realm_name) cookie {persistent {enable | disable} | verify-ip {enable | disable}]
Specifies whether to enable persistent or session cookies, and whether to verify the IP address
of the cookie.

#(config xml realm_name) display-name display_name
Specifies the display name for this realm.

#(config xml realm_name) exit
Exits configure XML-realm mode and returns to configure mode.

#(config xml realm_name) inactivity-timeout seconds
Specifies the amount of time a session can be inactive before being logged out.

#(config xml realm_name) log-out {challenge {enable | disable} | display-time seconds}
Allows you to challenge the user after log out and define the log out page display time.

#(config xml realm_name) no alternate-responder
Removes the alternate-responder.

#(config xml realm_name) no default-group-name
Removes the default-group-name.

#(config xml realm_name) one-time-passwords {enable | disable}
Allows you to use one-time passwords for authentication. The default is disabled.

#(config xml realm_name) primary-responder {host | port}
Specifies the primary responder host and port.

#(config xml realm_name) primary-responder path {authenticate authenticate_path | authorize authorize_path}
Specifies the primary responder path for authentication and authorization requests.

#(config xml realm_name) refresh-time {authorization-refresh seconds | credential-refresh seconds | rejected-credentials-refresh seconds | surrogate-refresh seconds}
Sets the refresh time for authorization, credential, rejected credentials cache, and surrogates.

#(config xml realm_name) rename new_realm_name
Renames this realm to new_realm_name.

#(config xml realm_name) retry count
Specifies the number of times for the system to retry a request. The default is not to retry a request.

#(config xml realm_name) server-authentication {none | origin | proxy}
Enables/disables the forwarding of BASIC credentials of the authenticated user to the origin
content server or for proxy authentication. Flush the entries for a realm if the
server-authentication value is changed to ensure that the server-authentication value is
immediately applied.

You can only choose one server-authentication method:

- If set to origin, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream server.
- If set to proxy, BASIC credentials are forwarded to an upstream proxy.
- If set to none, forwarding BASIC credentials is disabled.

#(config xml realm_name) timeout seconds
Specifies the XML request timeout. This is the number of seconds the ProxySG appliance
allows for each request attempt before giving up on a server and trying another server. Within a
timeout multiple packets can be sent to the server, in case the network is busy and packets are lost. The default request timeout is 10 seconds

**(config xml realm_name) view**
Displays this realm’s configuration.

**(config xml realm_name) virtual-url virtual URL**
Specifies the virtual URL to use for this realm. If no URL is specified the global transparent proxy virtual URL is used.

**(config xml realm_name) xml {credentials [header | request] |
request-interested [enable | disable] |
username username_parameter}**
Specifies the user credential location and the username parameter. The username parameter is passed in the request when this realm is used for authentication or authorization.

**For More Information**
- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

**(config) security xml edit-realm xml14**
**(config xml xml14) display-name ok**
**(config xml xml14) server-authentication origin ok**
**(config xml xml14) exit**
#(config) service-groups

Synopsis
Proxy services are defined on the Proxy Services page (Configuration > Services > Proxy Services) and are grouped together into predefined service groups based on the type of traffic they handle. Service groups allow you to:

- Intercept and bypass traffic at the service group level
- Create and delete custom service groups

Syntax
`#(config) service-groups`

This changes the prompt to:
`#(config service-groups)`

Subcommands

`#(config service-groups) bypass-all service-group`
Sets all listeners in a service group to bypass.

`#(config service-groups) create service-group`
Creates a proxy service group.

`#(config service-groups) delete service-group`
Deletes a proxy service group.

`#(config service-groups) exit`
Returns to the `#(config)` prompt.

`#(config service-groups) intercept-all service-group`
Sets all listeners in a service group to intercept.

`#(config service-groups) view service-group`
Shows details about a service group. View details about all the service groups by pressing <enter>.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide, Proxy Services chapter

Example

Service Group: Encrypted
Action: intercept-all
Services: HTTPS, IMAPS, POP3S

Service Group: Interactive
Action: intercept-all
Services: Telnet, MS Terminal Services, Shell, SSH, VNC, X Windows

Service Group: Intranet
Action: mixed
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

Services: Endpoint Mapper, CIFS, Novell GroupWise, Citrix ICA, IMAP, Kerberos, LDAP, Lotus Notes, LPD, MS SQL Server, MySQL, NFS, Novell NCP, Oracle, POP3, SMTP, SnapMirror, Sybase SQL
#(config) session-monitor

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure options to monitor RADIUS accounting messages and to maintain a session table based on the information in these messages.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) session-monitor
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config session-monitor)
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config session-monitor) attributes
Changes the prompt to allow configuration of session-monitor attributes.

#(config session-monitor attributes) add attribute_name
Start storing an attribute.

#(config session-monitor attributes) exit
Exit to the session-monitor prompt.

#(config session-monitor attributes) remove attribute_name
Stop storing an attribute.

#(config session-monitor attributes) view
View the list of attributes being stored.
```

**Note:** To change the configuration of an existing RADIUS attribute that is in use in the session monitor, you must remove it from the system and add it again with the new configuration:

1. Back up the ProxySG policy and install a new blank policy.
2. Remove the attribute from the RADIUS session monitor using the `#(config session-monitor attributes) remove` command.
3. Remove the attribute from RADIUS configuration using the `#(config radius attributes) remove` command, and then restart the appliance.
4. Add the attribute with new configuration using the `#(config radius attributes) add` command.
5. Add the attribute to the RADIUS session monitor using the `#(config session-monitor attributes) add` command.
6. Restore the policy you backed up in step 1.

```plaintext
#(config session-monitor) cluster disable
Disables cluster support.

#(config session-monitor) cluster enable
Enables cluster support. The group address must be set before the cluster can be enabled.

#(config session-monitor) cluster grace-period seconds
Set the time to keep session transactions in memory while waiting for slave logins. This can be set to allow session table synchronization to occur after the synchronization-delay has expired. The default is 30 seconds; the range is 0 to 2^31-1 seconds.

#(config session-monitor) cluster no group-address IP_Address
Set or clear (the default) the failover group IP address. This must be an existing failover group address.
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

%(config session-monitor) cluster port port
Set the TCP/IP port for the session replication control. The default is 55555.

%(config session-monitor) cluster synchronization-delay seconds
Set the maximum time to wait for session table synchronization. The default is zero; the range is from 0 to 2^{31} - 1 seconds. During this time evaluation of $(session.username)$ is delayed, so proxy traffic might also be delayed.

%(config session-monitor) cluster retry-delay seconds
Specify the maximum delay between connection retries. The valid range is 1-1440 minutes.

%(config session-monitor) disable
disable
Disable (the default) session monitoring.

%(config session-monitor) enable
enable
Enable session monitoring.

%(config session-monitor) max-entries integer
max-entries integer
The maximum number of entries in the session table. The default is 500,000; the range is from 1 to 2,000,000. If the table reaches the maximum, additional START messages are ignored.

%(config session-monitor) radius acct-listen-port port
radius acct-listen-port
The port number where the ProxySG appliance listens for accounting messages.

%(config session-monitor) radius authentication {disable | enable}
radius authentication {disable | enable}
Enable or disable (the default) the authentication of RADIUS messages using the shared secret. Note that the shared secret must be configured before authentication is enabled.

%(config session-monitor) radius encrypted-shared-secret encrypted-secret
radius encrypted-shared-secret encrypted-secret
Specify the shared secret (in encrypted form) used for RADIUS protocol authentication. The secret is decrypted using the configuration-passwords-key.

%(config session-monitor) radius no shared-secret
radius no shared-secret
Clears the shared secret used for RADIUS protocol authentication.

%(config session-monitor) radius respond {disable | enable}
radius respond {disable | enable}
Enable (the default) or disable generation of RADIUS responses.

%(config session-monitor) radius shared-secret plaintext_secret
radius shared-secret plaintext_secret
Specify the shared secret used for RADIUS protocol in plaintext.

%(config session-monitor) timeout minutes
timeout minutes
The amount of time before a session table entry assumes a STOP message has been sent. The default is 120 minutes; the range is from 0 to 65535 minutes. Zero indicates no timeout.

%(config session-monitor) view
view
View the session-monitor configuration.

For More Information

❐ SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS%(config) session-monitor
SGOS%(config session-monitor) view
General:
Status: disabled
Entry timeout: 120 minutes
Maximum entries: 500000
Cluster support: disabled
Cluster port: 55555
Cluster group address: none
Synchronization delay: 0
Synchronization grace period: 30
Accounting protocol: radius
Radius accounting:
Listen ports:
Accounting: 1813
Responses: Enabled
Authentication: Disabled
Shared secret: ************
#(config) sg-client

**Synopsis**

Replaced by #(config) proxy-client. See #(config) proxy-client on page 253.
#(config) shell

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure options for the shell.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) shell [subcommands]
```

**Subcommands**

- **shell max-connections**
  
  Maximum number of shell connections. Allowed values are between 1 and 65535.

- **shell no {max-connections | prompt | realm-banner | welcome-banner}**
  
  Disables the prompt, realm-banner, welcome-banner, and max connections.

- **shell prompt**
  
  Sets the prompt that the user sees in the shell. If the string includes white space, enclose the string in quotes.

- **shell realm-banner**
  
  Sets the realm banner that the user sees when logging into a realm through the shell. If the string includes white space, enclose the string in quotes.

- **shell welcome-banner**
  
  Sets the welcome banner that the users sees when logging into the shell. If the string includes white space, enclose the string in quotes.

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) shell prompt "Telnet Shell >"
   ok
SGOS#(config) shell welcome-banner "Welcome to the Blue Coat Telnet Shell"
   ok
```
#(config) show

- # show on page 79
#(config) smbv2

Synopsis
Configure the CIFS proxy for SMBv2 connections. See #(config) cifs on page 149 for configuring settings for SMBv1 connections.

Syntax
SGOS#(config) smbv2
This changes the prompt to:
SGOS#(config smbv2)

Subcommands
SGOS#(config smbv2) disable
Disable protocol-based acceleration for SMBv2 connections. All SMBv2 connections are passed through, allowing the CIFS proxy to accelerate them with byte caching and compression techniques (if enabled for the CIFS service). No object caching is performed on SMBv2 connections.

SGOS#(config smbv2) downgrade
Forces the negotiation of SMBv1 for the connection. If this isn’t possible (for example, if the client negotiates SMBv2 directly or CIFS SMBv1 protocol acceleration is disabled), the connection is passed through, allowing it to be accelerated with byte caching and compression techniques (if enabled for the CIFS service). No object caching is performed on these connections.

SGOS#(config smbv2) enable
Unsigned SMBv2 connections are accelerated with object caching, byte caching (if enabled for the CIFS service), and compression (if enabled). SMBv2 connections that require signing are passed through, allowing the CIFS proxy to accelerate them with byte caching and compression techniques (if enabled).

SGOS#(config smbv2) exit
Returns to the (config) submode.

SGOS#(config smbv2) view {configuration | statistics}
Views the configuration or statistics for SMBv2.

For More Information
- “Accelerating File Sharing” chapter in the SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
- #(config) cifs on page 149

Example
SGOS#(config)smbv2
SGOS#(config smbv2) view configuration
SMBv2:  Enabled
SGOS#(config smbv2) disable
ok
SGOS#(config smbv2) view configuration
SMBv2:  Disabled
SGOS#(config smbv2) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config) smtp

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure settings for sending email notification to administrators. Note that this command configures the SMTP server and the sender’s email address; the recipient list is configured with the `event-log mail add` command.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) smtp
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config smtp)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config smtp) exit
```

Exit configure SMTP mode and returns to configure mode.

```
#(config smtp) from from-address
```

Specify the sender’s email address; this address displays in the From field for email notifications that the ProxySG appliance sends.

```
#(config smtp) no server
```

Clear the configured SMTP server.

```
#(config smtp) server domainname | ip-address [port]
```

Configure the mail server. You can specify a domain name that resolves to an IPv4 or IPv6 address, or an IPv4 or IPv6 address of the mail server. The default port, if not specified, is 25.

```
#(config smtp) view
```

Show SMTP server and from-address settings.

**For More Information**

- `#(config) event-log` on page 175

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) smtp
SGOS#(config smtp) server mail.test.com
  ok
SGOS#(config smtp) from john.smith@test.com
```
#(config) snmp

## Synopsis
Use this command to set SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) options for the ProxySG appliance. The ProxySG appliance can be viewed using an SNMP management station and supports MIB-2 (RFC 1213).

## Syntax
```
#(config) snmp
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config snmp)
```

## Subcommands
- `<command>` **authentication-failure-traps** {enable | disable}
  Enables or disables traps for SNMP protocol authentication failures.

- `<command>` **create** {community community_string | user username}
  Creates a new SNMPv1–v2c community or new SNMPv3 user.

- `<command>` **delete** {community community_string | user username}
  Deletes an SNMPv1–v2c community string or SNMPv3 user.

- `<command>` **edit** {community community_string | user username}
  Allows you to edit an SNMPv1–v2c community’s access, traps, and informs, or edit an SNMPv3 user’s configuration, access, traps, and informs. See `#(config snmp community <community-string>)` on page 400 and `#(config snmp user <username>)` on page 402.

- `<command>` **engine-id** {default | set hexadecimal_string}
  Sets the engine ID to the default value or allows you to set it with hexadecimal digits.

- `<command>` **exit**
  Exits configure SNMP mode and returns to configure mode.

- `<command>` **no** {sys-contact | sys-location}
  Clears the system contact string or the system location string.

- `<command>` **protocol snmpv1** {disable | enable}
  Enables or disables the use of SNMPv1.

- `<command>` **protocol snmpv2c** {disable | enable}
  Enables or disables the use of SNMPv2c.

- `<command>` **protocol snmpv3** {disable | enable}
  Enables or disables the use of SNMPv3.

- `<command>` **sys-contact string**
  Sets the appliance’s contact name for display in MIBs.

- `<command>` **sys-location string**
  Sets the appliance’s location for display in MIBs.

- `<command>` **test-trap string**
  Sends a policy test trap with the given text string to test communication. Quotes are required if the message contains whitespace.

- `<command>` **traps** {disable | enable}
  Disables or enables the use of all traps and informs.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config snmp) view
Displays the SNMP configuration.

#(config snmp) view {communities | users}
Displays SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c communities or SNMPv3 users.

For More Information

❐ SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
❐ For details about configuring SNMPv1 and SNMPv2, see #(config snmp community <community-string>) on page 400. For details about configuring SNMPv3, see #(config snmp user <username>) on page 402.

Example

SGOS#(config) snmp
SGOS#(config snmp) authorize-traps
  ok
SGOS#(config snmp) exit
SGOS#(config)
`(config snmp community <community-string>)`  

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure community strings for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c, their access control, and their trap and inform recipients.

**Syntax**

```
#(config snmp) edit community community_string
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config snmp community community_string)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config snmp community community_string) add {inform | trap}
```

Adds an SNMPv2c inform receiver or a trap receiver for this community.

```
#(config snmp community community_string) add inform udp IP[:port]
```

Sends SNMPv2c UDP informs to this IP address.

```
#(config snmp community community_string) add trap {snmpv1 | snmpv2c} IP[:port]
```

Adds an SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c trap receiver.

```
#(config snmp community community_string) add trap snmpv1 udp IP[:port]
```

Sends SNMPv1 UDP traps to this IP address.

```
#(config snmp community community_string) add trap snmpv2c udp IP[:port]
```

Sends SNMPv2c UDP traps to this IP address.

```
#(config snmp community community_string) authorization access-list
```

Enables you to configure a list of allowed source addresses for SNMP requests; changes the prompt to `(config snmp community access community_string)`.

```
#(config snmp community access community_string) add {IP | subnet}
```

Allows requests from the specified address.

```
#(config snmp community access community_string) clear
```

Clears the access list.

```
#(config snmp community access community_string) disable
```

Disables the use of the access list and allows requests from all addresses.

```
#(config snmp community access community_string) enable
```

Enables use of the access list.

```
#(config snmp community access community_string) exit
```

Returns to the `(config snmp community community_string)` mode.

```
#(config snmp community access community_string) remove {IP | subnet}
```

Do not allow requests from this address.

```
#(config snmp community access community_string) view
```

Displays the community’s access list.

```
#(config snmp community community_string) authorization mode {none | read-only | read-write}
```

Allows you to set the read or write access allowed for SNMP requests: none (do not allow any remote access), read-only, or read-write.
Privileged Mode Configure Commands

```shell
#(config snmp community community_string) remove {inform | trap}
Removes an SNMPv2c inform receiver or an SNMPv1 trap receiver.
```

```shell
#(config snmp community community_string) remove inform udp IP[:port]
Stops sending SNMPv2c UDP informs to this address.
```

```shell
#(config snmp community community_string) remove trap {snmpv1 | snmpv2c}
Removes an SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c trap receiver.
```

```shell
#(config snmp community community_string) remove trap snmpv1 udp IP[:port]
Stops sending SNMPv1 UDP traps to this address.
```

```shell
#(config snmp community community_string) remove trap snmpv2c udp IP[:port]
Stops sending SNMPv2c UDP traps to this address.
```

```shell
#(config snmp community community_string) view
Displays the community’s authorization, traps, and informs.
```

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
- For general SNMP commands, see `#(config) snmp` on page 398. To configure SNMP for SNMPv3, see `#(config snmp user <username>)` on page 402.
#(config snmp user <username>)

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure users for SNMPv3, their access control, and their trap and inform recipients.

**Syntax**

```
#(config snmp) edit user username
```

This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config snmp user username)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config snmp user username) add \{inform | trap\} 
```

Adds a trap or inform receiver for this user.

```
#(config snmp user username) add inform udp IP[:port]
```

Sends SNMPv3 UDP informs to this IP address.

```
#(config snmp user username) add trap udp IP[:port]
```

Sends SNMPv3 UDP traps to this IP address.

```
#(config snmp user username) authentication
```

Configures the user’s authentication settings.

```
#(config snmp user username) authentication encrypted localized_key <encrypted_key>
```

Enter an encrypted localized key for an engine ID.

```
#(config snmp user username) authentication encrypted passphrase <encrypted_passphrase>
```

Enter an encrypted passphrase.

```
#(config snmp user username) authentication localized-key <engine_id> <key>
```

Enter a clear text localized key for an engine ID (in hexadecimal format).

```
#(config snmp user username) authentication mode \{md5 | sha\}
```

Enable authentication with MD5 or SHA based hashing.

```
#(config snmp user username) authentication mode none
```

Disable the use of authentication.

```
#(config snmp user username) authentication no localized_key <engine_id>
```

Remove a localized key.

```
#(config snmp user username) authentication passphrase <passphrase>
```

Enter a cleartext passphrase.

```
#(config snmp user username) authorization
```

Configures the access authorized for this user.

```
#(config snmp user username) authorization mode \{none | read-only | read-write\}
```

Allows you to set the read or write access allowed for SNMP requests: none (do not allow any remote access), read-only, or read-write.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

```plaintext
# (config snmp user username) exit
Returns to (config snmp) mode.

# (config snmp user username) privacy
Configures the user’s privacy settings.

# (config snmp user username) privacy encrypted_localized_key
  <engine_id> <encrypted_key>
  Enter an encrypted localized key for the engine ID.

# (config snmp user username) privacy encrypted_passphrase
  <encrypted_passphrase>
  Enter an encrypted passphrase.

# (config snmp user username) privacy localized_key <engine_id> <key>
  Enter a clear text localized key for an engine ID (in hexadecimal format).

# (config snmp user username) privacy mode {none | aes | des}
  Set the encryption mode to none (disable the use of privacy), or enable privacy with AES or DES based encryption.

# (config snmp user username) privacy no localized_key
  <engine_id>
  Remove a localized key.

# (config snmp user username) privacy passphrase <passphrase>
  Enter a cleartext passphrase.

# (config snmp user username) remove inform udp IP[:port]
  Stop sending SNMPv3 UDP informs to this IP address.

# (config snmp user username) remove trap udp IP[:port]
  Stop sending SNMPv3 UDP traps to this IP address.

# (config snmp user username) view
  Displays the user’s configuration, authorization, traps, and informs.
```

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
- For general SNMP commands, see # (config) snmp on page 398. To configure SNMP for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c, see # (config snmp community <community-string>) on page 400.
#(config) socks-gateways

## Synopsis

Use this command to set the SOCKS gateways settings.

## Syntax

```
#(config) socks-gateways
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config socks-gateways)
```

## Subcommands

```
#(config socks-gateways) create gateway_alias gateway_host
   SOCKS_port [group=gateway_alias] [version=4 | 5] [user=username
   | password=password | encrypted-password=encrypted-password]
```

Creates a SOCKS gateway.

```
#(config socks-gateways) create {gateway | group group_name}
```

```
#(config socks-gateways) delete {all | gateway gateway_alias | group
   group_name}
```

Deletes a SOCKS gateway or group.

```
#(config socks-gateways) destroy-old-passwords
```

Destroys any cleartext passwords left after an upgrade.

```
#(config socks-gateways) edit gateway_alias
```

Changes the prompt. See `#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)` on page 406.

```
#(config socks-gateways) edit group_alias
```

Changes the prompt. See `#(config socks-gateways group_alias)` on page 408.

```
#(config socks-gateways) exit
```

Exits configure socks-gateways mode and returns to configure mode.

```
#(config socks-gateways) failure-mode {open | closed}
```

Sets the default failure mode (that can be overridden by policy).

```
#(config socks-gateways) host-affinity http {default | none | client-ip-address | accelerator-cookie} gateway_or_group_alias
```

Selects a host affinity method for HTTP. If a gateway or group alias is not specified for the accelerator-cookie, client-ip-address, or none options, the global default is used. Use the default option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified gateway or group.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config socks-gateways) host-affinity ssl {default | none | client-ip-address | accelerator-cookie | ssl-session-id} gateway_or_group_alias
Selects a host affinity method for SSL. If a gateway or group alias is not specified for the
accelerator-cookie, client-ip-address, none, or ssl-session-id options, the global default is used. Use the default option to specify default configurations for all the
settings for a specified gateway or group.

#(config socks-gateways) host-affinity other {default | client-ip-address | none} gateway_or_group_alias
Selects a host affinity method (non-HTTP or non-SSL). If a gateway or group alias is not specified for the
client-ip-address, none options, the global default is used. Use the default option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified gateway or group.

#(config socks-gateways) host-affinity timeout minutes
Set the timeout for host affinity in minutes.

#(config socks-gateways) load-balance gateway {default | none | round-robin | least-connections} gateway_alias
Selects a host affinity method (non-HTTP or non-SSL). If a gateway alias is not specified for the
client-ip-address, or none options, the global default is used. Use the default option to specify default configurations for all the settings for a specified gateway.

#(config socks-gateways) load-balance group {default | none | domain-hash | url-hash | round-robin | least-connections} group_alias

#(config socks-gateways) no path
Clears network path to download SOCKS gateway settings.

#(config socks-gateways) path url
Specifies the network path to download SOCKS gateway settings.

#(config socks-gateways) sequence {add | demote | promote | remove} gateway_alias
Adds an alias to the end of the default failover sequence.

socks-gateways) sequence clear
Clears the default failover sequence.

#(config socks-gateways) view
Displays all SOCKS gateways.

For More Information

» SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config) socks-gateways
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) failure-mode open
ok
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)

**Synopsis**
These commands allow you to edit the settings of a specific SOCKS gateway.

**Syntax**
```
#(config) socks-gateways
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config socks-gateways)
```
edit gateway_alias
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias)
```

**Subcommands**
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) encrypted-password
Changes the version 5 encrypted password.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) exit
Exits configure socks-gateways gateway_alias mode and returns to configure
socks-gateways mode.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) host
Changes the host name.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) host-affinity http
  [accelerator-cookie | client-ip-address | default | none]
Changes the host affinity method (HTTP) for this host.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) host-affinity other
  [client-ip-address | default | none]
Changes the host affinity other method for this host.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) host-affinity ssl
  [accelerator-cookie | client-ip-address | default |
  ssl-session-id | none]
Changes the host affinity method (SSL) for this host.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) load-balance
  [default | least-connections | round-robin | none]
Changes the load balancing method.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) no [password | username]
Optional, and only if you use version 5. Deletes the version 5 password or username.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) password
Optional, and only if you use version 5. Changes the version 5 password. If you specify a
password, you must also specify a username.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) port
Changes the SOCKS port.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) request-compression
Changes the SOCKS port to request compression.
```
```
#(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) user
Optional, and only if you use version 5. Changes the version 5 username. If you specify a
username, you must also specify a password.
```

Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

```plaintext
%(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) version {4 | 5}
   Changes the SOCKS version.

%(config socks-gateways gateway_alias) view
   Shows the current settings for this SOCKS gateway.
```

For More Information
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

```
SGOS#(config) socks-gateways
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) edit testgateway
SGOS#(config socks-gateways testgateway) version 5 ok
SGOS#(config socks-gateways testgateway) exit
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias)

**Synopsis**

These commands allow you to edit the settings of a specific SOCKS gateway group.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) socks-gateways
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config socks-gateways)
```

```
create host_alias hostname protocol=port
group=group_alias
```

```
edit group_alias
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias) add
  Adds a new group.
```

```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias) exit
  Exits #(config socks-gateways group_alias) mode and returns to #(config socks-gateways) mode.
```

```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias) host-affinity http
  [accelerator-cookie | client-ip-address | default | none]
  Changes the host affinity method (HTTP) for this group.
```

```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias) host-affinity other
  [client-ip-address | default | none]
  Changes the host affinity other method for this host.
```

```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias) host-affinity ssl
  [accelerator-cookie | client-ip-address | default | ssl-session-id | none]
  Changes the host affinity method (SSL) for this group.
```

```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias) load-balance method
  [default | domain-hash | least-connections | none | round-robin | url-hash]
  Changes the load balancing method.
```

```
#(config socks-gateways group_alias) remove
  Removes an existing group.
```

```
#(config socks-gateways group alias) view
  Shows the current settings for this SOCKS gateway.
```

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
Example

SGOS#(config) socks-gateways
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) edit test_group
SGOS#(config socks-gateways test_group) load-balance hash domain
   ok
SGOS#(config socks-gateways test_group) exit
SGOS#(config socks-gateways) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config) socks-machine-id

**Synopsis**

Use this command to set the machine ID for SOCKS.

If you are using a SOCKS server for the primary or alternate gateway, you must specify the ProxySG appliance machine ID for the Identification (Ident) protocol used by the SOCKS gateway.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) socks-machine-id machine_id
```

Indicates the machine ID for the SOCKS server.

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) socks-machine-id 10.25.36.47
ok
```
#(config) socks-proxy

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure a SOCKS proxy on a ProxySG appliance. Only one server is permitted per ProxySG appliance. Both SOCKSv4 and SOCKSv5 are supported by Blue Coat, and both are enabled by default.

Note that the version of SOCKS used is only configurable through policy. For example, to use only SOCKSv5:

```xml
<proxy>
  socks.version=4 deny
</proxy>
```

**Syntax**

```
#(config) socks-proxy
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config) socks-proxy accept-timeout seconds
   Sets maximum time to wait on an inbound BIND.

#(config) socks-proxy connect-timeout seconds
   Sets maximum time to wait on an outbound CONNECT.

#(config) socks-proxy max-connections num_connections
   Sets maximum allowed SOCKS client connections.

#(config) socks-proxy max-idle-timeout seconds
   Specifies the minimum timeout after which SOCKS can consider the connection for termination when the max connections are reached.

#(config) socks-proxy min-idle-timeout seconds
   Specifies the max idle timeout value after which SOCKS should terminate the connection.

#(config) socks-proxy pa-customer-id customer_id
   Validates the license for the specified customer. (The customer_id is the Customer ID number you took from the About tab on the PA client. Use `socks-proxy pa-customer-id 0` to disable the license.
```

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) socks-proxy accept-timeout 120
ok
```

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Note:**

- The regex search is case-sensitive.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) ssh-console

Synopsis

Configures the SSH host and client keys. This CLI command also sets global options, such as the welcome banner for all SSH Consoles on the system.

To create and edit additional SSH console services, see #(config ssh-console) on page 236.

Syntax

#(config) ssh-console

This changes the prompt to:

#(config ssh-console)

Subcommands

#(config ssh-console) ciphers
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.9.2) Manages SSH ciphers. See #(config ssh-console)
create host-keypair {sshv1 | sshv2 | <Enter>}
Creates a host-keypair for the SSH console of the specified version.

#(config ssh-console) delete client-key username key_id
Deletes the client key with the specified username and key ID.

#(config ssh-console) delete legacy-client-key key_id
Deletes the legacy client key.

#(config ssh-console) delete director-client-key key_id
Deletes the Director client key.

#(config ssh-console) delete host-keypair {sshv1 | sshv2 | <Enter>}
Deletes the specified host keypair.

#(config ssh-console) hmacs
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.9.2) Manages SSH HMAC
(Hash-based Message Authentication Code) algorithms. See

#(config ssh-console) inline {client-key <eof> | director-client-key <eof> | sshv2-welcome-banner <eof>}
Allows you use the inline commands to add a client key, a Director client key, or a banner for those logging to the ProxySG appliance using SSHv2.

#(config ssh-console) no sshv2-welcome-banner
Disables the welcome banner.

#(config ssh-console) exit
Returns to the #(config) prompt.

#(config ssh-console) view {client-key | director-client-key | host-public-key | user-list | versions-enabled}
Views the SSH console parameters.
For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
- #(config ssh-console) on page 236

Example

#(config ssh-console) view versions-enabled
SSHV2 is enabled.
#(config ssh-console) ciphers

**Synopsis**

(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.9.2) Manage SSH ciphers for inbound connections. You can add, remove, reorder, and view ciphers. Fewer ciphers are available when the appliance is in FIPS mode.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) ssh-console
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssh-console)
```

To see the ciphers options:

```
#(config ssh-console) ciphers ?
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config ssh-console) ciphers add cipher-name [ordinal-position]
```

Adds a new SSH cipher to the current list. The `cipher-name` must be one of the names listed under `choices` in the `ciphers view` output. The optional `ordinal-position` argument puts the cipher at that position in the list. Without the `ordinal-position` argument, the cipher is added to the end of the list. Using the `ordinal-position` argument avoids needing to use the `promote` command to put the addition at a position other than the end of the list. The ciphers you add here are added to the current list.

```
#(config ssh-console) ciphers demote cipher-name [shift-value]
```

Demotes the specified SSH cipher to a position lower in the current cipher list. The `shift-value` is the number of positions to move the cipher on the list; if a `shift-value` isn’t specified, the cipher is demoted one position. The SSH server presents the current cipher list to the SSH client, so that the client can select one of the ciphers; the SSH server “hints” the preferred selection of the ciphers by the order of the list. Demoting a cipher puts it lower on the list, making it less preferred than the ciphers higher on the list.

```
#(config ssh-console) ciphers promote cipher-name [shift-value]
```

Promotes the specified SSH cipher to a position higher in the current cipher list. Promoting a cipher puts it higher on the list, making it more preferred than the ciphers lower on the list.

```
#(config ssh-console) ciphers remove cipher-name
```

Removes an SSH cipher from the current list. The `cipher-name` must be one of the names listed under `current` in the `ciphers view` output.

```
#(config ssh-console) ciphers reset
```

Resets the current SSH ciphers selection to the default set of ciphers; use the `ciphers view` command to see the default cipher list.

```
#(config ssh-console) ciphers set cipher-list
```

Sets the list of SSH ciphers in the specified order, where `cipher-list` is a comma-separated list. If you have a list of ciphers, specifying the order of the ciphers in a single command can be easier than promoting or demoting individual ciphers. The `cipher-name` must be one of the names listed under `choices` in the `ciphers view` output. The ciphers you set here replace the current list.

```
#(config ssh-console) ciphers view
```

Displays the currently selected SSH ciphers, the default set of ciphers, and the
available choices of ciphers. Fewer ciphers are available or selected if the appliance is in FIPS mode.
For More Information

- FIPS Mode WebGuide
- #(config) ssh-console on page 413
- #(config ssh-console) hmacs on page 418

Example

#(config ssh-console) ciphers view

current:      aes128-gcm@openssh.com,aes256-gcm@openssh.com,aes128-ctr

default:      aes128-gcm@openssh.com,aes256-gcm@openssh.com

choices:
aes128-gcm@openssh.com,aes256-gcm@openssh.com,aes128-ctr,aes192-ctr,aes256-ctr
#(config ssh-console) hmacs

**Synopsis**

(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.9.2) Manage SSH HMAC (Hash-based Message Authentication Code) algorithms for inbound connections. You can add, remove, reorder, and view HMAC algorithms. Fewer HMAC algorithms are available when the appliance is in FIPS mode.

**Syntax**

```bash
#(config)
ssh-console
```

This changes the prompt to:

```bash
#(config ssh-console)
```

To see the ciphers options:

```bash
#(config ssh-console) hmacs ?
```

**Subcommands**

```bash
#(config ssh-console) hmacs add hmac-name [ordinal-position]
```

Adds a new SSH HMAC algorithm to the current list. The `hmac-name` must be one of the names listed under `choices` in the `hmacs view` output. The optional `ordinal-position` argument will place the HMAC at that position in the list. Without the `ordinal-position` argument, the HMAC will be added to the end of the list. Using the `ordinal-position` argument avoids needing to use the `promote` command to put the addition at a position other than the end of the list.

```bash
#(config ssh-console) hmacs demote hmac-name [shift-value]
```

Demotes the specified SSH HMAC algorithm to a position lower in the current HMAC list. The `shift-value` is the number of positions to move the HMAC on the list; if a `shift-value` isn’t specified, the HMAC is demoted one position. The SSH server presents the current HMAC list to the SSH client, so that the client can select one of the HMAC algorithms; the SSH server “hints” the preferred selection of the HMACs by the order of the list. Demoting an HMAC puts it lower on the list, making it less preferred than the HMACs higher on the list.

```bash
#(config ssh-console) hmacs promote hmac-name [shift-value]
```

Promotes the specified SSH HMAC algorithm to a position higher in the current HMAC list. Promoting an HMAC places it higher on the list, making it more preferred than the HMACs lower on the list.

```bash
#(config ssh-console) hmacs remove hmac-name
```

Removes an SSH HMAC algorithm from the current list. The `hmac-name` must be one of the names listed under `current` in the `hmacs view` output.

```bash
#(config ssh-console) hmacs reset
```

Resets current SSH HMAC list to the default set of HMAC algorithms; use the `hmacs view` command to see the default HMAC list.

```bash
#(config ssh-console) hmacs set hmac-list
```

Sets list of SSH HMAC algorithms in the specified order, where `hmac-list` is a comma-separated list. If you have a long list of HMACs, specifying the order of the algorithms in a single command can be easier than promoting or demoting individual HMACs. The `hmac-name` must be one of the names listed under `choices` in the `hmacs view` output.

```bash
#(config ssh-console) hmacs view
```

Displays the SSH HMAC algorithms currently configured, the default set of HMAC
algorithms, and the available choices of HMAC algorithms. Fewer HMACs are selected or available if the appliance is in FIPS mode.

For More Information

- FIPS Mode WebGuide
- #(config) ssh-console on page 413
- #(config ssh-console) ciphers on page 415

Example

#(config ssh-console) hmacs view

current:    hmac-sha1, hmac-sha2-256, hmac-sha2-512
default:    hmac-sha1, hmac-sha2-256, hmac-sha2-512
choices:    hmac-sha1, hmac-sha2-256, hmac-sha2-512
#(config) ssl

## Synopsis
Use this command to configure HTTPS termination, including managing certificates, both self-signed and those from a Certificate Signing Authority (CSA).

To configure HTTPS termination, you must complete the following tasks:

- Configure a keyring
- Configure the SSL client
- Configure the HTTPS service

**Note:** To do these steps, you must use a serial or SSH connection; you cannot use Telnet.

## Syntax
```
#(config) ssl
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config ssl)
```

## Subcommands
```
#(config ssl) ccr-renegotiation-list {clear | max-entries <number> | view}
Manages the Client Certificate Requested list.

- clear: Removes all entries in the list.
- max-entries <number>: Specifies the maximum number of entries allowed in the list.
  The maximum value is 10000, the minimum is 0, and the default is 1000.
- view: Displays all the entries in the list.

#(config ssl) create ccl list_name
Creates a list to contain CA certificates.

#(config ssl) create certificate <keyring_id> [<<attribute> <value>]
Creates a certificate. The CLI prompts you to enter values for the following attributes:

- two-digit ISO country code
- two-letter state/province abbreviation
- city name/locality
- organization name
- organization unit
- common name
- email address
- challenge password
- company name
- digest type

Press ENTER to specify no value. Default values are in square brackets [ ].
Notes:

- You can associate certificates with a keyring.
- You can create a self-signed certificate in one of two ways: interactively or non-interactively.
- The default digest is SHA256.
- Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create certificates.

```plaintext
#(config ssl) create crl crl_id
Create a Certificate Revocation List.
```

```plaintext
#(config ssl) create fips {ccl list_name | keyring {no-show
<keyring_id> [key_length] | show <keyring_id> [key_length] | show-director <keyring_id> [key_length]} | ssl-device-profile
<device_profile_name> [keyring]}
Create FIPS compliant PKI elements.
```

```plaintext
# (config ssl) create hsm <name> <ip address> <port> <device
profile>
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Create an HSM. All parameters are required. The device profile is the client certificate belonging to the appliance; the HSM uses this certificate to authenticate the appliance.
```

```plaintext
# (config ssl) create hsm-keygroup <name>
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) In the same namespace as an HSM keyring. Membership may only be HSM keyrings.
```

**Note:** The keygroup name “verbose” will be reserved for future expansion.

```plaintext
#(config ssl) create keylist <list_name>
Create a keylist with no keyrings with the specified name.
```

```plaintext
#(config ssl) create keyring {show | show-director | no-show
keyring_id [key_length]} 
Creates a keyring, with a keypair, where:

show: Keyrings created with this attribute are displayed in the show configuration output, meaning that the keyring can be included as part of a profile or overlay pushed by Director.

show-director: Keyrings created with this attribute are part of the show configuration output if the CLI connection is secure (SSH/RSA) and the command is issued from Director.

no-show: Keyrings created with this attribute are not displayed in the show configuration output and cannot be part of a profile. The no-show option is provided as additional security for environments where the keys will never be used outside of the particular ProxySG appliance.
```

```plaintext
#(config ssl) create ssl-device-profile <SSL_device_profile_name>
[keyring]
Creates an SSL device profile of the specified name and keyring.
```

```plaintext
#(config ssl) create signing-request <keyring_id> [<attribute>
<value>],...
Creates a certificate signing request (CSR). The CLI prompts you to enter values for the following attributes:

- two-digit ISO country code
```
- two-letter state/province abbreviation
- city name/locality
- organization name
- organization unit
- common name
- email address
- challenge password
- company name
- digest type

Press ENTER to specify no value. Default values are in square brackets [ ].

Notes:
- You must associate the CSR with a keyring and a digest.
- You can create a CSR in one of two ways: interactively or non-interactively.
- The default digest is SHA256.
- Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create CSRs.

# (config ssl) create ssl-client ssl_client_name
Associates the SSL client with a keyring. Only the default is permitted.

# (config ssl) delete ca-certificate name
Deletes a CA-certificate from the ProxySG appliance.

# (config ssl) delete ccl list_name
Deletes a CCL list from the ProxySG appliance.

# (config ssl) delete certificate keyring_id
Deletes the certificate associated with a keyring.

# (config ssl) delete crl list_name
Deletes the specified Certificate Revocation List.

# (config ssl) delete external-certificate name
Deletes an external certificate from the ProxySG appliance.

# (config ssl) delete hsm <name>
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Deletes an existing HSM device. It is an error to delete an HSM if keyrings reference it.

# (config ssl) delete hsm-keyring <name> [force]
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Deletes an existing HSM keyring. It is an error to remove a keyring that is assigned to a keygroup unless the force keyword is present. If the force keyword is present, all references to the keyring will be removed from any keygroup which references it. It is an error to remove a keyring if it is referenced in policy or configuration outside of keygroups.

# (config ssl) delete keylist list_name
Deletes the specified keylist. Keyrings associated with the keylist are not deleted. If the keylist is used in policy, the keylist cannot be deleted and generates an error.

# (config ssl) delete keyring keyring_id
Deletes a keyring, with a keypair.

# (config ssl) delete keyring [force] keyring_id
Deletes a keyring. The force option removes the keyring from all keylists using the keyring, and then deletes the keyring.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config ssl) delete signing-request keyring_id
Deletes a certificate signing request.

#(config ssl) delete ssl-client ssl_client_name
Deletes an SSL client.

#(config ssl) delete ssl-device-profile ssl_device_profile_name
Deletes an SSL device profile.

#(config ssl) edit ccl list_name
Changes the prompt. See #(config ssl ccl list_name) on page 429.

#(config ssl) edit crl crl_id
Changes the prompt. See #(config ssl crl crl_list_name) on page 430.

# (config ssl) edit hsm <name>
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) See #(config ssl hsm <name>) on page 431.

# (config ssl) edit hsm-keygroup <name>
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) See #(config ssl hsm-keygroup <name>) on page 432.

#(config ssl) edit keylist list_name
Enables you to configure the keylist parameters; changes the prompt to #(config ssl
keylist list_name).

#(config ssl keylist list_name)add keyring_id
Adds the specified keyring to the keylist.

#(config ssl keylist list_name)remove keyring_id
Removes the specified keyring from the keylist.

#(config ssl keylist list_name)clear
Removes all keyrings from the keylist.

#(config ssl keylist list_name)extractor extractor_string
Set the extractor pattern for the keyring. The extractor supports substitutions from all
attributes of Subject, Issuer, SubjectAltName, IssuerAltName, and SerialNumber
certificate fields. The default extractor value is $(subject.CN); many other subject
attributes are recognized, among them OU, O, L, ST, C, and DC. Field indexes can be used
in substitutions on a group name or attribute; for example
$(SubjectAltName.DNS.1).

#(config ssl keylist list_name)view [verbose]
Displays the keylist extractor as well as the keyring IDs and their respective extractor
values. Use verbose to display the certificate field values of the keylist.

#(config ssl keylist list_name)exit
Returns to the #(config ssl) mode.

#(config ssl) edit ssl-device-profile profile_name
Changes the prompt. See #(config ssl-device-profile profile_name) on page 433.

#(config ssl) edit ssl-client ssl_client_name
Changes the prompt. Only default is permitted. See #(config ssl ssl-client
ssl_client_name) on page 435.

#(config ssl) exit
Exits configure ssl mode and returns to configure mode.

#(config ssl) force-secure-renegotiation {enable | disable}
Enabling this makes the Proxy perform strict secure renegotiation only for all SSL connections.
Note: By default this feature is disabled. If this feature is enabled, all secure communications with Blue Coat servers will fail. If you enable this setting, the ProxySG appliance performs strict secure renegotiation only for all SSL connections.

```plaintext
%(config ssl) inline ca-certificate name eof
Imports a CA certificate.
```

```plaintext
%(config ssl) inline certificate keyring_id eof
Imports a certificate.
```

Note: Using the `inline certificate` command, you can associate a certificate chain with a keyring. You must paste all associated intermediate certificates after the server certificate. The maximum character count for importing a certificate chain and associating it with a keyring is 7999.

```plaintext
%(config ssl) inline crl list_name eof
Imports a Certificate Revocation List.
```

```plaintext
%(config ssl) inline external-certificate name eof
Imports a certificate without the corresponding private key.
```

```plaintext
%(config ssl) inline fips ca-certificate <name>[eof_marker]
Install a FIPS compliant Certificate Authority certificate.
```

```plaintext
%(config ssl) inline fips external-certificate <name>[eof_marker]
Install a FIPS compliant certificate without a corresponding private key.
```

```plaintext
%(config ssl) inline fips keyring {no-show | show | show-director}
Imports a FIPS compliant keyring with unshowable, showable, or director showable key pairs.
```

```
%(config ssl) inline hsm-keyring <name> <key-label> <EOF>
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Adds an HSM keyring. The certificate chain for the key is entered inline. A test sign operation will be performed to make sure that the key matches the certificate chain and all certificates will be checked to make sure that their CA flag is set. For example:
```
```
%(config ssl) inline hsm-keyring hsmkeyring1 test hsmlabel eof1234
The keyring must have the same key label as that known by the HSM. In the example, hsmlabel is used. When the appliance sees the indicated eof tag, it will cease processing, and present the data.
```
```
%(config ssl) inline keylist <list_name> <extractor_string>
Imports a keylist. Each keyring ID must be listed on independent lines. If a keylist with the same name already exists, it will be replaced with the new information.
```
```
%(config ssl) inline keyring {show | show-director | no-show}
keyring_id [password] eof
Imports a keyring, where:
```
```
show: Private keys associated with keyrings created with this attribute can be displayed in the CLI or included as part of a profile or overlay pushed by Director.
```
```
show-director: Keyrings created with this attribute are part of the show configuration output if the CLI connection is secure (SSH/RSA) and the command is issued from Director.
no-show: Keyrings created with this attribute are not displayed in the `show` configuration output and cannot be part of a profile. The `no-show` option is provided as additional security for environments where the keys will never be used outside of the particular ProxySG appliance.

password: The password for the keyring.

eof: End-of-file marker. This can be anything, as long as it doesn’t also appear in the inline text. (If the `eof` appears in the inline text, the inline command completes at that point.)

---

**Note:** The following keyrings cannot be added to keylists: default, passive-attack-protection, config-passwords, and default-untrusted.

---

```plaintext
#(config ssl) inline signing-request keyring_id eof
Imports the specified signing request.

#(config ssl) intermediate-cert-cache
Changes the prompt. See #(config ssl icc) on page 437

#(config ssl) keydata-path <url>
Sets the path for keyrings and keylists to import.

#(config ssl) ocsp
Changes the prompt. See #(config ssl ocsp) on page 439

#(config ssl) proxy client-cert-ccl {ccl_list_name | all | none}
Specifies the CCL to be used for the client. The default is all.

#(config ssl) proxy crl-distribution-point {enable | disable | hostname <hostname|ip-address>}
(Introduced in 6.5.10) Configure the CRL distribution point for emulated certificates, where:

- **enable**: A CRL distribution point is used for emulated certificates.
- **disable**: No CRL distribution point is used for emulated certificates.
- **hostname**: Specify the CRL distribution point in hostname or IP address format.

#(config ssl) proxy issuer-keyring keyring_name
Specifies the keyring to be used for SSL interception.

#(config ssl) proxy server-cert-ccl {ccl_list_name | all}
Specifies the CCL to be used for the server. The default is browser-trusted.

#(config ssl) proxy untrusted-issuer-keyring <untrusted-issuer-keyring>
Specifies the keyring used for signing emulated server certificates when preserving an untrusted OCS certificate. The default value is default-untrusted.

#(config ssl) request-appliance-certificate
Generates an appliance certificate.
```
# (config ssl) show ssl hsm-keygroup name
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Shows HSM keygroup configuration.

# (config ssl) show ssl hsm-keyring name
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Show HSM keyring configuration

#(config ssl) ssl-nego-timeout seconds
Configures the SSL-negotiation timeout period. The default is 300 seconds.

# (config ssl) test hsm-keyring <hsm-keyring>
Verify that the HSM keyring that has been generated on the SafeNet Java HSM can successfully communicate with the appliance. If the HSM keyring is not accepted, use the error code to determine the cause, and verify that it has been properly added.

#(config ssl) view appliance-certificate-request
Displays the appliance certificate request generated by the request-appliance-certificate command.

#(config ssl) view ca-certificate name
Displays the Certificate Authority certificate.

#(config ssl) view ccl
Displays the CA-certificate lists.

#(config ssl) view certificate keyring_id
Displays the certificate.

#(config ssl) view crl [list_name]
Displays the specified Certificate Revocation List.

#(config ssl) view external-certificate name
Displays the external certificate.

#(config ssl) view hsm name
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Show HSM device(s); shows status, including uptime, downtime, and so on.

# (config ssl) view hsm-keygroup name
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Lists configured HSM keygroup(s); also shows status (included for each key in the group).

# (config ssl) view hsm-keyring name
(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Lists configured HSM key(s); also shows status (including uptime, downtime, and so on).

#(config ssl) view keypair {des | des3 | unencrypted} keyring_id |
keyring_id)
Displays the keypair. If you want to view the keypair in an encrypted format, you can optionally specify des or des3 before the keyringID. If you specify either des or des3, you are prompted for the challenge entered when the keyring was created.

#(config ssl) view keyring [keyring_id | unreferenced | expiring-in <n>]
Displays the keyring, where:

keyring_id: Displays the certificate subject, serial number, issuer, and all keylists that the specified keyring is a member of.

unreferenced: Lists all the keyrings that are not referenced anywhere else in the configuration or in policy.

expiring-in <n>: Lists all keyrings with certificates expiring in a specified <n> days. To display all keyrings with expired certificates, use the following command:

#(config ssl) view keyring expiring-in 0
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config ssl) `view keyring [keyring_id]`
Displays the keyring.

#(config ssl) `view ocsp`
Displays SSL OCSP configuration.

#(config ssl) `view proxy`
Displays SSL proxy configuration.

#(config ssl) `view signing-request keyring_id`
Displays the certificate signing request.

#(config ssl) `view ssl-client`
Displays summary information of SSL clients.

#(config ssl) `view ssl-device-profile`
Displays SSL device profile.

#(config ssl) `view ssl-nego-timeout`
Displays SSL negotiation timeout period status summary.

#(config ssl) `view summary {ca-certificate | external-certificate} [name]`
Displays a summary for all CA-certificate or external-certificate commands, or for the certificate name specified.

Related Commands

#(config) `load crl crl_list`
Loads the specified CRL list.

#(config) `load keydata [<passphrase>]`
Loads the keyrings and keylists from the location specified with `keydata-path`.

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Examples

Create a keyring:

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config) create keyring show keyring id [key length]
ok
SGOS#(config) view keyring keyring id
KeyringID: default
Is private key showable? yes
Have CSR? no
Have certificate? yes
Is certificate valid? yes
CA: Blue Coat SG810
Expiration Date: Jan 23 23:57:21 2013 GMT
SGOS#(config) exit
SGOS#(config)
```

Create a self-signed SSL certificate:

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) create certificate keyring-id cn bluecoat challenge test c US state CA company bluecoat digest sha256
```
#(config ssl ccl list_name)

## Synopsis
Allows you to edit the CCL parameters.

## Syntax

```bash
#(config) ssl
```
This changes the prompt to:

```bash
#(config ssl) edit ccl list_name
```
This changes the prompt to:

```bash
#(config ssl ccl list_name)
```

## Subcommands

```bash
#(config ssl ccl list_name) add ca_certificate_name
```
Adds a CA certificate to this list. (The CA certificate must first be imported in configure ssl mode.)

```bash
#(config ssl ccl list_name) exit
```
Exits configure ssl ccl list_name mode and returns to ssl configure mode.

```bash
#(config ssl ccl list_name) remove ca_certificate_name
```
Removes a CA certificate from the specified list.

```bash
#(config ssl ccl list_name) view
```
Shows a summary of CA certificates in this list.

## For More Information

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

## Example

```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) edit ccl list_name
SGOS#(config ssl ccl list_name) add CACert1
  ok
SGOS#(config ssl ccl list_name) exit
SGOS#(config ssl) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
#(config ssl crl crl_list_name)

**Synopsis**
Allows you to edit the specified Certificate Revocation List name.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) ssl
```
This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl)
```
```
edit crl crl_list_name
```
This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl crl crl_list_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config ssl crl crl_list_name) exit
`exit`
Exports configure ssl crl crl_list_name mode and returns to ssl configure mode.

#(config ssl crl crl_list_name) inline eof_marker
`inline` `eof_marker`
Imports a Certificate Revocation List.

#(config ssl crl crl_list_name) load crl
`load` `crl`
Downloads the specified Certificate Revocation List.

#(config ssl crl crl_list_name) path crl
`path` `crl`
Specifies the network path to download the specified Certificate Revocation List.

#(config ssl crl crl_list_name) view
`view`
View the specified Certificate Revocation List.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
#(config ssl hsm <name>)

**Synopsis**

(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Allows you to edit the parameters for a specific HSM.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) ssl
This changes the prompt to:

#(config ssl) edit hsm <name>
This changes the prompt to:

#(config ssl hsm <name>)
```

**Subcommands**

- `# (config ssl hsm <name>) device-profile <profile>`
  
  Change the device profile.

- `# (config ssl hsm <name>) ip-address <address>`
  
  Edit the IP address.

- `# (config ssl hsm <name>) port <port>`
  
  Change the port.

- `# (config ssl hsm <name>) view`
  
  Show current HSM configuration.

**For More Information**

- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

**Example**

```plaintext
#(config ssl) edit hsm test
#(config ssl hsm test) device-profile default
ok
```
#(config ssl hsm-keygroup <name>)

**Synopsis**

(Introduced in SGOS 6.5.7.1) Allows you to edit the parameters for a specific HSM keygroup.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config)
ssl
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config ssl) edit hsm-keygroup <name>
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config ssl hsm-keygroup <name>)
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
# (config ssl hsm-keygroup <name>) add <keyring-name>
```

Add a keyring to the keygroup. You cannot add the same keyring more than once or add an `hsm-keygroup`, “regular” keyring, or “regular” keylist to the keygroup.

```plaintext
# (config ssl hsm-keygroup <name>) remove <keyring-name>
```

Remove a keyring from the keygroup.

```plaintext
# (config ssl hsm-keygroup <name>) clear
```

Clear the keygroup.

```plaintext
# (config ssl hsm-keygroup <name>) view
```

View the keygroup.

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```plaintext
#(config ssl) edit hsm-keygroup testgroup
#(config ssl hsm-keygroup testgroup) clear
ok
```
#(config ssl-device-profile profile_name)

**Synopsis**
Allows you to create or edit an SSL device profile.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) ssl
```
This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl)
```
```
edit ssl-device-profile profile_name
```
This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config device-profile profile_name)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config device-profile profile_name) cipher-suite cipher-suite
```
Configures device authentication profile cipher suites. If you press <enter>, you can see the list of available ciphers. The default is to use all cipher suites. If you want to change the default, you have two choices:

- interactive mode
- non-interactive mode

Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create cipher suites.

The optional `cipher-suite` refers to the cipher-suites you want to use, space separated, such as `rc4-md5 exp-des-cbc-sha`. If you want to use the interactive mode, do not specify a cipher suite.

You may specify more than one cipher suite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cipher Suite Name</th>
<th>Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-RC4-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES128-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES256-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES128-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES-CBC3-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC4-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC4-MD5</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES-CBC-SHA</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP-DES-CBC-SHA</td>
<td>Export</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note: This table reflects the cipher suites as available on a new SGOS 6.6.3 installation. The last six entries in this list are disabled by default, as Blue Coat considers these ciphers as insufficiently secure. You can enable the ciphers if desired. In other installations, such as an upgrade from an earlier SGOS version, you may see a slightly different collection of enabled suites.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cipher Suite Name</th>
<th>Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EXP-RC4-MD5</td>
<td>Export</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5</td>
<td>Export</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For More Information

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

```bash
#(config device-profile test1) view
Name: test1
Usable for: client
Keyring:
CCL: browser-trusted
Device-id: $(subject.CN)
Cipher suite: rc4-sha
Protocol: TLSv1TLSv1.1TLSv1.2
Verify-peer: enabled
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_client_name)

Synopsis
Allows you to edit the SSL client parameters. Only the default is permitted.

Syntax

#(config) ssl
This changes the prompt to:
#(config ssl)
edit ssl-client ssl_default_client_name
This changes the prompt to:
#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name)

Subcommands

#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name) ccl {ccl_name | all}
Configures the CA Certificate List to use.

#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name) cipher-suite
Specifies the cipher suite to use. The default is to use all cipher suites. If you want to change the default, you have two choices:
• interactive mode
• non-interactive mode
Director uses non-interactive commands in profiles and overlays to create cipher suites.

The optional cipher-suite refers to the cipher-suites you want to use, space separated, such as rc4-md5 exp-des-cbc-sha. If you want to use the interactive mode, do not specify a cipher suite.

You may specify more than one cipher suite.

Table 3–4 Cipher Suites

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cipher Suite Name</th>
<th>Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDHE-RSA-RC4-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES128-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES256-SHA256</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES128-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES-CBC3-SHA</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC4-SHA</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC4-MD5</td>
<td>Medium</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note: This table reflects the cipher suites as available on a new SGOS 6.6.3 installation. The last six entries in this list are disabled by default, as Blue Coat considers these ciphers as insufficiently secure. You can enable the ciphers if desired. In other installations, such as an upgrade from an earlier SGOS version, you may see a slightly different collection of enabled suites.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cipher Suite Name</th>
<th>Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DES-CBC-SHA</td>
<td>Low</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP-DES-CBC-SHA</td>
<td>Export</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP-RC4-MD5</td>
<td>Export</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP-RC2-CBC-MD5</td>
<td>Export</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Changing the SSL protocol version or versions will reset the list of available cipher suites.

For More Information
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example
```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) edit ssl-client ssl_default_client_name
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name) cipher-suite rc4-md5 exp-des-cbc-sha
  ok
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name) exit
SGOS#(config ssl) exit
SGOS#(config)
```
## #(config ssl icc)

### Synopsis
Allows you to configure and view intermediate certificate cache (ICC) settings and statistics on the ProxySG appliance.

### Syntax
```
#(config)
ssl
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config ssl)
```
```
#(config ssl) intermediate-cert-cache
```
This changes the prompt to:
```
#(config ssl icc)
```

### Subcommands
```
#(config ssl icc) clear-cache
```
Clears the intermediate CA certificates that are currently stored on the appliance.

```
#(config ssl icc) enable
```
Enables the caching of intermediate CA certificates on the ProxySG appliance.

```
#(config ssl icc) exit
```
Exits the config ssl icc prompt and returns to the config ssl prompt.

```
#(config ssl icc) disable
```
Simultaneously disables the caching of intermediate CA certificates and clears the existing cache on the ProxySG appliance.

```
#(config ssl icc) view status
```
Displays the current status of the intermediate certificate cache, including usage statistics and the number of stored intermediate CA certificates.

```
#(config ssl icc) view certificate {detail certificate_name | summary | summary certificate_name}
```
You can view various details about the certificates that have been cached on the appliance.

### For More Information
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

### Example
```
SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) intermediate-cert-cache
SGOS#(config ssl icc) enable
ok
SGOS#(config ssl icc) view status
Intermediate Certificate Cache
   Caching: enabled
   Number of cached certificates: 4
   Number of new certificates: 2
```
Number of cache hits: 14
SGOS#(config ssl icc) clear-cache
  ok
SGOS#(config ssl icc) exit
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config ssl ocsp)

**Synopsis**

Allows you to configure Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) settings.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) ssl
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl)
#(config ssl) ocsp
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ssl ocsp)
```

**Subcommands**

```
#(config ssl ocsp) create responder_name
   Creates a responder.
```

```
#(config ssl ocsp) default responder_name
   Sets a responder to the default responder.
```

```
#(config ssl ocsp) delete responder_name
   Deletes the specified responder.
```

```
#(config ssl ocsp) exit
   Exits the config ssl ocsp prompt and returns to the config ssl prompt.
```

```
#(config ssl ocsp) no
   Clears the current default responder setting.
```

```
#(config ssl ocsp) view
   Displays configuration information for each responder.
```

```
#(config ssl ocsp) edit responder_name
   Configure this responder_name.
```

Changes the prompt to:

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)
```

```
#(config ocsp responder_name) exit
   Exits the config ocsp responder_name prompt and returns to the config ssl ocsp prompt.
```

```
#(config ocsp responder_name) extension nonce {disable | enable}
   Enables or disables use of a nonce control in an OCSP request. When enabled, a nonce (unique digits sequence) is included as one of the requestExtensions in each OCSP request. Default is disable.
```

```
#(config ocsp responder_name) extension request-signing-keyring keyring-id
   Configures the OCSP request to contain a signature along with certificates to help the OCSP responder verify this signature. They keyring must already exist and have a certificate.
```

```
#(config ocsp responder_name) ignore expired-responder {enable | disable}
   Specifies whether the OCSP request must contain a signature along with certificates
```
to help the OCSP responder verify this signature. They keyring must already exist and have a certificate. By default, invalid responder certificate dates cause the subject certificate verification to fail.

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)ignore ocsp-signing-purpose {enable | disable}
```

Specifies whether to ignore the enforcement of purpose field in the responder certificate. Default is enable.

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)ignore request-failure {enable | disable}
```

Specifies whether to ignore connection failures and timeouts to the OCSP server. Default is disable.

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)ignore unknown-status {enable | disable}
```

Specifies whether to treat "unknown" revocation status for a certificate as an error. By default, unknown status is an error and causes subject certificate verification to fail.

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)ignore untrusted-responder {enable | disable}
```

Specifies whether to bypass, during responder certificate verification, any untrusted certificate errors. For example, a missing issuer certificate or a missing self-signed certificate. By default, any untrusted certificate failure is an error and causes the subject certificate verification to fail.

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)issuer-ccl {CCL Name | all | none}
```

Sets the name of the CCL. This is the list of CA names which is associated with the certificate to be checked for revocation. It may either be a server or client certificate, or a certificate that is used for verifying system images.

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)no extension request-signing-keyring
```

Resets the request signing keyring.

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)response-ccl {Response CCL Name | all}
```

Sets the name of the CCL.

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)ssl-device-profile SSL device-profile name
```

Sets the SSL device profile. The device profile is a unique set of SSL cipher-suites, protocols and keyrings used when the ProxySG appliance makes HTTPS connections with an OCSP responder. The default value is the pre-created device profile named “default.”

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)ttl {auto | number_of_days}
```

Configures the time to live (TTL) value. This value determines how long a response remains in the cache. The auto option indicates that the response is cached until nextUpdate. If nextUpdate is not present the response is not cached. The number_of_days variable indicates that the nextUpdate field in the response is to be overridden and that the response is to be cached for the indicated number of days. Default is auto.

```
#(config ocsp responder_name)url ocsp server url
```

Configures the time to live (TTL) value. This value determines how long a response remains in the cache. The auto option indicates that the response is cached until nextUpdate. If nextUpdate is not present the response is not cached. The number_of_days variable indicates that the nextUpdate field in the response is to be overridden and that the response is to be cached for the indicated number of days. Default is auto.
#(config ocsp responder_name) use-forwarding {disable | enable}
Sets the OCSP requests to use forwarding.

#(config ocsp responder_name) view
Displays the responder configurations.

For More Information

SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide

Example

SGOS#(config) ssl
SGOS#(config ssl) edit ssl-client ssl_default_client_name
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name) cipher-suite rc4-md5 exp-des-cbc-sha
  ok
SGOS#(config ssl ssl-client ssl_default_client_name) exit
SGOS#(config ssl) exit
SGOS#(config)
#(config) static-routes

## Synopsis

Use this command to set the network path to download the static routes configuration file.

To use static routes, you must create a routing table and place it on an HTTP server accessible to the device. The routing table is a text file containing a list of static routes made up of destination IP addresses (IPv4 or IPv6), subnet masks (for IPv4) or prefix lengths (for IPv6), and gateway IP addresses (IPv4 or IPv6). When you download a routing table, the table is stored in the device until it is replaced by downloading a new table.

The routing table is a simple text file containing a list of IPv4/IPv6 addresses, subnet masks/prefix lengths, and gateways. A sample routing table is illustrated below:

```
10.63.0.0 255.255.0.0 10.63.158.213
10.64.0.0 255.255.0.0 10.63.158.213
10.65.0.0 255.255.0.0 10.63.158.226
fe80::2d0:83ff:fe05:780%0:0 64 00:D0:83:05:07:80
```

Note that a routing table can contain a combination of IPv4 and IPv6 entries, but the gateway for each destination must be on the appropriate network type. For example, an IPv6 destination must use an IPv6 gateway.

When a routing table is loaded, all requested addresses are compared to the list, and routed based on the best match.

After the routing table is created, place it on an HTTP server so it can be downloaded to the device. To download the routing table to the ProxySG, use the `load` command.

## Syntax

```
#(config) static-routes no path
Clears the network path location of the static route table

#(config) static-routes path url
Sets the network path location of the static route table to the specified URL.
```

## For More Information

- [SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide](#)

## Example

```
SGOS#(config) static-routes path 10.25.36.47/files/routes.txt
         ok
```
#(config) statistics-export

**Synopsis**
Configure the parameters for exporting statistical data from the ProxySG appliance to an external data collector.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) statistics-export
```

This changes the prompt to:

```
#(config statistics-export)
```

**Subcommands**

- **config-path URL**
  Identifies the location of configuration file on the external data collector.

- **force-export**
  Sends the exported statistic data at the start of the next minute. The time remaining until the next data export is displayed to the user in seconds. For example, **Next data export** will happen in 8 seconds.

- **reread-config**
  Reads the contents of the configuration file on a remote server, and applies any changes.

- **ssl-device-profile device-profile-name**
  When using HTTPS, this command identifies which SSL device profile to use when contacting the external data collector.

- **disable**
  Disables exporting statistics to the external data collector.

- **enable**
  Enables exporting statistics to the external data collector.

- **view**
  Shows the settings for exporting statistics.

- **exit**
  Exits #(config statistics-export) mode and returns to #(config) mode.
Example

SGOS#(config) statistics-export
SGOS#(config statistics-export) ssl-device-profile
data-collector-df
  ok
SGOS#(config statistics-export) config-path
http://10.167.0.116/config.txt
  ok
SGOS#(config statistics-export) enable
  ok

View the results.

fig statistics-export)view
stics export configuration
istics export: Enabled
iguration path: https://10.167.0.116/config.txt
device profile: data-collector-df
iguration information:
etails of last configuration download:
  Configuration path: http://10.167.0.116/config.txt?version=1-
  &session=417164142&ip=10.167.1.219&model=300-5
  Last attempted config: 2011-09-01 20:14:01 UTC
  Last successful config: 2011-09-01 20:14:01 UTC
etails of active configuration:
  Version: 1
  Time interval: 15 minutes
  Trend filter: http
  Upload path: https://10.167.0.116/cgi-bin/post.py
oad information:
etails of last upload:
  Upload path: https://10.167.0.116/cgi-bin/post.py
  Last attempted upload time: 2011-09-01 20:14:01 UTC
  Last successful upload time: 2011-09-01 20:14:01 UTC
ext estimated upload time: 2011-09-01 20:34:07 UTC
successful uploads: 11
ailed upload attempts: 0
ata lost in minutes: 0
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) streaming

Synopsis
Use this command to configure global streaming settings as well as settings for each streaming proxy (Windows Media, Real Media, QuickTime, Flash, Adobe HDS, Apple HLS, and Microsoft Smooth Streaming).

Syntax

```
#(config) streaming adobe-hds http-handoff {disable | enable}
   Disables or enables Adobe HDS handoff. Set to enable in order to control and view statistics on Adobe HTTP Dynamic Streaming streams.

#(config) streaming apple-hls http-handoff {disable | enable}
   Disables or enables Apple HLS handoff. Set to enable in order to control and view statistics on Apple HTTP Live Streaming streams.

#(config) streaming flash http-handoff {disable | enable}
   Disables or enables Flash HTTP handoff.

#(config) streaming max-client-bandwidth kbps
   Sets the maximum client bandwidth permitted to kbps.

#(config) streaming max-gateway-bandwidth kbps
   Sets the maximum gateway bandwidth permitted to kbps.

#(config) streaming ms-smooth http-handoff {disable | enable}
   Disables or enables Microsoft Smooth handoff.

#(config) streaming multicast address-range first_address - last_address
   The IP address range for the ProxySG appliance's multicast-station. Default is from 224.2.128.0 and 224.2.255.255.

#(config) streaming multicast port-range first_port - last_port
   Port range for the ProxySG appliance's multicast-station. Default is between 32768 and 65535.

#(config) streaming multicast ttl ttl
   Time to live value for the multicast-station on the ProxySG appliance, expressed in hops. Default is 5; a valid number is between 1 and 255.

#(config) streaming no max-client-bandwidth
   Clears the current maximum client bandwidth setting.

#(config) streaming no max-gateway-bandwidth
   Clears the current maximum gateway bandwidth setting.

#(config) streaming quicktime http-handoff {disable | enable}
   Disables or enables QuickTime HTTP handoff.

#(config) streaming quicktime max-client-bandwidth kbps
   Sets the maximum connections allowed.

#(config) streaming quicktime max-connections number
   Sets the maximum client bandwidth allowed.

#(config) streaming quicktime max-gateway-bandwidth kbps
   Sets the maximum gateway bandwidth allowed.
```
Command Line Interface Reference

#(config) streaming quicktime no {max-client-bandwidth | max-connections | max-gateway-bandwidth}
Negates QuickTime parameters.

#(config) streaming real-media http-handoff {disable | enable}
Disables or enables Real Media HTTP handoff.

#(config) streaming real-media log-forwarding {disable | enable}
Sets Real Media client log forwarding.

#(config) streaming real-media max-client-bandwidth kbps
Limits the total bandwidth used by all connected clients. Changing the setting to no max-client-bandwidth uses the maximum available bandwidth. Zero (0) is not an accepted value.

#(config) streaming real-media max-connections number
Limits the concurrent number of client connections. Changing the setting to no max-connections uses the maximum available bandwidth. Zero (0) is not an accepted value.

#(config) streaming real-media max-gateway-bandwidth kbps
Limits the total bandwidth used between the proxy and the gateway. Changing the setting to no max-gateway-bandwidth uses the maximum available bandwidth. Zero (0) is not an accepted value.

#(config) streaming real-media multicast {disable | enable}
Disables or enables Real Media client multicast support.

#(config) streaming real-media no {max-client-bandwidth | max-connections | max-gateway-bandwidth | refresh-interval}
Negates Real Media parameters.

#(config) streaming real-media refresh-interval hours
Sets the streaming content refresh interval.

#(config) streaming windows-media asx-hostname name [hostname_or_IP]
(Introduced in 6.5.4.1) Customize a Windows Media ASX file hosted on the ProxySG appliance to point to a different IP address or FQDN. If a host name or IP address isn’t specified, the ASX file is populated with the Management Console IP address.
The name is the name field in the http://<appliance_address>/MMS/nsc Advanced URL.

#(config) streaming windows-media asx-rewrite number in_addr cache_proto cache_addr [cache-port]
Provides proxy support for Windows Player 6.4.

If your environment does not use a Layer 4 switch or WCCP, the ProxySG appliance can operate as a proxy for Windows Media Player 6.4 clients by rewriting the .asx file (which links Web pages to Windows Media ASF files) to point to the Windows Media streaming media cache rather than the Windows Media server.

number can be any positive number. It defines the priority of all the asx-rewrite rules. Smaller numbers indicate higher priority. in_addr specifies the hostname. It can have a maximum of one wildcard character. cache_proto rewrites the protocol on the ProxySG appliance and can take any of the following forms:

mmsu (MMS-UDP)
mmst (MMS-TCP)
http (HTTP)
mms (MMS-UDP or MMS-TCP)

cache_addr rewrites the address on the ProxySG appliance.
#(config) streaming windows-media broadcast-alias alias url loops
date time
Enables scheduled live unicast or multicast transmission of video-on-demand content.

*alias* must be unique. *url* specifies the address of the video-on-demand stream. *loops* specifies the number of times the stream should be played back. 0 means forever. *date* specifies the broadcast alias starting date. To specify multiple starting dates, enter the date as a comma-separated string. *date* can take any of the following formats:

*yyyy-mm-dd*

today

time specifies the broadcast-alias starting time. To specify multiple starting times within the same date, enter the time as a comma-separated string. No spaces are permitted. *time* can take any of the following formats:

*hh:mm*

midnight, 12am, 1am, 2am, 3am, 4am, 5am, 6am, 7am, 8am, 9am, 10am, 11am, noon, 12pm, 1pm, 2pm, 3pm, 4pm, 5pm, 6pm, 7pm, 8pm, 9pm, 10pm, 11pm.

#(config) streaming windows-media http-handoff {disable | enable}
Allows the Windows Media module to control the HTTP port when Windows Media streaming content is present. The default is enabled.

#(config) streaming windows-media live-retransmit {disable | enable}
Allows the ProxySG appliance to retransmit dropped packets sent through MMS-UDP for unicast. The default is enabled.

#(config) streaming windows-media log-compatibility {disable | enable}
Disables or enables access log compatibility. When log-compatibility is enabled, the ProxySG appliance generates the MMS log the same way as Windows Media Server does. Three fields are affected when log-compatibility is enabled:

- c-ip             x-wm-c-ip (client address derived from client log)
- c-dns           x-wm-c-dns (client hostname derived from client log)
- c-uri-stem      cs-uri (use full URI instead of just the path)

#(config) streaming windows-media log-forwarding {disable | enable}
Enables or disables forwarding of the client log to the origin media server.

#(config) streaming windows-media max-client-bandwidth kpbs
Sets the maximum client bandwidth permitted to kpbs.

#(config) streaming windows-media max-connections number
Limits the concurrent number of client connections. If this variable is set to 0, you effectively lock out all client connections to the ProxySG appliance. To allow maximum client bandwidth, enter streaming windows-media no max-connections.

#(config) streaming windows-media max-fast-bandwidth kpbs
Sets the maximum fast start bandwidth per player.

#(config) streaming windows-media max-gateway-bandwidth kpbs
Sets the maximum limit, in kilobits per second (Kbps), for the amount of bandwidth Windows Media uses to send requests to its gateway. If this variable is set to 0, you effectively prevent the ProxySG appliance from initiating any connections to the gateway. To allow maximum gateway bandwidth, enter streaming windows-media no max-gateway-bandwidth.
#(config) streaming windows-media multicast-alias alias url [preload]
Creates an alias on the ProxySG appliance that reflects the multicast station on the origin content server.

#(config) streaming windows-media multicast-error-correction {disable | enable}
Enables the transmission of forward error correction (FEC) packets from a Windows Media Server to proxied Windows Media Player clients, when provided. This feature is enabled by default. Disabling the option can lead to a bandwidth gain but may lead to playback instability on high-latency Internet connections.

#(config) streaming windows-media multicast-station name {alias | url} ip port ttl
Enables multicast transmission of Windows Media content from the ProxySG appliance. name specifies the name of the alias. It must be unique. alias can be a unicast alias, a multicast-alias or a broadcast alias, as well as a url to a live stream source. ip is an optional parameter and specifies the multicast station's IP address. port specifies the multicast station's port value address. ttl specifies the multicast-station's time-to-live value, expressed in hops (and must be a valid number between 1 and 255). The default ttl is 5.

#(config) streaming windows-media no asx-rewrite number
Deletes the ASX rewrite rule associated with number.

#(config) streaming windows-media no broadcast-alias alias
Deletes the broadcast alias rule associated with alias.

#(config) streaming windows-media no max-client-bandwidth
Negates maximum client bandwidth settings.

#(config) streaming windows-media no max-connections
Negates maximum connections settings.

#(config) streaming windows-media no max-gateway-bandwidth
Negates maximum gateway bandwidth settings.

#(config) streaming windows-media no multicast-alias alias
Deletes the multicast alias rule associated with alias.

#(config) streaming windows-media no multicast-station name
Deletes the multicast station rule associated with name.

#(config) streaming windows-media no refresh-interval
Sets the current Windows Media refresh interval to “never refresh.”

#(config) streaming windows-media no server-auth-type cache_ip_address
Clears the authentication type associated with cache_ip_address.

#(config) streaming windows-media no unicast-alias alias
Deletes the unicast alias rule associated with alias. The name of the alias, such as “welcome1” that is created on the ProxySG appliance and reflects the content specified by the URL. The protocol is specified by the URL if the protocol is mmst, mmsu, or http. If the protocol is mms, the same protocol as the client is used.

#(config) streaming windows-media refresh-interval hours
Checks the refresh interval for cached streaming content. hours must be a floating point number to specify refresh interval. 0 means always check for freshness.

#(config) streaming windows-media server-auth-type {basic | ntlm} cache_ip_address
Sets the authentication type of the ProxySG appliance indicated by cache_ip_address to BASIC or NTLM.
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) streaming windows-media server-thinning {disable | enable}
Disables or enables server thinning.

#(config) streaming windows-media unicast-alias alias url
Creates an alias on the ProxySG appliance that reflects the content specified by the URL. When a client requests the alias content, the ProxySG appliance uses the URL specified in the unicast-alias command to request the content from the origin streaming server.

For More Information
- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide, Streaming chapter

Example
- SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media http-handoff enable  
  ok
- SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media live-retransmit disable  
  ok
- SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media log-forwarding disable  
  ok
- SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media max-connections 1600  
  ok
- SGOS#(config) streaming windows-media no max-connections  
  ok
#(config) tcp-ip

**Synopsis**

Use the following commands to configure your TCP/IP settings.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) tcp-ip bypass-keep-alive {disable | enable}
Enables or disables keep-alive for bypass connections. Note that this setting does not affect existing connections.

#(config) tcp-ip icmp-bcast-echo {disable | enable}
Enables or disables ICMP broadcast echo responses.

#(config) tcp-ip icmp-tstamp-echo {disable | enable}
Enables or disables ICMP timestamp echo responses.

#(config) tcp-ip ip-forwarding {disable | enable}
Enables or disables IP-forwarding.

#(config) tcp-ip pmtd-discovery {disable | enable}
Enables or disables Path MTU Discovery.

#(config) tcp-ip rfc-1323 {disable | enable}
Enables or disables RFC-1323 support (satellite communications).

#(config) tcp-ip routing-algorithm hashing [both | destination-address | source-address]
Sets the routing algorithm as hashing. Selects the outbound route within the same group based on source and/or destination IP address. Use the hashing option, for example, when the ProxySG appliance needs to connect to a secure Web server and the Web server requires the source IP address to remain unchanged during the lifetime of the secure session. Similarly, other services that use cookies to maintain session concept across multiple connections might also need to use hash base routing. The default setting is weighted-round-robin.

#(config) tcp-ip routing-algorithm weighted-round-robin
The default setting for the tcp-ip routing-algorithm option is weighted-round-robin. This setting is appropriate for all deployments except where noted in the hashing above.

#(config) tcp-ip silly-window-avoidance {disable | enable}
Refer to Symantec Support for information on this command.

#(config) tcp-ip tcp-newreno {disable | enable}
Enables or disables TCP NewReno support (improved fast recovery).

#(config) tcp-ip tcp-2msl seconds
Specifies the time_wait value for a TCP connection before completely closing.

#(config) tcp-ip tcp-loss-recovery-mode {aggressive | enhanced | normal}
Helps to recover throughput efficiently after packet losses occur and also addresses performance problems due to a single packet loss during a large transfer over long delay pipes. The feature is enabled (set to normal) by default.

#(config) tcp-ip window-size window_size
Specifies the TCP window size for satellite communications.
```
Example

SGOS#(config) tcp-ip ip-forwarding enable
  ok
SGOS#(config) tcp-ip rfc-1323 enable
  ok
#(config) tcp-ip scps

**Synopsis**

Use the following commands to configure your TCP-IP SCPS settings.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) tcp-ip scps {disable | enable}
   Enables or disables SCPS-TP protocol.

#(config) tcp-ip scps bandwidth bandwidth_size
   Specifies the transmission link bandwidth to be used by the ProxySG appliance for packet metering and window sizing during SCPS usage. The value is kbps (shown as bits-per-second/1000).

#(config) tcp-ip scps interface adapter:interface[.vlan]
   Sets the satellite-facing interface used to communicate with the satellite during a SCPS transmission.

#(config) tcp-ip scps rtt rtt_value
   Sets the SCPS link round-trip time. The value is in milliseconds.
```

**For More Information**

- [SCPS Deployment Guide](#)

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) tcp-ip scps rtt 570
   ok

SGOS#(config) (config)tcp-ip scps bandwidth 1544
   ok#

SGOS#(config) (config)tcp-ip scps interface 0:0
   ok
```
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

#(config) threat-protection

Synopsis

Use the following commands to configure threat-protection in your network. These commands set the defaults for the built-in threat protection policy that is invoked when you enable malware scanning on the ProxySG appliance. When malware scanning is enabled, the ProxySG appliance and ProxyAV or Content Analysis systems work in conjunction to analyze incoming Web content and apply policy protect users from malware and malicious content.

Syntax

- To enter configuration mode:
  
  SGOS# (config) threat-protection
  
  This changes the prompt to:
  
  SGOS# (config threat-protection) [subcommands]

- The following subcommands are available:

  SGOS# (config threat-protection) exit
  
  Allows you to exit from the threat-protection configuration to the configuration prompt.

  SGOS# (config threat-protection) view
  
  Allows you to view the threat protection settings.

  SGOS# (config threat-protection) malware-scanning
  
  Allows you to configure the malware-scanning parameters that will be compiled in the built-in threat protection policy file.

  SGOS# (config threat-protection malware-scanning) {disable | enable | exit}
  
  Allows you to disable, enable, or exit the malware scanning configuration options.

  SGOS# (config threat-protection malware-scanning) failure-mode {continue | deny}
  
  Allows you to set the action on an unsuccessful scan on the ProxySG appliance. Continue allows the ProxySG appliance to serve the content even if the ProxyAV or Content Analysis service was unable to complete the scan of the requested Web content.

  If set to deny, the ProxySG appliance will not serve the requested Web content to the user, in the event that the ProxyAV or Content Analysis service is unable to complete the scan.

  SGOS# (config threat-protection malware-scanning) level {high-performance | maximum-protection}
  
  Allows you to implement the network performance rules or the network protection rules based on your preferences in the malware scanning configuration.

  The threat protection policy offers two levels for scanning responses redirected to the ProxyAV or Content Analysis services—high performance and maximum security. While the ProxyAV and Content Analysis scan all Web responses when set to maximum security, they selectively scan Web responses when set to high performance bypassing content that has a low risk of malware infection.

  SGOS# (config threat-protection malware-scanning) no update-path

453
Clears the update path URL that the ProxySG appliance uses to obtain the latest malware threat-protection policy file.

SGOS# (config threat-protection malware-scanning) secure-connection {always | if-available | never}

The communication between the ProxySG appliance and the ProxyAV or Content Analysis service can be in plain ICAP, secure ICAP or can use both plain and secure ICAP, depending on whether the response processed by the ProxySG appliance uses the HTTP, FTP, or HTTPS protocol.

This option allows you to configure whether a secure connection is used always, if-available, or is never used.

SGOS# (config threat-protection malware-scanning) update-path <url>

Provides the path to the URL where updates to the threat protection solution are posted. Updates to the threat protection solution are available as a gzipped tar archive file which can be downloaded to a local Web server in your network or installed directly on the ProxySG appliance.

SGOS# (config threat-protection malware-scanning) view

Displays the configuration of the malware scanning policy that is currently implemented on the ProxySG appliance.

Related Commands

SGOS# (config) show sources policy threat-protection

Displays the source file for the threat-protection policy.

SGOS# (config) load threat-protection malware-scanning

Downloads the updates to the malware scanning rules included in the threat-protection policy file.

Example

To view the malware scanning configuration on the ProxySG appliance:

SGOS# (config) threat-protection
SGOS# (config threat-protection) malware-scanning
SGOS# (config threat-protection malware-scanning) view

Malware scanning solution: enabled
Threat protection level: high-performance
Secure scanner connection: if-available
Failure mode: deny
Update URL:

To download and install the latest threat-protection policy file:
Chapter 3: Privileged Mode Configure Commands

SGOS#(config) threat-protection
SGOS#(config threat-protection) malware-scanning
ok
SGOS#(config threat-protection malware-scanning) exit
SGOS#(config threat-protection) exit
SGOS#(config) load threat-protection malware-scanning
#(config) timezone

**Synopsis**

Use this command to set the local time zone on the ProxySG appliance.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) timezone set area/location
```

Enables you to set the local time zone. (Use `(config) show timezones` to display a list of supported timezones.)

```
#(config) timezone database-path url | default
```

Sets the network path to download the Time zone database.

**For More Information**

- SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide
- #(config) clock on page 151

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) timezone 3
  ok
```
#(config) ui

**Synopsis**

Use this command to configure the UI settings for the ProxySG appliance.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) ui
```

This changes the prompt to:

```plaintext
#(config ui)
```

**Subcommands**

```plaintext
#(config ui) default {advanced | solution}
Sets the default user interface.

#(config ui) exit
Exits UI mode and returns to the #(config) prompt.

#(config ui) no update-path
Clears the new UI download path.

#(config ui) reset
Resets the UI to the bound system version.

#(config ui) update-path url
Sets the new UI download path.
```

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```plaintext
#(config ui) default advanced
ok
```
#(config) upgrade-path

**Synopsis**

Use this command to specify the network path to download system software.

**Syntax**

```#(config) upgrade-path url```

Indicates the network path to use to download ProxySG system software. The image name must be included in the network path.

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) upgrade-path
http://your_server/image_file_5.3.1.9_36410_200.CHK
ok
```

**Note:** Command strings that include the special character “?” must be quoted. For example, the following command will result in an error:

```# SGOS(config) upgrade-path
https://example.com/cgi-bin/download?rid=3399924431```

To execute the command correctly, enclose the string in quotes as shown below:

```# SGOS(config) upgrade-path
"https://example.com/cgi-bin/download?rid=3399924431"```
#(config) virtual-ip

**Synopsis**
This command allows you to configure virtual IP addresses.

**Syntax**

```plaintext
#(config) virtual-ip address ip_address
   Specifies the virtual IP to add.

#(config) virtual-ip clear
   Removes all virtual IP addresses.

#(config) virtual-ip no address ip_address
   Removes the specified virtual IP from the list.
```

**For More Information**

- `SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide`
- `#(config) failover` on page 183

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) virtual-ip address 192.200.0.55
   ok
```
#(config) wccp

**Synopsis**

The ProxySG appliance can be configured to participate in a WCCP (Web Cache Control Protocol) scheme, where a WCCP-capable router collaborates with a set of WCCP-configured ProxySG appliance to service requests. WCCP is a Cisco-developed protocol. For more information about WCCP, refer to the WCCP chapter in the *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide* and the *WCCP Deployment Guide*.

After you have created the WCCP configuration file, place the file on an HTTP server so it can be downloaded to the ProxySG appliance. To download the WCCP configuration to the ProxySG appliance, use the `load` command.

**Syntax**

```
#(config) wccp disable
Disables WCCP.

#(config) wccp enable
Enables WCCP.

#(config) wccp no path
Negates certain WCCP settings.

#(config) wccp path url
Specifies the network path from which to download WCCP settings.
```

**For More Information**

- *SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide*

**Example**

```
SGOS#(config) wccp path 10.25.36.47/files/wccp.txt
ok
```

ProxySG

SGOS 6.5.x Administration Guide